# DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 267 593 FL 015 486

| | |
|---|---|
| AUTHOR | Qafisheh, Hamdi A. |
| TITLE | Yemeni Arabic I. |
| INSTITUTION | Arizona Univ., Tucson. Dept. of Oriental Studies. |
| SPONS AGENCY | Department of Education, Washington, DC. |
| PUB DATE | 84 |
| CONTRACT | G00-83-2151 |
| NOTE | 404p.; For related document, see FL 015 487. |
| PUB TYPE | Guides - Classroom Use - Materials (For Learner) (051) |
| EDRS PRICE | MF01/PC17 Plus Postage. |
| DESCRIPTORS | *Arabic; Classroom Techniques; Conversational Language Courses; Curriculum Guides; Daily Living Skills; Dialects; *Dialogs (Language); Grammar; Instructional Materials; *Introductory Courses; Listening Comprehension; *Pattern Drills (Language); Pronunciation; Second Language Instruction; *Speech Communication; *Vocabulary |
| IDENTIFIERS | Yemen |

ABSTRACT

Instructional materials for beginning Sanaani Arabic, a dialect used predominantly for oral communication, include 40 units consisting of text derived from recordings of spontanous conversations of native speakers in various communication situations. Some of the lesson topics are: greetings, getting acquainted, appointments, telephone conversations, shopping, education, mailing letters, telling time, directions, holidays, and festivals. The lessons include the following sections: a translation of the text; a list of vocabulary occurring in the text; additional related vocabulary; pronunciation notes; notes on grammar and constructions; drills using items in the lesson; and conversations and listening comprehension passages using familiar vocabulary in a new context. Introductory notes on use of the materials, a general bilingual glossary, and an index of grammatical terms are also included. (MSE)

***********************************************************************
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
***********************************************************************

FL

ED267593

Title VI, HEA
G00-83-2151
(1984)

# YEMENI ARABIC

# I

HAMDI A. QAFISHEH

DEPARTMENT OF ORIENTAL STUDIES
UNIVERSITY OF ARIZONA
Tucson, Arizona

**U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION**
**NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION**
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

FL015486

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the United States Department of Education, under the provisions of Educational Amendments of 1980, P.L. 96-374, Title VI.

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my thanks and appreciation to all those who helped in the preparation of this book. First, to the administrators of the U.S. Department of Education, Title VI, Postsecondary Education Branch, for the grant that made the present study possible. To Professor Ernest N. McCarus, Department of Near Eastern Studies, the University of Michigan goes my deepest appreciation for having carefully made a number of corrections and invaluable suggestions. Thanks are also due to Ms. Bonnie Glover, UCLA, for her interest and comments on stress in Sanaani Arabic; to my research assistants, Mr. Lee Samore and Mr. Mutahhar Abdulkadir of this University, for their assistance and patience throughout; to my language informants, Mutahhar Abdulkadir, Abdulkadir Bin Abdalla, Zaid Anan, and Eddi Ismail Al-Akwa' of Sanaa; to Mr. Samore for his assistance in preparing the table of contents, index of grammatical terms, and help in other ways too many to mention; to Ms. Barbara Cook for an efficient production of the final copy of the manuscript; to Dr. Abdul-Aziz Al-Magalih, Rector of Sanaa University and Director of the Yemeni Center for Research and Studies, and Dr. Mahmoud Daoud, Director of the Language Center of Sanaa University, for their assistance in facilitating my work in Yemen. Last, but not least, my hearty thanks go to the administrators of the University of Arizona, Dr. Myles Brand, Dean of the Social and Behavioral Sciences Faculty, and Dr. Robert M. Gimello, Head of the Department of Oriental Studies, for their unfailing support and interest.

Tucson, Arizona H.A.Q.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

UNIT 1

I. TEXT : I and You

II. TRANSLATION

III. VOCABULARY

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. Short and Long Vowels

2. Stress

V. GRAMMAR

1. Suffixed Pronouns

2. Equational Sentences

3. The Conjunction wa

VI. DRILLS

UNIT 2

I. TEXT : Who are You?

II. TRANSLATION

III. VOCABULARY

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. Short and Long Vowels

r

k vs. x

2. Stress

V. GRAMMAR

VI. DRILLS

UNIT 3

I. TEXT : Good Evening

II. TRANSLATION

III. VOCABULARY

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. Doubled Consonants

Velarized L

V. GRAMMAR

1. Suffixed Pronouns

2. Gender in Nouns and Pronouns

3. Gender in Adjectives

4. The Article Prefix 'al-

VI. DRILLS

VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 4

I. TEXT : My Brother and My Sister

II. TRANSLATION

III. VOCABULARY

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. δ vs. δ̣

2. G

V. GRAMMAR

1. Equational Sentences

2. Noun Constructs

VI. DRILLS

VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 5

I. TEXT : This (m.) and this (f.).

II. TRANSLATION

III. VOCABULARY

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. t vs. T

V. GRAMMAR

1. The Vocative Particle ya

2. Demonstratives

VI. DRILLS

XII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 6

I. TEXT : Tom and His Wife
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. PRONUNCIATION
  1. s vs. S
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Proper Names
  2. Nisba Adjectives
  3. Suffixed Pronouns
VI. DRILLS
VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 8

I. TEXT : An Appointment
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. PRONUNCIATION
  1. h and 9
VI. GRAMMAR
  1. 9ind- as a Verb
  2. Telling Time
  3. ma9 'with'
  4. Note
VII. DRILLS
VIII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 9

I. TEXT : The Director Is Busy
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. PRONUNCIATION
  1. H
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Imperatives
  2. Telling Time
VI. DRILLS
VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 10

I. TEXT : The Weather
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. PRONUNCIATION
  1. h and H
     x and H
VI. GRAMMAR
  1. Proper Names
  2. The Negative Particle maaʃ
  3. The Intensifier kaθiir
  4. Topical Sentences
VII. DRILLS
VIII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 11 REVIEW

UNIT 12

I. TEXT : Do You Speak Arabic?
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 13

I. TEXT : Taxi (i)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
  2. The Double Imperfect Construction
  3. The Dual
  4. Cardinal Numerals
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 14

I. TEXT : Taxi (ii)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
  2. Ordinal Numerals
  3. Special Constructions
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 15

I. TEXT : Muhammad Is Ill
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Imperatives
  2. Telling Time
  3. Cardinal Numerals
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 16

I. TEXT : At the Marketplace (i)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Cardinal Numerals
  2. Collective Nouns
  3. The Negative Particle ma
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 17

I. TEXT : At the Marketplace (ii)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Collective Nouns
  2. Color Adjectives
  3. The Future Tense
  4. The Verb -gdar-
  5. Imperatives
VI. DRILLS
VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 18

I. TEXT : Haj Ahmad
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

V. GRAMMAR
    1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
    2. Plurals of Nouns
    3. Noun-Adjective Concord
    4. Object Pronouns
    5. Demonstratives
    6. maHHad 'no one, nobody'
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 19
I. TEXT : At the Gas Station
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 20
I. TEXT : At the Garage
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
    2. Verbs--Perfect Tense
    3. The Particle Hagg
    4. Negative Commands
VI. DRILLS
VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 21 REVIEW

UNIT 22
I. TEXT : At the Airport (i)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
    2. laazim 9ala-
    3. θaani 'another, other'
    4. kull 'each, every'
    5. Elative Adjectives
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 23
I. TEXT : At the Aiport (ii)
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Elative Adjectives
    2. The Conjunction Hiin
    3. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 24
I. TEXT: My House
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. fii as a Verb
    2. Telling Ages

VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 25
- I. TEXT : A House for Rent
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
  - 1. Verbs--Imperatives
  - 2. The Triple Imperfect Construction
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 26
- I. TEXT : At the Restaurant
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 27
- I. TEXT : On the Telephone (i)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
  - 1. The Negative Particle Gayr
  - 2. 'ab and 'ax
  - 3. f-ayy Hiin?
  - 4. tagriib
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 28
- I. TEXT : On the Telephone (ii)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
  - 1. Imperatives
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 29
- I. TEXT
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
  - 1. Perfect Tense
  - 2. Notes
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 30
- I. TEXT: At Bilgis Airport
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
  - 1. Perfect Tense
  - 2. kaan fii
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 31 REVIEW

UNIT 32

I. TEXT : Welcome Back
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Perfect Tense
  2. Perfect Tense with Suffixed Pronouns
  3. The Verb 'i9jab
  4. Notes
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 33

I. TEXT : SaliH is Ill
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. maa l-
  2. SaHH
  3. 'inna
  4. Perfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 34

I. TEXT : Where is the American Embassy?
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. GRAMMAR
  1. Perfect Tense
  2. Imperatives
  3. Note
V. DRILLS
VI. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 35

I. TEXT : Where is the Post Office?
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Perfect Tense
  2. ya9ni
  3. SaHiiH
  4. 9ind-
VI. DRILLS

UNIT 36

I. TEXT : The Ramadhan Feast
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Perfect Tense
  2. The Negative Particle ma
VI. DRILLS
VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 37

I. TEXT : Feasts and Holidays
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
  1. Perfect Tense
  2. Adjective Agreement with Dual Nouns

VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 38
I. TEXT : At the Post Office
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Perfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 39
I. TEXT : At the Laundry
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Perfect Tense
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 40
I. TEXT : Proverbs and Sayings
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
    1. Conditionals
    2. Perfect Tense
    3. Relative Clauses
VI. DRILLS
VII. CONVERSATIONS

GLOSSARY : YEMENI ARABIC - ENGLISH
ENGLISH - YEMENI ARABIC

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

# INTRODUCTION

## 1. The Arabic Language

In the Arab world, colloquial dialects vary not only from country to country and town to town, but even from village to village. Strictly speaking, we cannot speak of the colloquial dialect of a particular country or town or village, because speakers of a particular dialect differ among themselves, mainly due to their educational and cultural backgrounds. In addition to these colloquial dialects, there is a superposed standard language commonly referred to as Classical Arabic, the revered language of the Quran, pre-Islamic poetry, and the medieval classics of Arabic literature. Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), as used nowadays, refers to the language learned by Arab students after their initial acquisition of a colloquial dialect of spoken Arabic. It is used on formal occasions -- speeches, discussions, debates, news broadcasts, and in schools and universities, being the medium of instruction. Furthermore, newspapers and textbooks all over the Arab world are written almost exclusively in MSA. Other names currently used are "Contemporary Arabic", "Modern Literary Arabic", "Modern Written Arabic", etc. The name abbreviated MSA: however, is intended to represent the literary language in both its spoken and written forms.

Differences between MSA and the colloquials are apparent in phonology and morphology, for the most part a matter of deletion of MSA inflections; e.g., case inflections, dual forms for pronouns and verbs, and feminine plural inflections of personal pronouns and verbs of MSA are not present in most of the colloquials. Syntactic features of MSA and most colloquial dialects, however, are similar.

## 2. The Language of the Text

The language which this book utilizes is Sanaani Arabic, the language used by unsophisticated Sanaanis for oral communication. The dialogs, narratives, conversations, and listening comprehension passages are based on recordings of spontaneous conversations of unsophisticated Sanaanis in different situations, such as greetings, telephone conversations, comments, interviews, etc. In checking with language informants, the question, "How do you say ...?" was avoided as much as possible for the sake of authenticity. (See continued)

## 3 Relevant Works

Much has been written on the history and politics of the Yemen Arab Republic; only a few linguistic studies have been published, but almost nothing of the scope of YAI has been published or attempted. Emerson's and Muhammad Abdu Ghanim's (1943) book of exercises, based on a companion volume Aden Arabic are of limited scope and require a knowledge of MSA. Rossi's L'arabe parlato a San'ā' (1959) is a classic study but it lacks a modern linguistic treatment and reflects theory and practice of some twenty-five years ago. In An Introduction to Yemeni Spoken Arabic (mimeographed) by Etienne Renaud (1977), parts of which have been revised by Roman Stager (1980), an attempt has been to use the direct method, but the sound system is neglected, the grammar is fragmented and sketchy, and the drills are inadequate. It does contain a good variety of texts. Yemeni Arabic (1979) by David Critchfield, designed primarily for the use of Peace Corps volunteers in the Y.A.R., is not based on a particular dialect of Yemen. It is to be credited for its short dialogs and narratives, which makes it easy for students to commit them to memory, but it neglects the sound system and the presentation of the grammar is sketchy and unsystematic.

## 4. Arrangement of the Materials

A typical unit in this textbook is divided into the following:

### a. TEXT

There is a total of forty texts:

The dialogs cover a wide variety of subjects of interest, such as greetings, getting acquainted, appointments, telephone conversations, shopping, education, mailing letters, telling time, directions, holidays, festivals, etc. The content of the dialogs is determined mainly by the word frequency list and the feedback the writer has obtained in the Y.A.R. from prospective users of the book. The narratives are in the form of short passages suited to the particular needs of prospective students. The first ten lessons are short because emphasis in those lessons is placed on mastery of the sound system of YA.

### b. VOCABULARY

This section contains the new vocabulary items that occur in the text. The vocabulary items are selected from a frequency word list of about 3,000 items of Yemeni Arabic which the writer has initially compiled for this course. The average number of vocabulary items in this section is about twenty.

### c. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

Additional vocabulary items related to vocabulary are included in this section. The average number is about ten items per lesson. Students are held responsible for the meanings of these words. An attempt has been made to keep tight control over the vocabulary items in both sections. Each new vocabulary item in a lesson is repeated at least five times in subsequent lessons.

### d. PRONUNCIATION

Sounds that are similar in SA and American English are not presented. Those sounds are represented by the following symbols: b, d, f, g, h, j, k, m, n, s, ʃ, t, w, y, z, θ, and δ. No lesson in the first ten lessons contains more than two difficult sounds. Stress patterns are described in the first four lessons, and irregularities are pointed out as the need arises. Two detailed pronunciation lesson plans have been worked out in

UNIT 1 and in UNIT 2. They are model plans; reference is made to them in the subsequent eight units.

### e. GRAMMAR

An attempt has been made to present grammar in a systematic way, so that by the end of the book the student will have acquired a virtually complete description of the basic structures of YA. The new grammatical structures that occur in a TEXT are explained to the students so that they might understand the particular structure involved. The student is warned against ungrammatical phrases or structures, which are starred. Examples illustrating new grammatical structures are cited from the lesson or previous lessons. There are not more than two major grammatical structures in any one unit.

### f. DRILLS

In addition to providing practice in using the items in a lesson, drills illustrate the phonological and grammatical points. The drills are not limited in number or type. The average number in each lesson is ten. There are at least five types, the most frequent being substitution and transformation drills. If a certain drill contains too many items, an adequate number of items could be done in class and the rest assigned as homework or done the following day in class. There are three REVIEW units, the purpose of each of which is to review previous vocabulary and grammar.

### g. CONVERSATIONS AND LISTENING COMPREHENSION

There are conversations and listening comprehension passages throughout the book. The conversations and the listening comprehension passages occur at the end of the lesson and utilize familiar vocabulary in a new or related setting. Students are encouraged to tell short stories or describe events of daily occurrence in class.

## 5. How to Use the Materials

In order to achieve the best results, it is suggested that the course be taught by a language specialist trained in contrastive analysis, preferably a native speaker of any variety of Arabic and an informant. Such a language specialist is cognizant of the implications of contrastive analysis for different types of teaching programs and is better equipped to better guide his students, for if an error is made, he will understand the cause, and will be able to construct illustrative examples, and present corrective drills, Lectures concerning the differences between the target language and the native language and should not replace drill in the patterns or structures in the language. But the simplicity (or complexity) of the rules to be learned in the target language is an important factor. For example, a student coming from English, in which adjectival modifiers almost always precede the noun-head, will have some difficulty learning a language like Arabic where they always follow the noun-head, but he will have more difficulty learning the structure Cardinal numeral + N in MSA, where the cardinal changes according to the gender of the noun counted (switch gender) and the cardinal numeral is sometimes singular and sometimes plural, thereby creating a split in the branching properties of the modifiers. It has been found that a split, involving a part similarity between corresponding structures of the target language and the native language, is likely to be more difficult than a straightforward reversal where there is no similarity at all.

The following recommendations are offered to the teacher:

a. Read the TEXT slowly, clearly, and carefully twice. Students listen.

b. Break the passage into short phrases, and have students repeat after you. If the short phrase contains a new grammatical point, explain it and do the relevant drills. Encourage students to take turns and act the passage out. Do not spend too much time on the passage at this stage.

c. For the following day ask students to listen to the tape and try to commit the TEXT to memory. Memorization is very useful in foreign language learning.

d. In DRILLS, put the pattern sentence or phrase on the board. Draw students' attention to it. Explain the grammatical point involved. It is recommended that books be shut throughout. If a student makes an error, do not stop him but lead him to the correct answer.

e. At the beginning of each teaching period, begin the lesson by asking questions of a general nature. These questions can be taken from previously learned materials. Examples of such questions are: What's your name? How are you? What's today? What time is it? Do you study Arabic every day? ... etc. Beginning a lesson in this manner gives the students a sense of continuity in the lessons, organizes and enlivens the students' attitude to the whole subject, and gives the students further practice in many useful structures, words, and everyday expressions.

f. Do not use English unless needed. Translation is a means and not a method. While translation might be used only for some content-words, it should never be used for structures, which should be taught in context and practiced.

# TRANSCRIPTION

## CONSONANTS

| Symbol | Approximate Sound | Symbol | Approximate Sound |
|---|---|---|---|
| ' | (glottal stop) | r | r in Spanish caro |
| b | b in big | s | s in sip |
| d | d in dog | S | s in sauce |
| f | f in fat | ʃ | sh in ship |
| g | g in God | t | t in still |
| G | r in French Paris | T | t in tot |
| h | h in hat | w | w in win |
| H | - - - - - | x | ch in German nacht |
| j | j in Jim | y | y in yet |
| k | k in skim | z | z in zeal |
| l | l in lathe | θ | th in thin |
| L | l in bell | δ | th in this |
| m | m in mat | δ | - - - - - |
| n | n in nap | 9 | - - - - - |

## VOWELS

| Short | | Long | |
|---|---|---|---|
| i | i in sit | ii | ea in seat |
| a | - - - - - | aa | a in hat<br>a in hard |
| e | - - - - - | ee | - - - - - |
| u | u in put | uu | oo in food |
| o | - - - - - | | |

## DIPHTHONGS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aw | ou in house | ay | i in night |

## ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

| Abbreviation | Word | Abbreviation | Word |
|---|---|---|---|
| act. part. | active participle | n. | noun |
| adj. | adjective | neg. | negative |
| adv. | adverb | opp. | opposite |
| coll. | collective | p. | plural |
| conj. | conjunction | part. | particle |
| def. | definite | preced. | preceding |
| dem. | demonstrative | prep. | preposition |
| elat. | elative | pron. | pronoun |
| f. | feminine | s. | singular |
| foll. | following | s.o. | someone |
| imp. | imperative | s.th. | something |
| indef. | indefinite | syn. | synonym |
| inter. | interrogative | tran. | transitive |
| intran. | intransitive | un. | unit noun |
| lit. | literally | var. | variant |
| m. | masculine | v.n. | verbal noun |

| Symbol | Meaning | Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| C | consonant | SA | Sanaani Arabic |
| $C_1$ | first consonant | S | student |
| $C_2$ | second consonant | T | teacher |
| | | | |
| MSA | Modern Standard Arabic | | |
| ( ) | item enclosed is optional or explanatory | | |
| * | indicates an ungrammatical utterance | | |

# UNIT 1

## I. TEXT

### 'ana wa 'ant

daawuud : 'ismi daawuud. maa 'ismak ?
zayd : 'ismi zayd.
daawuud : min 'ayn 'ant ?
zayd : 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant min 'ayn ?
daawuud : 'ana min al-'imaaraat.

## II. TRANSLATION

### I and You

David : My name is David. What is your name ?
Zaid : My name is Zaid.
David : Where are you from ?
Zaid : I am from Yemen. And where are you from ?
David : I am from the Emirates.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ant | you (m.s.) | min | from |
| 'ana | I | 'ayn ? | where ? |
| daawuud | David | 'al-yaman | Yemen |
| maa ? | what ? | wa | and |
| 'ism | name (m.) | 'al-'imaaraat | the Emirates, the U.A.E. |
| zayd | Zaid | | |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

### 1. Short and Long Vowels

SA has in its sound system five short and five corresponding long vowels: *a - aa*, *i - ii*, *e - ee*, *u - uu*, and *o - oo*. A long vowel is twice as long as a short vowel. Long *aa* in SA is pronounced more or less like the *a* in English *bad*; short *a* is half as long, and it is like *u* in *but*.

In the following exercise exaggerate, for the time being, long *aa* and make short *a* short and abrupt in production; otherwise you will fall into the pitfall of confusing short and long vowels.

## *Drill 1*

### short *a* and long *aa*

a. Listen; do not repeat.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| baab → | bab | waan → | wan | kaan → | kan |
| daan | dan | faat | fat | maad | mad |
| kaaf | kaf | faan | fan | baat | bat |
| gaam | gam | haam | ham | maan | man |

b. Listen and repeat after the model : *baab* *bab*, *daan* *dan*, etc.

c. Teacher makes a random selection of words from the above. Students are asked to indicate under *aa* and *a* words that have those vowels, e.g., teacher says *baab*; students write 1 under *aa*; teacher says *bat*; students write 2 under *a*, etc.

d. Teacher says, e.g., a word with long *aa*; individual students give the corresponding word with short *a*, etc.

e. Listen and repeat. Do the same words again in pairs.

## *Drill 2*

### short *i* and long *ii*

SA short *i* is similar to English *i* in *sit*. The long vowel *ii* is a little different from English, e.g., *ee* in *seed*. In English *seat*, *ea* is a little shorter and has a glide quality; SA is a monophthong without any glide quality. Listen:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| min → miin | sif → siif | zin → ziin |
| kif kiif | sin siin | rig riig |
| lif liif | jin jiin | fit fiit |

Follow the same procedure as in *Drill 1* above.

### *Drill 3*

#### short *e* and long *ee*

SA short *e* is similar to English *e* in *pen*; *ee* is twice as long as *e*. Keep in mind that *ee* does not have any glide quality. Listen:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| bet → beet | def → deef | sek → seek |
| kef keef | det deet | zen zeen |
| wen ween | wet weet | sed seed |

Follow the same procedure as in *Drill 1* above.

### 2. *Stress*

A stressed syllable in a given word is the one that is pronounced the loudest. In SA stress is generally predictable, i.e., you can deduce which syllable in a word is stressed from the consonant-vowel sequence in that word. (There are some exceptions, which will be pointed out as they arise.) You should note the following general comments on syllable structure in SA:

1. Every syllable should have a vowel, short or long.

2. If a word has two consonants or a doubled consonant (identical consonants) in the middle, syllable division is between these two consonants.

Each word in UNIT 1 has either one or two syllables, except 'al-yáman (or 'al-yamán) 'Yemen' and 'al-'imáaraat 'the U.A.E.'.

There are two kinds of syllables in SA: short and long. A short syllable is made up of a consonant followed by a short vowel (CV) or a consonant followed by a vowel followed by another consonant (CVC). A long syllable could be any of the following sequences: CVV, CVVC, CCVC, CVCC, or CVCCC.

In two-syllable words in SA stress falls on the last syllable if it is long and if the first syllable is short; otherwise the first syllable is stressed. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ísmi | 'my name' | 'ísmak | 'your name' |
| mára | 'woman' | 'al-yáman | 'Yemen' |
| dáawuud | 'David' | báytayn | 'two houses' |
| rajjáal | 'man' | finjáan | 'cup' |

It should be pointed out that if both syllables are short, the second syllable may be stressed. Thus: 'ísmi or 'ismí 'my name', 'al-yáman or 'al-yamán 'Yemen', etc. 'al-, the article prefix, is not usually stressed.

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Suffixed Pronouns

Nouns in SA can have pronominal suffixes attached to them. These pronominal suffixes, or suffixed pronouns, as they are sometimes called, indicate possession:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ism(-i) | '(my) name' | 'ism(-ak) | 'your (m.s.) name' |

Other suffixed pronouns will be presented later.

### 2. Equational Sentences

| | |
|---|---|
| 'ismi daawuud. | 'My name is David.' |
| 'ana min 'al-yaman. | 'I am from Yemen.' |

The two sentences above are examples of equational sentences, containing a subject and a predicate. The subject in the first sentence is the phrase 'ismi 'my name' and in the second sentence, the pronoun 'ana 'I'. The predicate is either a proper noun daawuud 'David' or a prepositional phrse min al-yamān 'from Yemen'.

### 3. The Conjunction wa

wa is a coordinating conjunction corresponding to English 'and'. It has two less commonly used variants: wu and 'uu. In normal speech it is sometimes reduced to w. Examples:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 'ana w-'ant | 'I and you' | or: |
| 'ana w-ant | | |
| 'ant wu zayd | 'you and Zaid' | or: |
| 'ant 'uu zayd | | or: |
| 'ant uu zayd | | |

In phrases that are primarily borrowed from literary Arabic only wa is used, e.g.: 'ahlan wa sahlan! 'Welcome!' (see Unit 2).

In the following units only hyphenated w- will be used and should be pronounced wa.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Chain

Each student repeats the sentence: 'ismi (zayd). 'My name is (Zaid)' in turn, substituting his or her name for the name in parenthesis.

Example: 'ismi zayd. 'ismi Nancy, etc.

### Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 by making a statement and then asking a question (Male students only.)

Example: 'ismi zayd. maa 'ismak?

### Drill 3 Chain

Repeat Drill 2 by making a statement and then asking a question. (Male students only.)

Example: 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant min 'ayn?
'I am from Yemen. And where are you from?'

### Drill 4 Chain

Each male student gives two statements and then asks a question.

Example: 'ismi zayd. 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant?
'My name is Zaid. I am from Yemen. And you?'

Drill 5 Translation

1. David is from Yemen.
2. I am from the Emirates.
3. What's your (m.s.) name?
4. Where are you (m.s.) from?
5. I am from Canada.
6. David and Nancy
7. Where is Miriam from?
8. And where is Zaid from?

# UNIT 2

## I. TEXT

### man 'ant ?

'ibraahiim : 'ismi 'ibraahiim. 'ana min 'ibb. man' ant ?
kariim : 'ismi kariim. 'ana min al-maxa.
'ibraahiim : 'ahlan wa sahlan! kayf ant ?
kariim : naahi. w-'ant ?
'ibraahiim : bi-xayr. ʃukran.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Who Are You ?

Ibrahim : My name is Ibrahim. I am from Ibb. Who are you ?
Karim : My name is Karim. I am from Mocha.
Ibrahim : Nice meeting you! How are you?
Karim : Fine. And you ?
Ibrahim : Fine. Thank you.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| man ? | who ? |
| 'ibraahiim | Abraham |
| 'ibb | Ibb |
| 'al-maxa | Mocha |
| 'ahlan wa sahlan! | Welcome! Nice meeting you ! |
| kayf ? | how ? |
| kayf 'ant ? | How are you (m.s.) ? |
| naahi | fine, good (m.s.) |
| xayr | goodness; benevolence |
| bi-xayr | fine, all right |
| ʃukran | Thanks. Thank you. |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

### Drill 1

short u and long uu

SA u and English u as in put are similar. SA uu as in daawuud 'David' is a monophthong. In the production of this long vowel the lips are rounded throughout. In the English word food, however, the position of the lips changes to a more rounded position. Again, in SA it is vowel length as opposed to vowel quality in English.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| dug → | duug | kul → | kuul | ru → | ruu |
| mut | muut | tub | tuub | zu | zuu |
| bud | buud | gum | guum | ʃu | ʃuu |
| luf | luuf | zur | zuur | nu | nuu |

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

### Drill 2

short o and long oo

SA o occurs in only a few words; it is used in free variation with u : 9omaan 'Oman', Hodayda 'Hudaida', gult-lo 'I told him', gomaaʃ 'cloth, material', 'ittaSil-bo 'Contact him!', HoSaan 'horse', etc. oo is twice as long as o and it is a monophthong with no off-glide quality. It is close to the American English oo sound in door.

SA oo is often used in free variation with the diphthong ow or the diphthong aw. Examples :

| | |
|---|---|
| mootar ~ mowtar ~ mawtar | 'car' |
| talafoon ~ talafown ~ talafawn | 'telephone' |
| yoom ~ yowm ~ yawm | 'day' |
| 9aadooh ~ 9aadowh ~ 9aadawh | 'he is (still)' |

| | |
|---|---|
| loon ~ lown ~ lawn | 'color' |
| hoonaak ~ hownaak ~ hawnaak | 'over there' |

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation *Drill 1*, a, b.

### *Drill 3*

*r*

SA *r* is not like American English *r*; the former is a consonant, while the latter is more of a vowel than a consonant. For the production of *r*, most Americans curl the tongue up toward the roof of the mouth as in *car*, *far*, etc., and round their lips when the *r* sound is word-initial or syllable initial, as in *ream*, *rock*, *marry*, etc. SA *r* is a tongue-flap. It is produced by striking the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. It is like the *r* sound in Spanish or Italian *caro* 'dear'. In the speech of some Americans intervocalic *t* sounds like SA *r* : *city*, *Betty*, *pity*, *water*, etc.

Unlike most other dialects of Arabic, SA *r* is always the plain *r* sound, except in the vicinity of a velarized sound (see UNITS 3 and 4).

In the following exercise the first word in each pair is a meaningful English word, and the second one is an approximation of the pronunciation of that same English word by a native speaker of SA. Pay special attention to this second pronunciation.

a. Listen; do not repeat :

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ream → | riim | berry → | beri | bar → | baar |
| rub | rab | Arizona | 'arizoona | four | foor |
| rough | raf | marry | mari | bear | beer |
| run | ran | carry | kari | beer | biir |

b. Listen and repeat after the model : ream - riim, rub - rub, etc.

c. Teacher makes a random selection of words from the above. Students indicate under English r and SA r words that have these sounds, e.g., teacher says ream; students write 1 under English r; teacher says mari; students write 2 under SA r, etc.

d. Teacher gives, e.g., a word with English r; students give the corresponding word with SA r.

e. Listen and repeat. Do the same words again in pairs.

Drill 4

k versus x

SA k and American English k are similar. SA x is different and needs a little practice to master. It is a voiceless fricative and it is velar. It is like Scottish ch in loch and German ch in nacht. For the production of x, put your tongue in the same position as for k and move it down just a little bit in order to let the air pass through. A helpful hint: try clearing your throat to spit:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| keer → | xeer | daktoor → | daxtoor | laak → | laax |
| kaaz | xaaz | bakbak | baxbax | ʃiik | ʃiix |
| keemeh | xeemeh | dikan | dixan | ʃeek | ʃeex |

2. Stress: Stress rules for three-syllable words

a. If the second syllable is short, stress falls on the first syllable. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| mā́ktaba | 'library' | mā́adrasa | 'school' |
| ʃī́jara | 'tree' | mā́rati | 'my wife' |
| zā́wjatayn | 'two wives' | 9ā́llamayn | 'they (f.) taught' |
| wā́ahida | 'one (f.)' | mā́asathum | 'their table' |
| zā́arathiin | 'sometimes' | mā́asatayn | 'two tables' |

b. If the second syllable is long, stress falls on this syllable. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| dakáakiin | 'shops' | basáatiin | 'orchards' |
| ʃawáariq | 'streets' | 'ibráahiim | 'Abraham' |
| ʃiigáara | 'cigarette' | gaarúura | 'bottle' |

Drill 1

Divide the following words into syllables and stress them:

kariim
'ismi
sahlan
naahi
daawuud
ʃukran
'ibraahiim
'al-yaman
'amriika
ʃukran
'ahlan
basaatiin

Drill 2

Listen and repeat :

'ána
'ibráahiim
basáatiin
'ísmi
'al-yáman
mádrasa
dáwuud
sáhlan
máktaba
yúusif
'áhlan
wáalideh

V. GRAMMAR

There are no new grammatical points in this lesson.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. naahi 'fine, good' is an adjective and is inflected for gender and number (this will be discussed later), whereas bi-xayr is an adverbial phrase and literally means 'in a good state of affairs'. It is not inflected for gender or number.

2. 'ahlan wa sahlan! is a useful polite formula. Its general literal meaning is 'You (m. or f.) are among your folks and you tread upon plane (i.e., not bumpy) land.' It is used on the following occasions:

a. As a courtesy expression, as in this lesson.

b. As a welcoming expression in the context of a host greeting a guest, e.g., at home or in the office. It is used only by the host.

c. As a response, especially in some other Arab countries, to ʃukran 'Thank you'.

d. As a response after someone has been introduced to you, in which case it is used for 'nice meeting you!'

3. bi is a preposition and has a range of meanings, depending on the word it governs. In this lesson it is prefixed to xayr 'goodness, benevolence', and the whole phrase means 'in a state of . . . .' Other meanings of bi will be given in other lessons. Only hyphenated b- will be used in the following units and it should be pronounced bi.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Chain

Example: kayf ant ? naahi.

'How are you (m.s.) ?' 'Fine (m.s.).'

### Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

kayf ant ? naahi bi-xayr. 'How are you ? Fine.'

Drill 3 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

kayf ant ? naahi bi-xayr. w-ant ? bi-xayr. ʃukran.

'How are you? Fine. And you? Fine, thanks.'

Drill 4 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

$S_1$ : 'ismi 'ibraahiim. 'ana min 'ibb.

'My name is Ibrahim. I am from Ibb.'

$S_2$ : 'ahlan wa sahlan! kayf ant ?

'Welcome! How are you?'

$S_3$ : bi-xayr ʃukran. 'Fine, thanks.'

Drill 5 Translation

1. My name is Kariim.
2. I'm from Yemen.
3. David is from Ibb.
4. How are you (m.s.)?
5. Welcome!
6. My name is Karima.
7. I'm from Mocha.
8. Zayd is from the U.A.E.
9. What's your name?
10. Are you from Ibb?
11. Is Ibrahim from Yemen?
12. I'm fine, Thanks.
13. Nice meeting you!
14. Thank you.
15. Where are you from?
16. What's your name?

# UNIT 3

## I. TEXT

### massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr

jamiila : massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr!
najla : massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr! 'ahlan wa sahlan.
jamiila : kayf anti ?
najla : naahiya. w-anti ?
jamiila : laa ba's. ʃukran. kayf al-'ahl ?
najla : kulluna b-xayr.
jamiila : fi 'amaan-i-llaah!
najla : fi 'amaan-i-llaah.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Good Evening

Jamila : Good evening!
Najla : Good evening! You are welcome!
Jamila : How are you?
Najla : Fine. And you?
Jamila : Not bad. Thanks. How is the family?
Najla : We are all fine.
Jamila : Goodbye!
Najla : Goodbye!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'aLLaah/'aLLa | God (m.) | kull | (with foll. n. or pron. suffix) all of |
| 'anti | you (f.s.) | | |
| naahiya | fine, good (f.s.) | fi | in |
| 'ahl | folks; family (m.p.) | 'amaan | safety; security |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

### 1. Doubled Consonants

Clusters of two identical consonants, traditionally known as geminates, occur frequently in SA. Doubled consonants in English occur across word boundaries, e.g., straight to, hot tea, guess so, etc., and occasionally within compound words and words with prefixes and suffixes, e.g., cattail, unnamed, thinness, etc. Doubled consonants in SA occur medially, finally and, in a few cases, initially. Native speakers of English encounter no difficulty in producing doubled consonants in such words as hot tea, cattail, thinness, etc., but they fail to produce doubled consonants that are differently distributed in Arabic. They either prolong the vowel following the doubled consonants or, simply, produce the word with one consonant, especially if the following vowel is short.

The following drill compares and contrasts words with single and doubled consonants. In order to help you produce words with doubled consonants correctly, think of the word that has doubled consonants as being made up of two words (but don't pause between them) thus:

massaaʃ → mas-saaʃ
kulluna ʃ kul-luna
'aLLaah → 'aL-Laah
Tayyiba → Tay-yiba

Keep in mind that doubled consonants mark syllable boundaries.

Drill 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| masaaʃ → | massaaʃ | samar → | sammar |
| mareh | marreh | salaam | sallaam |
| 'ala | 'alla | saba | sabba |
| 'ama | 'amma | haya | hayya |
| daras | darras | hanaak | hannaak |

The procedure in *UNIT 1*, *Pronunciation Drill 1* is to be followed.

### *Drill 2*

### Velarized *L*

SA *L* is relatively easy compared to the SA plain *l*, which is like English *l* before vowels (*leaf*, *lore*, *lap*, etc.). *L* is similar to the American English dark *l* in *peel*, *tell*, *ball*, etc.

Listen and repeat:

'aLLa    waLLa    yaLLa    gaLaS

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. *Suffixed Pronouns*

*-iʃ* (*-ʃ* after vowels) and *-ana* (*-una* after a doubled consonant) and *-na* after a vowel signal possession:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'ismiʃ | 'your (f.s.) name' |
| 'ahliʃ | 'your (f.s.) folks' |
| 'ahlana | 'our folks' |
| 'ismana | 'our name' |

Suffixed pronouns can also be added to particles and prepositions, in which case they function as objects of particles or prepositions, e.g., *kulluna*, 'all of us', *minni* 'from me'. *min* 'from' becomes *minn-* before a suffix beginning with a vowel: *minniʃ* 'from you (f.s.)', *minna* 'from him', etc.

### 2. *Gender in Nouns and Pronouns*

Nouns in SA have gender, masculine or feminine. Nouns, including personal names, that refer to males are masculine, and those referring to females are feminine. Thus, 'ibraahiim, zayd, kariim and 'aLLa are masculine, while jamiila, najla and maryam are feminine. This distinction is important in grammar, since the choice of pronoun depends on the gender of the noun or person involved: 'ant for masculine and 'anti for feminine.

Nouns referring to non-living things also have gender. As a rule nouns ending in -a or sometimes eh are feminine, e.g., suuriyya 'Syria', mareh 'woman', Taageh 'window', etc., while all others are masculine, e.g., 'ism 'name', 'ahl 'folks, family', etc. There are some exceptions, e.g., masa 'evening, night' and 'aLLa 'God', which are masculine, though they end with -a. Gender of nouns will be identified in the vocabulary section through UNIT 10. Thereafter, only the gender of nouns like masa will be identified.

### 3. Gender in Adjectives

Adjectives in SA, as in some other dialects of Arabic, agree with the noun they modify in gender (masculine or feminine), number (singular or plural), and definiteness. Gender will be dealt with in this section; the other points will be discussed in later lessons. Note:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| kariim naahi. | but | najla naahiya. |
| 'Karim is fine.' | | 'Najla is fine.' |
| zayd naahi. | | jamiila naahiya. |
| 'Zaid is fine.' | | 'Jamila is fine.' |

### 4. The Article Prefix 'al-

'al- in SA and in most other dialects of Yemen (e.g., on the west coast 'am ~ m-, b-) is a prefix. It defines nouns and adjectives. While its basic form is 'al-, it has other forms, depending upon its environment, i.e., the sound that precedes it and that which follows it:

a. If the word to which the article is prefixed begins with any of the following consonants: ', b, j , H, x, 9, G, f, g, k, m, h, w, y, then its form is 'al-. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ahl | 'folks, family' | 'al-'ahl | 'the folks' |
| 'ism | 'name' | 'al-'ism | 'the name' |
| xayr | 'good thing' | 'al-xayr | 'the good thing' |
| masa | 'evening' | 'al-masa | 'the evening' |

b. If the word begins with any of the following consonants (the rest of the consonant sounds of SA), the l of the article prefix is assimilated, i.e., it changes to the same consonant as the initial consonant of the word to which it is prefixed: t, θ, δ, r, z, s, ʃ, S, T, δ̣, l, L, n. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| naahi | 'fine, good (one)' | 'an-naahi | 'the fine one' |
| dikkaan | 'shop, store' | 'ad-dikkaan | 'the shop' |
| θawr | 'bull' | 'aθ-θawr | 'the bull' |

c. (1) If the word preceding 'al ends with a consonant, the ' sound is dropped in normal speech, and (2) if it ends with a vowel, the 'a drops. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| kayf al-'ahl ? | 'How is the family?' |
| kull al-xayr | 'all of the good things' |
| min al-yaman | 'from Yemen' |
| fi l-yaman | 'in Yemen' |
| fi l-Hodayda | 'in Hudaida' |

NOTES ON TEXT

1. Arabs, including Yemenis, are prolific in their use of greetings and polite formulas on social occasions. On meeting someone such greetings as "Welcome!", "How are you?", "How is the family?", and "I

hope you are all fine" are practically indispensable polite expressions. It is difficult, sometimes impossible, to give a literal translation of a polite formula. It is important, however, to know what the polite formula corresponds to in English and how it is used, as well as the expected response. In this lesson massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xeer corresponds to English 'Good evening!' said to a female and massaak aLLa b-l-xeer to a male. It literally means, "may Good grant you an evening of well-being". Note that the response is the same.

2. b-xayr expresses the same meaning of 'fine, in a good state of affairs'.

3. fi 'amaan-i-llaah 'in God's safety (protection)' is a leave-taking formula, the response to which is the same. It is similar to English 'Goodbye! Bye!'

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ (f.): | massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr! | 'Good evening (afternoon)!' |
| $S_2$ (f.): | massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr! | 'Good evening (afternoon)!' |

Drill 2 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ (f.): | kayf anti ? | 'How are you?' |
| $S_2$ (f.): | naahiya. | 'Fine.' |

Drill 3 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ (f.) : | kayf ant ? | 'How are you (m.s.)?' |
| $S_2$ (m.) : | laa ba's ʃukran. | 'Not bad, thanks.' |
| $S_1$ : | kayf al-'ahl ? | 'How is the family ?' |
| $S_2$ : | kulluna b-xayr ʃukran | 'We are all fine, thanks.' |

Drill 4 Transformation: m. → f.

1. maa 'ismak ?
2. kayf 'ahlak ?
3. naahi b-xayr.
4. man 'ant ?
5. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!
6. min 'ayn ant ?
7. kayf ant ?
8. 'ant b-xayr ?

Drill 5 Translation

1. How is the family?
2. How are you (f.s.)?
3. Is your (f.s.) name Najla ?
4. Where are you (f.s.) from?
5. We are all fine, thanks.
6. Good evening (m.s.)!
7. We are all fine.
8. I'm fine, thanks (m.s.).
9. You (f.s.) are welcome!
10. Jamil is in Ibb.
11. I'm fine, thanks (f.s.).
12. Good afternoon (f.s.)!

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. $S_1$ : man 'ant ?
   $S_2$ : 'ana zayd.
   $S_1$ : min ayn ant ?
   $S_2$ : 'ana min 'ibb.
   $S_1$ : 'ayn 'ibb
   $S_2$ : 'ibb fi l-yaman.

2. $S_1$ : maa 'ismiʃ ?
   $S_2$ : 'ismi maryam.
   $S_1$ : min 'ayn anti ?
   $S_2$ : min 'ibb.
   $S_1$ : kayf al-'ahl ?
   $S_2$ : kulluna b-xayr.

# U N I T 4

## I. TEXT

### 'axi w-'uxti

Gaanim min ar-rawδ̣a fi l-yaman. huw daktoor fi l-mustaʃfa. 'ana ʃuGli muhandis fi wazaarat al-'aʃGaal fi l-maxa. 'uxti mumarriδ̣a fi mustaʃfa l-kuwayt w-'axi sikirteer fi bank ar-riyaaδ̣.

## II. TRANSLATION

### My Brother and My Sister

Ghanim is from Roda in Yemen. He is a doctor in the hospital. My work is an engineer in the Ministry of Public Works in Mocha. My sister is a nurse at the Kuwait Hospital and my brother is a secretary at the Bank of Riyadh.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ar-rawδ̣a | Rawda (f.) | 'uxt | sister (f.) |
| huw | he | mumarriδ̣a | nurse (f.) |
| daktoor | doctor (m.) | 'al-kuwayt | Kuwait |
| mustaʃfa | hospital (m.) | 'ax | brother (m.) |
| ʃuGl | work, job (m.) | sikirteer | secretary (m.) |
| muhandis | engineer (m.) | bank | bank (m.) |
| wazaara | ministry (f.) | 'ar-riyaaδ̣ | Riyadh (f.) |
| 'aʃGaal | works; jobs | | |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

### 1. δ versus δ̣

δ should cause no problems since it is similar to the English sound th in this. It is a voiced interdental spirant. The dot below δ represents pharyngealization, traditionally known as "emphasis". A pharyngealized sound (e.g., L in UNIT 3) is pronounced with the tongue farther back and farther down in the mouth; the lips are rounded or protruded slightly. In producing the plain non-pharyngealized δ the tongue is relaxed and its tip protrudes a little beyond the edges of the upper and the lower teeth. For the pharyngealized δ̣, on the other hand, the tongue is tense, lower in the middle, and more raised toward the back part. Note that this will change the quality of adjacent vowels, especially a and aa, and give a 'hollow' or 'backed' effect. (The aa in δaad, for instance, is similar to the a sound in that; but in δ̣aad it changes to a sound similar to a in hard.

In the following drill listen carefully to the pronunciation of δ̣ (as well as the quality of the vowel) and imitate as faithfully as possible.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| baaδ | → | baaδ̣ | δabb | → | δ̣abb | haaδa → | haaδ̣a |
| laaδ | | laaδ̣ | δamm | | δ̣amm | yδimm | yδ̣imm |
| bayδ | | bayδ̣ | δabi | | δ̣abi | naδiif | naδ̣iif |
| biiδ | | biiδ̣ | δayl | | δ̣ayl | waδδaf | waδ̣δ̣af |
| buuδ | | buuδ̣ | δuul | | δ̣uul | buuδi | buuδ̣i |

Follow the same procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

Drill 2

2. G

If you have mastered the production of x in UNIT 2, it will be easy for you to produce G (which is a voiced velar spirant) since the only difference between the two is voicing. Note that this sound is produced when gargling. G is close in quality to the Parisian r, as in Paris, rien, etc. Practice this sound in the following:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| xxxxxxxx → | GGGGGGGG | GGGGGGGG → | xxxxxxxx |
| xaa xaa xaa | Gaa Gaa Gaa | xoo xoo xoo | Goo Goo Goo |
| xuu xuu xuu | Guu Guu Guu | xee xee xee | Gee Gee Gee |
| xii xii xii | Gii Gii Gii | xuxuxux | Gux Gux Gux |

Contrast between x and G

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| xaali → | Gaali | naxal → | naGal | daax → | daaG |
| xoox | GooG | taxayyar | taGayyar | ʃayx | ʃayG |
| xiib | Giib | baxxa | baGGa | liix | liiG |
| xuur | Guur | baxeet | baGeet | juux | juuG |

3. Stress

In four-syllable words the fourth syllable is never stressed. If the second to the last syllable is short, stress falls on the third to the last syllabe; if the second to the last syllable is long, stress falls on it. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| mumárriṣa | 'nurse (f.)' | madrásathum | 'their school' |
| takállamu | 'they talked' | 'aʃGáalahum | 'their jobs' |
| basaatíinak | 'your orchards' | sikirtéera | 'secretary (f.)' |
| mustaʃfáahum | 'their hospital' | Hawaaníitak | 'your shops' |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Equational Sentences

In UNIT 1 it was pointed out that the subject of an equational sentence could be a personal pronoun, e.g., 'ana 'I', 'ant 'you (m.s.)' or a noun with a suffix, e.g., 'ismi 'my name' and the predicate could be a personal noun, e.g., daawuud or a prepositional phrase, e.g., min al-yaman 'from Yemen'. In this lesson we learn that the predicate of an equational sentence can also be a common noun. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| huw daktoor. | 'He is a doctor.' |
| 'ana muhandis. | "I am an engineer.' |
| 'uxti mumarrið̣a. | "My sister is a nurse.' |

## 2. Noun Constructs

A noun construct in Arabic is a construction composed of two nouns or noun phrases syntactically bound together. The first element consists of a noun which must always be indefinite in form, i.e., it can never take the article prefix 'al- 'the'. The entire construction is definite or indefinite in accordance with the second element. The second element can be a single noun or a noun phrase. Thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| daktoor mustaʃfa | 'a hospital doctor' |
| daktoor al-mustaʃfa | 'the hospital doctor' |
| 'ism bank | 'the name of a bank' |
| 'ism as-sikirteer | 'the secretary's (m.) name' |

The second element can itself be a phrase:

| | |
|---|---|
| sikirteer bank ar-riyaað̣ | 'the secretary of the bank of Riyadh' |
| 'ism daktoor al-mustaʃfa | 'the hospital doctor's name' |

If the first element of a noun construct has the feminine ending -a, -t must be added to it:

| | |
|---|---|
| sikirteerat al-bank | 'the bank secretary (f.) |
| sikirteerat bank | 'a bank secretary (f.) |

* sikirteera 'al-bank is ungrammatical.

The noun construct, i.e., N + ('al-) N, is equivalent in meaning to any of the following English constructions:

a. NN : 'the hospital doctor' daktoor al-mustaʃfa
b. N's N : 'Zaid's sister' 'uxt zayd
c. N of N : 'the ministry of public works' wazaarat al-'aʃGaal

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Chain

Each student is asked to say: 'ana min _____ fi _____ 'I am from _____ in _____', supplying the names of the city and the state (country) he or she comes from.

### Drill 2 Substitution

Base Question: kayf Gaanim ? "How is Ghanim?'

1. yuusif
2. zayd
3. 'al-'ahl
4. 'al-yaman
5. 'al-mustaʃfa
6. 'aʃ-ʃuGl
7. daawuud
8. 'al-'imaaraat
9. ʃuGlak
10. ʃuGliʃ
11. 'uxtiʃ
12. 'uxtak

### Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'ana muhandis min al-maxa.
'I am an engineer from Mocha.'

1. 'ant
2. huw
3. daktoor
4. 'anti
5. Gaanim
6. maryam
7. daktoora
8. 'uxti
9. sikirteera
10. mumarri§a
11. 'ant
12. ana
13. 'al-'imaaraat
14. 'uxti
15. 'axi

### Drill 4 Substitution

Attach the suffixed pronouns: -i, -ak, -iʃ, -ana/-una to the following nouns:

1. 'ism
2. muhandis
3. 'ahl
4. 'uxt
5. daktoora
6. sikirteera
7. ʃuGl
8. bank
9. daktoor
10. 'aʃGaal
11. sikirteer
12. wazaara

### Drill 5 Repetition

1. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal
2. bank al-kuwayt
3. bank ar-riyaaδ̣
4. sikirteerat al-wazaara
5. daktoorat almustaʃfa
6. sikirteerat al-bank
7. sikirteerat al-mustaʃfa
8. bank al-yaman
9. 'uxt Gaanim
10. mustaʃfa al-maxa

### Drill 6 Transformation: indefinite → definite

Example: bank → 'al-bank 'bank → the bank'

1. 'ism
2. sikirteer
3. ʃuGl
4. masa
5. daktoora
6. wazaara
7. 'ahl
8. mustaʃfa
9. sikirteera
10. muhandis
11. daktoor
12. mumarriδ̣a

### Drill 7 Question → Answer

1. maa 'ismak ?
2. 'ayn al-maxa ?
3. kayf al-'ahl
4. 'ayn as-sikirteera ?
5. min 'ayn ant ?
6. man 'ant ?
7. 'ayn ʃuGliʃ ?
8. 'anti daktoora ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. najla : massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr!
layla : massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr. 'ahlan wa sahlan!
najla : maa 'ismiʃ ?
layla : 'ismi layla. w-anti man ?
najla : 'ana najla. min 'ayn anti ?
layla : min ar-riyaað̣. w-anti min 'ayn?
najla : min al-maxa. 'ayn ʃuGliʃ ?
layla : ʃuGli sikirteera fi bank al-yaman. w-anti ?
najla : ʃuGli mumarrið̣a fi mustaʃfa l-kuwayt.

2. zaynab : 'ayn 'uxtiʃ ?
jamiila : 'uxti fi l-bank.
zaynab : maa ʃuGlaha ?
jamiila : ʃuGlaha daktoora.
zaynab : w-anti 'ayn ʃuGliʃ ?
jamiila : ʃuGli muhandisa fi wazaarat al-'aʃGaal.
zaynab : kayf ʃuGliʃ ?
jamiila : ʃuGli naahi.

# U N I T 5

## I. TEXT

### haaδa w-haaδi

mahdi : massaak aLLa b-l-xayr ya yuusif!

yuusif : massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!

mahdi : haaδa Taaha. huw mudiir ʃarika haana, w-haaδi faaTima. hiy Tabiiba fi mustaʃfa θ-θawra. hum min 'amriika.

yuusif : 'ahlan wa sahlan! 'antu min 'ayy wilaaya fi 'amriika ?

Taaha : min wilaayat 'arizoona. w-ant min haana ?

yuusif : 'ii. 'ana min haana, min al-yaman.

## II. TRANSLATION

### This (m.) and This (f.)

Mahdi : Good afternoon, Joseph!

Joseph : Good afternoon.

Mahdi : This is Taha. He is the director of a company here, and this is Fatima. She is a nurse at the Revolution Hospital. They are from America.

Joseph : Nice meeting you! Which state are you from in America?

Taha : From the State of Arizona. Are you from here?

Joseph : Yes. I am from here, from Yemen.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ya | voc. part. | Tabiiba | doctor (f.) |
| haaδa | this (m.) | θawra | revolution (f.) |
| mudiir | director, manager (m.) | hum | they (m.) |
| ʃarika | company (f.) | 'amriika | America ( f.) |
| haana | here | 'antu | you (m.p.) |
| haaδi | this (f.) | 'ayy | which; what? |
| hiy | she (f.) | wilaaya | state; region (f.) |
| | | 'ii | yes |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

### t versus T

t and T constitute the third pair of plain and pharyngealized consonants. The first two were l - L and δ - δ̣. t is similar to English t in tin. In the production of t the tip of the tongue touches the upper teeth; for the pharyngealized T, the tongue, instead of remaining relaxed as for plain t, is tense and a little retracted. t is a little aspirated, i.e., pronounced with a little burst of air, while T is unaspirated. English t in some words has a quality fairly close to the SA T sound, e.g., Tom, tot, bought, caught, etc. Keep in mind that T, like any other pharyngealized sound, takes the backed pronunciation of adjacent vowels, while t takes a fronted variety: taam vs. Taam sound like English "tam" and "Tom", respectively.

In SA intervocalic T and -TT- (-vTv- or vTTv-) sounds like a velarized d, e.g., baaTil, ʃayaaTiin and maTar are pronounced baaDil, ʃayaaDiin, and maDar, respectively. Keep in mind that intervocalic T (or TT) is pronounced like a velarized or backed d sound in the following two drills:

Drill 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| taam → | Taam | watan → | waTan |
| tayyaar | Tayyaar | fatar | faTar |
| tiin | Tiin | batiin | baTiin |
| tays | Tays | maatoor | maaToor |
| tuul | Tuul | rutab | ruTab |

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

### Drill 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fattan → | faTTan | xabat → | xabaT |
| batti | baTTi | xaat | xaaT |
| xatteet | xaTTeet | baxiit | baxiiT |
| ʃattuu | ʃaTTuu | Gayt | GayT |
| xuttaar | xuTTaar | tuut | TuuT |

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. The Vocative Particle *ya*

The vocative particle ya is used in direct address before nouns, names, and titles in SA, as in massaak aLLa b-l-xayr ya yuusif! 'Good evening (afternoon), Joseph!' Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| ya daktoor mahdi! | 'Doctor Mahdi!' |
| kayf 'ant ya zayd ? | 'How are you, Zaid?' |

ya sikirteer! 'Secretary (m.)! is grammatically correct but socially discourteous, but ya daktoor! is normal.

### 2. Demonstratives

haaδa 'this (m.)' and haaδi 'this (f.)' are demonstrative pronouns. In this lesson they are used as subjects:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa Taaha. | 'This is Taha.' |
| haaδi faaTima. | 'This is Fatima.' |
| haaδi 'uxti. | 'This is my sister.' |

The predicate of a demonstrative pronoun can also be an indefinite noun:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa muhandis. | 'This is an engineer.' |
| haaδi sikirteera. | 'This is a secretary.' |

This structure poses a problem for native speakers of English, as they tend to equate haaδa muhandis with "this engineer". If the noun following the demonstrative pronoun is definite, then the demonstrative pronoun functions either as the entire subject or as part of the subject of the sentence or clause:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa l-mudiir. | 'This is the director.' |
| haaδa l-mudiir . . . | 'This director . . .' |
| haaδa l-mudiir naahi. | 'This director is good.' |

Titles like 'aT-Tabiib 'Dr. (m.)', 'as-sikirteer 'Secretary (m.)', etc., always take the article prefix in Arabic when not used in a direct address:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa T-Tabiib yuusif. | 'This is Dr. Joseph.' |
| haaδi s-sikirteera faaTima. | 'This is Secretary Fatima.' |
| min 'ayn ad-daktoor 'anwar ? | 'Where is Dr. Anwar from?' |

*haaδi sikirteera faaTima is ungrammatical.

3. Note that in natural speech fi 'amriika 'in America' becomes f-amriika.

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: noun → pronoun

Example: T: maryam 'Miriam'
S: hiy 'She'

1. jamiila
2. ʃuGl
3. Tabiiba
4. 'ibraahiim
5. mahdi
6. Taaha
7. mustaʃfa
8. faaTima
9. mudiir
10. haaδa
11. 'ibb
12. haaδi

### Drill 2 Substitution

Substitute the demonstrative pronoun that stands for the proper name given.

| Example: | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | T: | zayd | 'Zaid' |
| | S: | haaδa zayd. | 'This is Zaid' |
| | T: | maryam | 'Miriam' |
| | S: | haaδi maryam. | 'This is Miriam.' |

1. faaTima
2. naansi
3. yuusif
4. 'ibraahiim
5. najla
6. Taaha
7. zahra
8. mahdi
9. Gaanim
10. saara
11. 'anwar
12. kariima

### Drill 3 Chain

Each student repeats the phrase massaak (massaaʃ) aLLa b-l-xayr ya jamiil (jamiila)! 'Good afternoon, Jamil (Jamila)!'

### Drill 4 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. haaδa Tabiib.
2. haaδa mumarriδ̣.
3. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!
4. 'ayn ʃuGlak ?
5. min 'ayn ant ?
6. haaδa jamiil.
7. kayf ant ?
8. haaδa mudiir.
9. haaδa muhandis.
10. 'ayn mudiirak ?
11. maa 'ismak ?
12. haaδa mumarriδ̣.
13. maa ʃuGlak ?
14. 'ant sikirteer ?

### Drill 5 Double Substitution

yuusif mudiir w-faaTima mudiira.

'Joseph is a director and Fatima is a director.'

1. kariim - kariima
2. 'amiin - 'amiina
3. 'axi - 'uxti
4. samiir - samiira
5. zayd - zahra
6. Taaha - saara
7. yuusif - najla
8. jamiil - jamiila
9. mirʃid - 'aamina
10. 'anwar - huda
11. mahdi - maryam
12. ʃukri - sayda

Substitute Tabiib, mumarriδ, muhandis and their feminine forms for mudiir and mudiira.

### Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: haaδa mudiir min Arizona.
'This is a director from Arizona.'

1. muhandis
2. 'ana
3. Tabiib
4. 'al-yaman
5. huw
6. 'al-kuwayt
7. hiy
8. wilaayat Mexico
9. 'al-'imaaraat
10. 'ar-riyaaδ̣
11. haaδi
12. 'ant
13. 'amriika
14. wilaayat Texas
15. fi
16. sikirteera

### Drill 7 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Example: | T: mudiir - wazaara | 'director - ministry' |
| | S$_1$: 'ayn al-mudiir ? | 'Where is the director?' |
| | S$_2$: 'al-mudiir fi l-wazaara. | 'The director is in the ministry.' |

1. mudiir - bank
2. Tabiib - mustaʃfa
3. muhandis - 'ibb
4. sikirteera - ʃarika
5. ʃarika - 'ar-riyaaδ
6. mumarriδ̣a - mustaʃfa
7. muhandis - ʃarika
8. mudiira - bank
9. sikirteer - haana
10. maryam - 'al-maxa
11. mahdi - yariim
12. 'al-wilaaya - 'amriika

### Drill 8 Translation

1. Bank of Yemen
2. Bank of America
3. the company manager
4. They are all here.
5. You (f.s.) are welcome.
6. Bank of Riyadh
7. The Ministry of Public Works
8. Are you (m.p.) from America?
9. Yes, we are all from here.
10. the State of California

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape twice at least, and then indicate whether the statements below are true or false. If the statement is false, give the correct statement in SA.

1. I am from the State of Arizona.
2. I am a medical doctor.
3. My work is in Kuwait Hospital.
4. My brother is in Hudaida.
5. My brother is an engineer.
6. My sister is a secretary.
7. She is in Sanaa.
8. She is from Arizona.

# UNIT 6

## I. TEXT

### Taam w-zawjata

Sadiigi Taam 'amriiki min kalifoornya. huw min madiinat Los Angeles fi wilaayat kalifoornya. gad huw mudiir ʃarikat filibs fi l-yaman. huda zawjat Taam w-hiy miSriyya. gad hiy muwað̣ð̣afa fi bank ad-damm. bintahum sikirteera fi l-bank wa waladhum 'isma 'anwar. gad huw Taalib fi l-madrasa.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Tom and His Wife

My friend, Tom, is an American from California. He is from the city of Los Angeles in the State of California. He is the director of the Phillips Company in Yemen. Huda is Tom's wife and she is Egyptian. She is a nurse in the Blood Bank. Their daughter is a secretary at the bank and their son's name is Anwar. He is a student in school.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sadiig | friend (m) | damm | blood (m.) |
| 'amriiki | American (m.) | bint | daughter; girl (f.) |
| madiina | city (f.) | walad | son; boy (m.) |
| zawja | wife (f.) | Taalib | student (m.) |
| miSriyya | Egyptian (f.) | madrasa | school (f.) |
| muwað̣ð̣afa | employee (f.) | | |

## IV. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 1

### s versus S

s and S constitute the fourth pair of plain and pharyngealized consonants. s is similar to English s in sit. S, on the other hand, sounds different and is pronounced differently. For the production of S the front part of the tongue is in the same position as for s, but the central part is depressed and the back part raised toward the velum or soft palate. Pharyngealized S has a lower pitch than plain s. English s, on the other hand, has a lower pitch in the vicinity of backed vowels as in Tucson, sauce, sod, etc., which will help you produce a satisfactory S.

SA pharyngealized consonants are L, δ, T, S, and intervocalic T, which sounds like a pharyngealized D. You have noticed that in the production of these consonant sounds the tongue is tense and its back part raised toward the velum. You may have noticed that the most striking characteristic of pharyngealization to native speakers of English is the change in the quality of adjacent vowels. To an Arab it is the pharyngealized consonant that affects adjacent vowels.

Contrast between initial and medial s - S :

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| saar | → | Saar | basam | → | baSam |
| saal | | Saal | basar | | baSar |
| sabb | | Sabb | rasa | | raSa |
| saff | | Saff | 'asiir | | 'aSiir |
| sayf | | Sayf | mansuub | | manSuub |

The same procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1 is to be followed.

Drill 2

Contrast between medial ss - SS and final s - S :

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| jassa | → | jaSSa | baas | → | baaS |
| massa | | maSSa | labas | | labaS |
| bassaam | | baSSaam | mallaas | | mallaaS |
| xassayt | | xaSSayt | Gaws | | GawS |
| 'issiin | | 'iSSiin | suus | | SuuS |

Follow the same procedure in UNIT 1 Pronunciation Drill 1.

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Proper Names

Proper names include the names of people, places, books, films, newspapers, etc. They do not need any marking for definiteness, for they are definite by virtue of being proper nouns. Whether they appear with the article prefix or not is a matter of lexical etymology, and not a realization of two different states of definiteness. Learn the following names of countries:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lubuaan | 'Lebanon' | miSr | 'Egypt' |
| kanada | 'Canada' | suuriyya | 'Syria' |
| tuunis | 'Tunisia' | dubayy | 'Dubai' |
| liibya | 'Libya' | 'ingiltara | 'England' |
| faransa | 'France' | 'as-suudaan | 'Sudan' |
| 'al-baakistaan | 'Pakistan' | 'al-hind | 'India' |
| 'al-'urdun | 'Jordan' | 'aʃ-ʃaariga | 'Sharja' |
| 'amriika | 'America (f.)' | 'al-maGrib | 'Morocco' |
| 'iiraan | 'Iran' | 'al-jazaa'ir | 'Algeria' |
| qaTar | 'Qatar' | 'iiTaalya | 'Italy' |
| 'abu ð̣abi | 'Abu Dhabi' | 'aLmaanya | 'Germany' |

### 2. Nisba Adjectives

Nisba adjectives are relative adjectives which indicate something characteristic of (or having to do with) the words they are derived from. Most nisba adjectives are derived from nouns; a few are derived from words other than nouns. In this section we are concerned with nisba adjectives that are derived from names of countries. Note the following rules:

a. Most nisba adjectives are formed by suffixing *-i* to a noun. The following are indefinite masculine singular forms:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| luauaan | → | lubuaani | 'Lebanon | → | Lebanese' |
| tuunis | | tuunisi | 'Tunisia | | Tunisian' |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| gaTar | gaTari | 'Qatar | Qatari' |
| miSr | miSri | 'Egypt | Egyptian' |
| 'iiraan | 'iiraani | 'Iran | Iranian' |
| kanada | kanadi | 'Canada | Canadian' |

b. Nouns with the article prefix 'al- lose this prefix when -i is added:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 'al-baakistaan | → | baakistaani | 'Pakistan | → | Pakistani' |
| 'al-yaman | | yamani | 'Yemen | | Yemeni' |
| 'as-suudaan | | suudaani | 'the Sudan | | Sudanese' |
| 'al-'urdun | | 'urduni | 'Jordan | | Jordanian |
| 'al-hind | | hindi | 'India | | Indian' |
| 'al-maGrib | | maGribi | 'Morocco | | Moroccan' |

c. Nouns ending with -a drop the -a before -i is added:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kanada | → | kanadi | 'Canada | → | Canadian' |
| faransa | | faransi | 'France | | French' |
| 'aʃ-ʃaariga | | ʃaarigi | 'Sharja | | Sharji' |
| 'amriika | | 'amriiki | 'America | | American' |

Note that -iyya or -ya are dropped when -i is added:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| suuriyya | → | suuri | 'Syria | → | Syrian' |
| liibya | | liibi | 'Libya | | Libyan' |
| 'iiTaalya | | 'iiTaali | 'Italy | | Italian' |
| 'aLmaanya | | 'aLmaani | 'Germany | | German' |

d. A few formations are irregular:

'ingiltara → 'ingiliizi

Compound nouns in SA, e.g., 'abu δ̣abi 'Abu Dhabi', ra's al-xayma 'Ras Al-Khaima', etc., and nouns like dubayy 'Dubai' do not usually have nisba adjectives derived from them, though δibyaani 'someone from (or something characteristic of) Abu Dhabi' might be heard. The phrase "min 'from' + country" is usually used instead of the nisba adjective.

The feminine singular forms of the nisba adjective in this lesson are derived by suffixing -yya to the masculine forms. Examples:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| yamani | → | yamaniyya | 'amriiki | → | 'amriikiyya |
| hindi | | hindiyya | suuri | | suuriyya |
| 'ingiliizi | | 'ingiliiziyya | miSri | | miSriyya |

3. Suffixed Pronouns

In the preceding lessons we have had four pronominal suffixes, -i 'my', -ak 'your (m.s.)', -iʃ 'your (f.s.)', -ana/-na 'our'. In this lesson four more pronominal suffixes are presented:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 'ismaha | (-aha) | 'her name' |
| 'isma | (-a) | 'his name' |
| 'ismahum | (-ahum/-hum) | 'their (m.) name' |
| 'ismakum | (-akum/-kum) | 'your (m.p.) name' |

Feminine nouns with the -a ending add t before the suffixed pronoun is added:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| madrasa | 'school' . . . | madrasati | 'my school' |
| | | madrasatha | 'her school' |
| | | madrasatkum | 'your (m.p.) school' |

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: prep. phrase → nisba adj. (m.)

Examples: Taam min 'amriika. → Taam 'ariiki.
'Tom is from America. → Tom is American.'

1. Taaħa min al-yaman.
2. 'ibraahiim min 'iiraan.
3. zayd min suuriyya.
4. joorj min ingiltara.
5. yuusif min miSr.
6. ħanri min faransa.
7. sulTaan min liibya.
8. mirʃid min al-baakistaan.
9. 'ibraahiim min al-kuwayt.
10. saami min 'iiTaalya.
11. xamiis min lubnaan.
12. rafiig min al-hind.
13. kamaal min as-suudaan.
14. sayf min 'abu ʂabi.
15. wilyam min aLmaanya.
16. daan min amriika.

Drill 2 Transformation: phrase → nisba adj. (f.)

Repeat Drill 1 with the following feminine personal names:

1. faaTima
2. jamiila
3. tagiyya
4. maryam
5. 'amiina
6. ħuda
7. rawʂa
8. xadiija
9. zahra
10. zaynab
11. sayda
12. kariima
13. tagwa
14. nuuriya
15. yaasamiin

Drill 3 Double Substitution

jim min madiinat Los Angeles fi wilaayat California.

1. Tucson - Arizona
2. New York - New York
3. Detroit - Michigan
4. Chicago - Illinois
5. Columbus - Ohio
6. Phoenix - Arizona
7. Seattle - Washington
8. Denver - Colorado
9. Austin - Texas
10. San Francisco - CA

Drill 4 Repetition

1. mudiir ʃarikat filibs
2. zawjat mudiir aʃ-ʃarika
3. bint sikirteer al-wazaara
4. bint mudiirat al-mustaʃfa
5. mudiir bank ad-damm
6. sikirteer wazaarat al-'aʃGaal
7. muhandis ʃarikat BP
8. mudiir mustaʃfa l-kuwayt
9. muwaʂʂaf ʃarikat filibs
10. Sadiig muhandis aʃ-ʃarika

### Drill 5 Substitution

Attach the suffixed pronouns -i, -ak, -iʃ, -a, -aha, -ahum/-hum, and -akum/-kum to the following nouns.

1. bint
2. walad
3. madiina
4. ʃuGl
5. Sadiig
6. damm
7. madrasa
8. ʃarika
9. 'uxt
10. 'ahl
11. 'ism
12. wilaaya

### Drill 6 Substitution

a. Attach to the noun given in the base sentence the proper suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun.

Example: 'ana : ʃuGli naahi. 'I : My work is good.'
'anti : ʃuGliʃ naahi. 'You (f.s.) : Your work is good.

1. huw
2. 'ant
3. 'anti
4. 'ana
5. hum
6. hiy
7. 'antu
8. 'ant
9. huw
10. 'ant
11. hum
12. hiy

b. Repeat a. with the following.

1. 'ana : 'ibraahiim Sadiigi.
'I : Ibrahim is my friend.'

2. 'ana : binti 'ismaha muna.
'I : My daughter's name is Mona.'

### Drill 7 Transformation: statement → question

Ask questions to which the following are the answers. Use the question words : kayf 'how', maa 'what', 'ayn 'where', and min ayn 'from where'.

1. b-xayr ʃukran.
2. 'isma daawuud.
3. bint sikirteer al-wazaara.
7. b-xayr naahiya.
8. haaδa mustaʃfa.
9. hiy min gaTar.

4. 'ii 'ana min haana.
5. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa.
6. hum min miSr.
10. kulluna b-xayr.
11. ʃuGli haana.
12. 'ii huw 'amriiki.

Drill 8 Translation

1. Good evening, Salim!
2. This is my friend, Tom.
3. You are welcome, George!
4. He is an employee here.
5. She is a student.
6. She is American.
7. He is English from London.
8. She is a nurse in the hospital.
9. What is your work?
10. Their son is a student.
11. Her sister is my friend.
12. I am in the Ministry of Public works.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr ya muna!
muna : 'ahlan wa sahlan!
tagiyya : man haaδi l-bint ?
muna : haaδi maryam.
tagiyya : kayf anti ya maryam ?
maryam : naahiya b-xayr. w-'anti
tagiyya : laa ba's. min 'ayn anti?
maryam : min 'amriika.
tagiyya : min 'ayy wilaaya ?
maryam : min Texas.

2. huda : man haaδi l-bint ?
Taaha : haaδi binti.
huda : maa 'ismaha ?
Taaha : xayriya.
huda : w-haaδa l-walad ?
Taaha : waladi. 'isma yuusif.
huda : 'ant fi l-madrasa ya yuusif ?
yuusif : 'ii 'ana Taalib.

# UNIT 7

## I. TEXT

### 'as-salaama 9alaykum

9ali : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
9abdaLLa : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
9ali : kayf ant ?
9abdaLLa : Tayyib naahi. kayf al-9aa'ila ? kullukum b-xayr nʃaaLLa.
9ali : 'iHna kulluna b-xayr. ʃukran.
9abdaLLa : xaaTrak!
9ali : ma9 as-salaama.
9abdaLLa : sallamak aLLaah!

## II. TRANSLATION

### Peace Be Upon You

Ali : Peace be upon you!
Abdalla : Peace be upon you!
Ali : How are you?
Abdalla : Not bad. I'm fine. How is the family ? I hope you are all fine.
Ali : We are all fine. Thank you.
Abdalla : Goodbye!
Ali : Goodbye.
Abdalla : God protect you!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| salaam | peace (m.) | nʃaaLLa | hopefully; I hope.<br>(lit., "If God wills") |
| 9ala/9alay- | on | | |
| 9alaykum | on you (m. p.) | xaaTrak | goodbye |
| Tayyib | fine, good (m.) | ma9 | with |
| 9aa'ila | family (f.) | salaama | safety (f.) |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9ammaan | Amman (f.) | baariis | Paris (f.) |
| 'al-gaahira | Cairo (f.) | baGdaad | Baghdad (f.) |
| Tahraan | Tehran (f.) | dimaʃg | Damascus (f.) |
| 'al-xarTuum | Khartoum (f.) | San9a | Sanaa (f.) |
| landan | London (f.) | 'ar-rabaaT | Rabat (f.) |

## V. PRONUNCIATION

### Drill 1

9

Arabic 9, technically known as a voiced pharyngeal fricative, is a relatively difficult sound; there is nothing in the English sound system that is similar or even close to it. The American English r sound is phonetically similar to 9 in that 9 is a faucalized mid central vowel while r is a retroflexed rounded mid central vowel. American students have confused, e.g., maw9id and mawrid. For the production of 9, the muscles in the throat become very tense and the passageway at the back of the throat becomes constricted. Several ways have been suggested for a satisfactory production of the 9 sound. As a first exercise, say "ah," and then tense up the muscles of your throat as in gagging. Another exercise is to try to imitate the bleating of a sheep "baa". Tighten your neck and throat muscles as if someone were choking you. The result would be a strangled or a squeezed sound, which is an approximation of the 9 sound.

Initial and Medial 9

9aam
9aad
9aa'ila
9arab
9alayk
9indi
9umr

9ayʃ
9ayn
9iid
9ood
9oora
9uud
9uum

jaami9a
saa9a
na9am
ba9iid
tisma9u
ma9i
ma9kum

'al-9ayn
'al-9ayʃ
ta9izz
mista9iir
San9a
'as-su9uudiyya
maa9uun

## Medial -9c- and Final-9

↓ ba9d
ba9δ̣
Sa9da
si9r
yi9wir
siTTa9ʃ
mal9aga

jaa9
baa9
saa9
bay9
bii9
δii9
kuu9

law9
naw9
juu9
buu9
zara9
tisi9
jama9

rafa9
ʃaari9
jamii9
jaami9
muzaari9
sarii9
mamnuu9

### Drill 2

## Contrast between ' and 9

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'addiili | 9addiili | 'ayn | 9ayn |
| 'aadi | 9aadi | 'awra | 9awra |
| 'ajiib | 9ajiib | na'am | na9am |
| 'iid | 9iid | sa'al | sa9al |
| 'uud | 9uud | jarii' | jarii9 |
| 'ayʃ | 9ayʃ | ba's | ba9s |

## VI. GRAMMAR

### 1. Suffixed Pronouns

a. Below is a list of all the personal pronouns and the corresponding suffixed pronouns in SA:

| Personal Pronoun | | Suffixed Pronoun | Example | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| huw | 'he' | -a | ʃuGla | 'his work' |
| hum | 'they (m.)' | -hum/ahum | ʃuGlahum | 'their work' |
| hiy | 'she' | -ha/-aha | ʃuGlaha | 'her work' |
| hin | 'they (f.)' | -hin/-ahin | ʃuGlahin | 'their work' |
| 'ant | 'you (m.s.)' | -ak | ʃuGlak | 'your work' |
| 'antu | 'you (f.p.)' | -kum/-akum | ʃuGlakum | 'your work' |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 'ana | 'I' | -i | ʃuGliʃ | 'my work' |
| 'antayn | 'you (f.p.) | -kin/-akin | ʃuGlakin | 'your work' |

Note that there are two suffixed pronouns corresponding to *hiy*, *hin*, *'antu*, *'antayn*, and *'iHna*. Her work, e.g., is either *ʃuGulha* or *ʃuGlaha*; their (f.) work is either *ʃuGulhin*, or *ʃuGlahin*, etc. The latter forms are more commonly used, and will be used throughout.

b. It has been pointed out that suffixed pronouns indicate possession when they are attached to nouns, as in the examples above and that they can also be attached to prepositions, in which case they function as objects of prepositions.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ma9a/ma9aa | 'with him' | ma9kum/ma9aakum | 'with you (m.p.)' |
| ma9hum/ma9aahum | 'with them (m.)' | ma9iʃ | 'with you (f.s.)' |
| ma9ha/ma9aaha | 'with her' | ma9kin/ma9aakin | 'with you (f.p.)' |
| ma9hin/ma9aahim | 'with them (f.)' | ma9i | 'with me' |
| ma9ak/ma9aak | 'with you (m.s.)' | ma9na/ma9aana | 'with us' |

*9ala* 'on', *min* 'from', and *fi* 'in' have the following irregular forms:

*9ala* : (*9alay-*) *9alayh*, *9alayhum*, *9alayha*, *9alayhin*, *9alayk*,
*9alaykum*, *9alayʃ*, *9alaykin*, *9alayy*, *9alayna*

*min* : *minn-* + vowel
*minna*, *minhum*, *minha*, *minhin*, *minnak*, *minkum*,
*minniʃ*, *minkin*, *minni*, *minna*/*minnana*

*fi* : *fii-*, except *fiini* 'in me'
*fii(h)*, *fiihum*, *fiiha*, *fiihin*, *fiik*, *fiikum*, *fiiʃ*,
*fiikin*, *fiina*

## NOTES ON TEXT

Note that upon meeting or leaving someone or a group of people (regardless of gender) you bid them 'as-salaamu 9alaykum 'Peace be upon you!' The response is (wa)9alaykum as-salaam '(and) peace be upon you!'

The response to ma9 as-salaama 'with safety' is sallamak aLLaah! 'May God keep you (m.s.) safe, protect you!', which should be learned as a formula.

## VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

a. $S_1$ : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! 'Peace be upon you!'
$S_2$ : wa 9alaykum as-salaam! 'And peace be upon you!'

b.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ | xaaTrak! | 'Goodbye!' |
| $S_2$ | ma9 as-salaama. | 'Goodbye.' |
| $S_1$ | sallamak aLLaah! | 'God protect you!' |

Drill 2 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ | kayf ant (anti)? | 'How are you (m.,f.)?' |
| $S_2$ | Tayyib. naahi. w-ant (anti)? | 'I'm fine. And you (m., f.)?' |
| $S_1$ | b-xayr. ʃukran. | 'Fine. Thank you.' |

Drill 3 Substitution

a. Attach to the noun in the base sentence the proper suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun given.

Base Sentence: 'ana : waladi 'isma 9ali.
'I : My son's name is Ali.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. hiy
4. hin
5. 'ant
6. 'anti
7. 'antu
8. 'antayn
9. 'iHna

b. Repeat a. with the following:

1. 'ana : 9aa'ilati haana. 'My family is here.'
2. 'ana : mudiiri haana. 'My director is here.'

Drill 4 Transformation: prep. phrase → nisba adj.

Example: Taam min Arizona fi 'amriika →
Taam 'amriiki min Arizona.

'Tom is from Arizona in America.' →
'Tom is American from Arizona.'

1. faTima min 'ibb fi l-yaman.
2. 9ali min al-xarTuum fi s-suudaan.
3. zahra min 9ammaan fi l-'urdun.
4. saara min ar-rabaaT fi l-maGrib.
5. zaynab min al-gaahira fi miSr.
6. 'amiin min dimaʃg fi suuriyya.
7. saami min New York fi 'amriika.
8. 9aa'iʃa min San9a fi l-yaman.
9. Henry min baariis fi faransa.
10. Bob min landan fi 'ingiltara.

Drill 5 Substitution

Attach to the preposition given in the base sentence the suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun given.

a. Base Sentence : 'ana : huw ma9i. 'I: He is with me.'

1. hum
2. hiy
3. hin
4. 'ant
5. 'antu
6. 'anti
7. 'antayn
8. 'iHna
9. 'ana

b. Base Sentence : huw : haaδa minna. 'He: This is from him.'

Use substitution from Drill 5 a. above.

Drill 6 Substitution

Example: kulluna min San9a. 'We are all from Sanaa.'
hum: kulluhum min San9a. 'They (m.) are all from Sanaa.'

1. hin
2. 'antu
3. 'antayn
4. 'iHna
5. hum
6. 'antu
7. 'antayn
8. hum
9. hin

Drill 7 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. kayf ant ?
2. naahi. ʃukran.
3. kullukum b-xayr nʃaaLLa.
4. Sadiigi 'amriiki.
5. waladi fi l-madrasa.
6. 'antu min haana ?
7. huw miSri min al-gaahira.
8. 'ant muwa§§af ?
9. haaδa mumarri§ haana.
10. haaδa mudiir aʃ-ʃarika.
11. haaδa sikirteer.
12. xaaTrak!

Drill 8 Question → Answer

1. kayf anti ?
2. kayf al-9aa'ila ?
3. 'anti Taaliba ?
4. 'ayn ʃuGlak?
5. min ayn hum ?
6. hiy 'amriikiyya ?
7. 'ayn 9ammaan ?
8. dubay fi gaTar ?
9. maa ʃuGlak ?
10. 'anti Tayyiba nʃaaLLa!

## VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. Listen at least twice to the following passage on tape, and then answer the following questions:

1. maa ʃuGl 9abd al-9aziiz ?
2. fi 'ayy wazaara ʃuGla ?
3. fi 'ay madiina huw ?
4. 9ammaan fi 9umaan ?
5. min 'ayn 9abd al-9aziiz ?
6. 'ayn 9aa'ilata ?
7. man 'ismaa9iil ?
8. maa 'ism bint 9abd al-9aziiz ?
9. maa ʃuGl al-walad ?
10. kulluhum b-xayr ?

b. Reproduce the passage on tape with the help of the following key words:

muhandis -- wazaara -- 9amman -- San9a
9aa'ila -- walad -- bint -- 'ismaa9iil
9aa'iʃa -- madrasa -- b-xayr

# UNIT 8

## I. TEXT

### maw9id

9abd al-gaadir : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

mahdi : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.

9abd al-gaadir : 'ismi 9abd al-gaadir bin 9abdaLLa. 9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir.

mahdi : 'ahlan wa sahlan! 9indak maw9id al-yawm f-ayy Hiin ?

9abd al-gaadir : na9am 'al-yawm. 'as-saa9a 9aʃir. 'al-mudiir haana ?

mahdi : 'ii. gad huw mawjuud fi l-maktab. tafa§§al!

## II. TRANSLATION

### An Appointment

Abd Al-Qadir: Peace be upon you!

Mahdi : Peace be upon you.

Abd Al-Qadir: My name is Abd Al-Qadir bin Abdalla. I have an appointment with the director.

Mahdi : You are welcome! What time do you have an appointment today?

Abd Al-Qadir: Yes today, at ten o'clock. Is the director here ?

Mahdi : Yes, the director is here. Please go in!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bin | the son of (m.) | na9am | yes |
| 9indi | I have | 'as-saa9a | at (the hour of) |
| maw9id | appointment (m.) | 9aʃir | ten |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'al-yawm | today | haana | here |
| Hiin | time (m.) | maktab | office (m.) |
| | | tafað̣ð̣al! | Good ahead! Please! (m.) |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yawm | day (m.) | 'as-saa9a ... | It is ... o'clock. |
| xamsa | five | 9aʃara | ten |
| sitta | six | Gudwa | tomorrow |
| sab9a | seven | 'ams | yesterday |
| θamaaniya | eight | 'al-jum9a | Friday |
| tis9a | nine | 'as-sabt | Saturday |
| saa9a | hour; watch; clock | maaʃi | no |

## V. PRONUNCIATION

### Drill 1

h and 9

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| hala | → | 9ala | haa'ila | → | 9aa'ila | hawn | → 9awn |
| haal | | 9aal | hadd | | 9add | hayba | 9ayba |
| hamm | | 9amm | hayn | | 9ayn | hawm | 9awm |
| hindi | | 9indi | sahayt | | sa9ayt | huud | 9uud |

### Drill 2

Practicing 9

Read the following:

9abdaLLa
maw9id
na9am
tisi9
jum9a
9aʃara
sab9a
sabi9
9alaykum
9aʃir
tis9a
9indakum
9indi
mas9uud
'al-jum9a
9aa'ila
9indiʃ
saa9a
9ali
ma9i

### Drill 2

Stress mark the following words, and read them, being careful to stress them as you have marked them:

maw9id
saa9a
θamaaniya
9alaykum
tafaḍḍal
9aʃir
Gudwa
sallamk
'al-yawm
na9am
'as-sabt
nʃaaLLa
sitta
sab9a
'al-jum9a
maSriyya

## VI. GRAMMAR

### 1. 9ind-

9ind- is used with suffixed pronouns to form a verb-like expression meaning approximately 'to have', e.g., 9indi maw9id 'I have an appointment.' 9ind is generally a preposition meaning 'at; close to; in the possession of; at the house of or place (e.g., store, building, etc.) of'. Examples of this latter use will be given later on.

This preposition 9ind has two forms, depending on the suffix: 9ind- if the suffix begins with a vowel, and usually 9inda- if the suffix begins with a consonant. Examples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9indi | 'I have' | 9indana | 'we have' |
| 9indak | 'you (m.s.) have' | 9indahum | 'they (m.) have' |
| 9indiʃ | 'you (f.s.) have' | 9indahin | 'they (f.) have' |
| | 9indakum/9indukum | 'you (m.p.) have' | |

### 2. Telling Time

Note that in SA when you count (e.g., 5-10) you keep the -a ending of the numerals: xamsa 'five', sitta 'six', sab9a 'seven', θamaaniya 'eight', tis9a 'nine', and 9aʃara 'ten'. When you tell time (e.g., 'It's five o'clock'), you usually drop the *-a* ending from the numerals, with some appropriate changes:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'as-saa9a xams. | 'It's five o'clock.' |
| 'as-saa9a 9aʃir. | 'It's ten o'clock.' |
| 'as-saa9 θamaan. | 'It's eight o'clock.' |

Note that *9aʃara* becomes *9aʃir*, *θamaaniya* becomes *θamaan*, *tis9a* becomes *tisi9*, and *sab9a* becomes *sabi9*.

Another construction, characteristic of old SA, is to make *saa9a* the first term of a noun construct, thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| saa9at 9aʃir | 'at ten o'clock' |
| saa9at θamaan | 'at eight o'clock', etc., etc. |

3. *ma9* 'with' may become *ma9aa-* before a suffixed pronoun, with the exception of *ma9i* 'I have' and *ma9iʃ* 'with you (f.s.)':

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ma9aaha | 'with her' | ma9aakum | 'with you (m.p.)' |
| ma9aak | 'with you (m.s.)' | ma9aahin | 'with them (f.)' |
| ma9aahum | 'with them (m.)' | ma9aana | 'with us' |

4. Note the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-yawm al-jum9a. | 'Today is Friday.' |
| yawm al-jum9a | 'on Friday' (noun construct) |

NOTES ON TEXT

1. *tafaδ̣δ̣al !* is the imperative form of the verb *tafaδ̣δ̣al* 'to be so good as to do something'. As an imperative it means 'Please ...!' You say it when you offer someone something (e.g., coffee, food, etc.), or a seat, or when urging someone to go first, for example, through a door. The other forms of *tafaδ̣δ̣al* are:

| | |
|---|---|
| tafaḍḍali! | Please! (said to a female) |
| tafaḍḍalu! | Please! (said to two or more males) |
| tafaḍḍalayn! | Please! (said to two or more females) |

2. 'ii 'yes' and na9am are used almost interchangeably, though na9am is a little more formal. 'ii na9am 'yes, indeed' is an emphasized "yes".

## VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir.

'I have an appointment with the director.'

1. doctor
2. doctor (f.)
3. secretary (f.)
4. secretary
5. minister
6. employee
7. nurse (f.)
8. manager
9. 9ali
10. 9aa'iʃa
11. boy
12. student

Drill 2 Double Substitution

9indi' maw9id ma9 al-waziir.

'I have an ppointment with the minister.'

1. 'ant -- employee (m.)
1. hiy -- nurse (f.)
3. hum -- manager (m.)
4. hin -- doctor (f.)
5. 'anti -- secretary (f.)
6. 'antu -- minister
7. huw -- engineer
8. 'antayn -- director (f.)

Drill 3 Double Substitution

Example: T: you (m.s.) -- minister
S: tafaδδal! 'al-waziir mawjuud.
'Go ahead (m.)! The minister is present.'

1. you (f.s.) -- secretary
2. you (m.p.) -- engineer
3. you (f.p.) -- doctor (f.)
4. you (m.s.) -- doctor
5. you (m.p.) -- employee
6. you (f.s.) -- bank manager

Drill 4 a. Repetition

a. xamsa sitta sab9 θamaaniya tis9a 9aʃara

b. T asks individual students to count from xamsa 'five' through 9aʃara 'ten'.

c. T writes, e.g., the numeral 7 on the board; students are asked to give the SA word for seven.

Drill 5 a. Repetition

+ 'as-saa9a xams.
'as-saa9a sitt.
'as-saa9a sabi9.
'as-saa9a θamaan.
'as-saa9a tisi9.
'as-saa9a 9aʃir.

b. T asks individual students to tell the time, starting with: 'as-saa9a xams. 'It's five o'clock.' through 'as-saa9a 9aʃir. 'It's ten o'clock.'

## Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir al-yawm.
'I have an appointment with the director today.'

1. 'ant
2. 'anti
3. Gudwa
4. 'al-mudiira
5. 'iHna
6. 'al-muhandis
7. hum
8. 'ana
9. 'aT-Tabiiba
10. 'antayn
11. hin
12. 'as-saa9a xams
13. 'as-saa9a 9aʃir
14. 'as-saa9a tisi9
15. 'as-saa9a θamaan

## Drill 7 Repetition

1. 9indi maw9id ma9aa.
2. 9indi maw9id ma9aahum.
3. 9indi maw9id ma9aaha.
4. 9indi maw9id ma9aahin.
5. 9indi maw9id ma9aak.
6. 9indi maw9id ma9aaʃ.
7. 9indi maw9id ma9aakum.
8. 9indi maw9id ma9aakin.

## Drill 8 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T: | muhandis -- mudiir | 'engineer -- director' |
| $S_1$: | 'ayn al-muhandis ? | 'Where is the engineer?' |
| $S_2$: | 'al-muhandis ma9 al-mudiir. | 'The engineer is with the director.' |

1. Tabiib -- mumarriδ̣
2. mudiir -- Tabiib
3. muwaδ̣δ̣af -- sikirteer
4. sikirteer -- waziir
5. zawja -- zawjaha
6. 'axi -- Sadiigi
7. 'uxti -- Sadiigatha
8. 9aa'ila -- 'uxti
9. zawj -- zawjata
10. zawj -- 9aa'ila
11. walad -- bint
12. binti -- 'uxtaha

## Drill 9 Question--Answer

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T: | 'as-saa9a xams ? | 'Is it five o'clock?' |
| S: | 'ii na9am as-saa9a xams. | 'Yes, it's five o'clock.' |

1. 'as-saa9a sitt ?
2. 'as-saa9a tisi9 ?
3. 'as-saa9a θamaan ?
4. 'al-yawm as-sabt ?
5. 'ams al-jum9a ?
6. Gudwa s-sabt ?
7. 9indak maw9id ?
8. 'al-waziir haana ?
9. 'as-saa9a sabi9 ?
10. 'as-saa9a 9a∫ir ?
11. hiy muwaʂʂafa ?
12. 'anti faaTima ?

Drill 10 Translation

1. What's today?
2. Today is Friday.
3. Yesterday was Saturday.
4. I have an appointment.
5. At what time?
6. At ten o'clock.
7. The office is here.
8. We are all fine, thanks.
9. Good evening!
10. God ahead (f.)! She is in.
11. I have a boy and a girl.
12. You are welcome.
13. tomorrow at six o'clock
14. The director is in the office.

## VIII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
zahra : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
tagiyya : 'al-9aa'ila haana ya zahra ?
zahra : maa∫i.
tagiyya : 'ayn hiya ?
zahra : fi Sa9da.
tagiyya : 'anti min Sa9da ?
zahra : maa∫i. 'ana min San9a.

2. 'as-sikirteer : 9indak maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiib ?
9ali : 'ii na9am.
'as-sikirteer : f-ayy Hiin ?
9ali : 'as-saa9a 9a∫ir.
'as-sikirteer : tafaʂʂal!
9ali : ∫ukran.

# U N I T 9

## I. TEXT

### 'al-mudiir maʃGuul

xadiija : sabbahiʃ aLLa b-l-xayr ya Haliima!

Haliima : sabbahiʃ aLLa b-l-xayr w-l-9aafiya. 'ahlan wa sahlan! kayf haaliʃ ?

xadiija : naahiya. 'al-Hamd lillaah. 9indi maw9id ma9 al-waziir saa9at waaHida. 'al-waziir mawjuud haana ?

Haliima : 'ii mawjuud bass maʃGuul ʃwayya δalhiin. tafaşşali 'ijlisi!

xadiija : ʃukran. baarak aLLa fiiʃ.

Haliima : 9afwan.

## II. TRANSLATION

### The Director Is Busy

Khadija : Good morning, Halima!

Halima : Good morning, Khadija. Welcome! How are you?

Khadija : Fine. Praise be to God! I have an appointment with the minister at one o'clock. Is the minister here?

Halima : Yes, he is, but he is a little busy now. Please sit down!

Khadija : Thanks. God bless you!

Halima : You are welcome.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9aafiya | health, well-being (f.) | maʃGuul | busy (m.) |
| Haal | condition (m.) | ʃwayya | a little |
| Hamd | praise (m.) | δalhiin | now |
| li-llaah | to God | 'ijlisi! | sit down (f.s.) |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| waaHida | one (f.) | baarak aLLa fi ... | God bless ... |
| bass | but, only | 9afwan | welcome |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| waaHid | one | 'al-'aHad | Sunday |
| 'iθnayn | two | 'al-'iθnayn | Monday |
| θintayn | two (f.) | 'aθ-θaluuθ | Tuesday |
| θalaaθa | three | 'ar-rabuu9 | Wednesday |
| 'arba9a | four | 'al-xamiis | Thursday |
| 'iHna | we | gahwa | coffee |

## V. PRONUNCIATION

### H

H and 9 are probably the most difficult sounds for native speakers of English. H shares all the features of 9 except that it is voiceless while 9 is voiced. In both of these two sounds the muscles of the throat become tense and the passageway at the back of the throat becomes constricted. If you have mastered the production of 9, or at least an approximation of it, you will be able to produce an acceptable H if you devoice 9. However, it will take some practice to learn to recognize and produce H. Try the following:

a. Whisper and repeat the phrase 'Hey you!' as loudly and as deep in your throat as you can; then say only, 'hey', elongating the initial H sound, hhhhhhhhhey'. Repeat this with the muscles used in gagging (as in the case with 9) tensed up. This would be an acceptable approximation of H.

b. An alternative suggestion that has been made is to start with 'ah!', whispering it as loudly as you can. Now repeat it and narrow the pharynx by moving the root of the tongue back, and raising the larynx.

### Drill 1

### Initial H

Haal
Haadd
Haakim
Haarr
Haami§
Haliib

Hamd
Hamad
Habb
Hammaam
Hariim
Hassaan

HaTT
Hawwal
Hadda
Hujra
Hiin
Hukuuma

Hurma
HuTT
Hukk
Huum
Huut
Huul

### Drill 2

### Medial H

↓ marHaban
laHm
'al-'aHad
baHr
tuffaaHa

SiHHa
saHab
baHaθ
'isHab
baHθ

waaHid
waaHida
δalHiin
ruuHi
ruHna

saHiiH
'iHna
ruHt
'aHsan
'aHmar

### Drill 3

### Final H

SabaaH
raaH
tuffaaH
fataH
STabaH

'iftaH
maaliH
milH
ribH
ʃaHH

SaHiiH
muriiH
SaaliH
lawH
SabuuH

'aruuH
taruuH
nuuH
ruuH
ʃuuH

## VI. GRAMMAR

### 1. Imperatives

The imperative verb 'ijlis! 'sit down!', like tafaδδal! is often used with other imperatives, e.g.:

| | |
|---|---|
| tafaδδal 'ijlis! | 'Please sit down (m.s.)!' |
| tafaδδali 'ijlisi! | 'Please sit down (f.s.)!' |
| tafaδδalu 'ijlius! | 'Please sit down (m.p.)!' |
| tafaδδalayn 'ijlisayn! | 'Please sit down (f.p.)!' |

### 2. Telling Time

Note that since saa9a 'hour; clock; watch' is feminine, you should use the feminine forms of one and two to agree with it:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'as-saa9a waaHida. or<br>saa9at waaHida. | 'It's one o'clock.' |
| 'as-saa9a θintayn. or<br>saa9at θintayn. | 'It's two o'clock.' |

*'as-saa9a waaHid.
*as-saa9a 'iθnayn.

## NOTES ON TEXT

1. SabbaHiʃ aLLa b-l-xayr! said to a female and SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr! said to a male literally mean, 'God give you a good morning'; they generally mean, 'Good morning!' Learn them as formulas.

2. 'al-Hamdu li-llaah 'fine, good' is a response to kayf Haalak or kayf ant 'How are you (m.s.)?' It literally means 'Priase be to God.' Other responses are: Tayyib, naahi, etc.

## VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

$S_1$ (f.) : SabbaHiʃ aLLa b-l-xayr ya Haliima!
'Good morning, Halima!
$S_2$ (f.) : SabbaHiʃ aLLa b-l-xayr w-l-9aafiya ya xadiija!
'Good morning, Khadija!'

Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with male and female students.

Drill 3 a. Repetition

waaHid 'iθnayn θalaaθa 'arba9a xamsa
sitta sab9a θamaaniya tis9a 9aʃara

b. T asks individual students to count from waaHid through 9aʃara.

c. T writes, e.g., the numeral 9 on the board; students give the SA word for nine.

Drill 4 Repetition

1. saa9at waaHida.
2. saa9at θintayn.
3. saa9at θalaaθ.
4. saa9at 'arba9.
5. saa9at xams.
6. saa9at sitt.
7. saa9at sabi9.
8. saa9at θamaan.
9. saa9at tisi9.
10. saa9at 9aʃir.

Drill 5    Question -- Answer

Example: T: 'as-saa9a waaHida δalhiin ?
'Is it one o'clock now?'
S: 'ii na9am. 'as-saa9a waaHida δalhiin.
'Yes, indeed. It's one o'clock now.'

Drill 6    Chain

T writes, e.g., 9 on the board; an individual student says: 'as-saa9a tisi9 δalHiin. or saa9at tisi9 δalHiin. 'It's nine o'clock now.'

Drill 7    Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi naw9id ma9 al-waziir saa9at xams.
'I have an appointment with the minister at 5:00.

1. you (m.s.)
2. you (f.s.)
3. she
4. secretary
5. manager (f.)
6. doctor (f.)
7. they (f.)
8. minister
9. 'ihna
10. 'ana
11. 1 o'clock
12. 2 o'clock
13. today
14. tomorrow
15. now

Drill 8    Substitution

'al-waziir maʃGuul ʃwayya δalhiin.

1. 'al-mudiir
2. 'aT-Tabiiba
3. 'as-sikirteera
4. Sadiigi
5. 'axi
6. 'uxti
7. 'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af
8. 'al-muhandis
9. 'al-bint
10. 'aT-Tabiib
11. Haliima
12. muHammad

### Drill 9 Repetition

1. 'al-yawm as-sabt.
2. 'al-yawm al-'aHad.
3. 'al-yawm al-'iθnayn.
4. 'al-yawm aθ-θaluuθ.
5. 'al-yawm ar-rabuu9.
6. 'al-yawm al-xamiis.
7. 'al-yawm al-jum9a.
8. 'al-yawm as-sabt.

### Drill 10 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | 'al-jum9a | 'Friday' |
| $S_1$: | yawm al-jum9a | 'on Friday' |
| $S_2$: | 'al-yawm al-jum9a. | 'Today is Friday.' |

### Drill 11 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. 'ana yamani min San9à.
2. huw miSri min al-gaahira.
3. 'ant 9iraagi min baGdaad ?
4. taffaδ̣δ̣al 'ijlis!
5. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr!
6. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!
7. kayf Haalak ?
8. kayf antu ?
9. kayf al-9aa'ila ?
10. Tayyib ʃukran.
11. naahi b-xayr.
12. huw maʃGuul δalHiin.
13. waladhum 'isma 'aHmad.
14. tafaδ̣δ̣alu 'ijlisu!

### Drill 12 Translation

1. I have an appointment with the doctor today at two o'clock.
2. The minister is a little busy now. Please sit down! Coffee?
3. What's today? Today is Wednesday.
4. Today at 1 o'clock. I hope the director is in the office.
5. What time do you (f.) have an appointment with the doctor?
6. How is the family? We are all fine, thanks.
7. Goodbye! Goodbye (with safety)! May God protect you!
8. Thank you! God bless you!
9. I am a little busy now. But tomorrow is Friday.

10. He is Yemeni from the city of Hajja, but I am American from the city of Detroit in the State of Michigan.

## VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then indicate whether the following statements are true or false; if the statement is false, say maaʃi 'no' and correct it.

1. 9abd ar-raHmaan min 'amriika.
2. 9abd ar-raHmaan Taalib.
3. δalHiin 9abd ar-raHmaan fi San9a.
4. 9aa'ilat 9ab ar-raHmaan fi Detroit.
5. 9indi walad waaHid bass.
6. 'uxta muwa§§afa.
7. 'ism 'uxta 9aa'iʃa.
8. 'al-yoom aθ-θaluuθ.
9. 'al-maw9id ma9 as-sikirteer.
10. 'al-maw9id saa9at θintayn.

# UNIT 10

## I. TEXT

### 'al-jaww

'ismi 9abdaLLa. 'ana min al-Hodayda. 'ana mutazawwij w-9indi walad w-bint. 'al-walad 'isma Husayn w-l-bint 'ismaha huda. hum fi l-madrasa. ʃuGli ʃaagi fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.

'al-jaww fi l-Hodayda naahi kaθiir fi ʃ-ʃitaa', maaʃ Haami w-maaʃ baarid, walaakin fi S-Sayf Hama w-ruTuuba. fi San9a 'al-jaww Hilw fi S-Sayf walaakin miGbir. fi ʃ-ʃitaa' bard ʃwayya fi S-SabaaH bass.

## II. TRANSLATION

### The Weather

My name is Abdalla. I am from from Hudaida. I am married, and I have a son and a daughter. The boy's name is Hussein and the girl's name is Huda. They go to school. I work as a workman in the Ministry of Health.

The weather in Hudaida is very nice in winter; it is neither hot nor cold, but in the summer it is hot and humid. In Sanaa the weather is beautiful in the summer, but it is dusty. It is windy. In the winter, there is a little cold only in the morning.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'al-Hodayda | Hudaida (f.) | baarid | cold (m.) |
| mutazawwij | married (m.) | walaakin | but |
| ʃaagi | workman, laborer (m.) | 'aS-Sayf | summer (m.) |
| SiHHa | health (f.) | Hama | hot weather |
| jaww | weather (m.) | ruTuuba | humidity |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| kaθiir | very; a lot | Hilw | beautiful (m.) |
| 'aʃ-ʃitaa' | winter (m.) | miGbir | dusty (m.) |
| maaʃ | not | bard | cold weather |
| maaʃ... w-maaʃ | neither ... nor | SabaaH | morning |
| Haami | hot (m.) | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| jaami9a | university (f.) | kaatib | clerk (m.) |
| mu9aalim | teacher (m.) | 'al-baHrayn | Bahrain (f.) |

## V. PRONUNCIATION

### Drill 1

### h and H

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| haal → | Haal | hatt → | Hatt | lahm → | laHm |
| haajj | Haajj | harram | Harram | sahar | saHar |
| haarr | Haarr | hanna | Hanna | nahr | naHr |
| haam | Haam | habb | Habb | raah | raaH |
| haamil | Haamil | hubuub | Hubuub | nabah | nabaH |

### Drill 2

### x and H

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| xaal → | Haal | xammaam → | Hammaam | xawδ → | Hawδ |
| xaali | Haali | xafiif | Hafiif | baxr | baHr |
| xiin | Hiin | xalj | Halj | baax | baaH |
| xaTT | HaTT | xayr | Hayr | milx | milH |
| xalla | Halla | xawf | Hawf | ruux | ruuH |

## VI. GRAMMAR

### 1. Proper Names

Names of towns, cities and most countries and states are feminine. The names of a few regions and countries, however, may be masculine or feminine, e.g., lubnaan 'Lebanon' 'al-yaman 'Yemen,' 'al-9iraag 'Iraq', 'al-'urdun 'Jordan', etc. Names that end with -a are feminine only, e.g.: 'as-su9uudiyya 'Saudi Arabia', faransa 'France', suuriya 'Syria', 'ingiltara 'England', etc.

Learn the names of the following cities: ta9izz 'Taiz', manaaxa 'Manakha', saba 'Sheba', jadda 'Jadda', and 'ad-dawHa 'Doha'.

### 2. The Negative Particle *maaʃ*

maaʃ is a negative particle, which always precedes a noun, an adjective, an adverb, or a phrase:

| | |
|---|---|
| huw maaʃ muhandis. | 'He is not an engineer.' |
| 'al-jaww maaʃ baarid. | 'The weather is not cold.' |
| hiy maaʃ haana. | 'She is not here.' |
| hum maaʃ fi l-madrasa. | 'They are not in school.' |

maaʃ ... w-maaʃ ... 'neither ... nor ...' Examples: maaʃ muhandis wa maaʃ ʃaagi 'neither an engineer nor a laborer'.
maaʃ Haami w-maaʃ baarid 'neither hot nor cold'.
maaʃ min San9a w-maaʃ min ta9izz 'neither from Sanaa nor from Taiz.'.

### 3. The Intensifier *kaθiir*

kaθiir 'very; very much; a lot' is an intensifier and can be used to modify nouns, adjectives, or verbs. It, like other particles of degree, can either precede or follow the word it modifies:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9indi kaθiir gahwa. | 'I have a lot of coffee.' |
| 'al-jaww Haami kaθiir. | 'The weather is very hot.' |
| 'al-jaww kaθiir Haami. | 'The weather is very hot.' |
| 9indak gahwa ? | 'Do you (m.s.) have coffee?' |
| 'ii, kaθiir. | 'Yes, (I have) a lot.' |
| 9indi ʃwayya gahwa. | 'I have a little coffee.' |
| 9indi gahwa ʃwayya. | 'I have a little coffee.' |

### 4. Topical Sentences

a. 'al-walad 'isma Husayn. 'The boy's name is Hussein.'
b. 'al-bint 'ismaha huda. 'The girl's name is Huda.'

The above sentences are known as topical sentences, or topic-comment sentences. The topic in a. is *'al-walad* 'the boy'. It can be a pronoun: *huw 'isma Husayn* 'His name is Hussein.' The comment is a nominal sentence or an equational sentence, *'isma Husayn* 'His name is Hussein.' Notice that the topic should include a pronoun suffixed to the noun in the equational sentence: *-a* in *'isma* 'his name' refers to the noun *'al-walad* 'the boy' in sentence a. and *-ha* in *'ismaha* 'her name' refers to the noun *'al-bint* 'the girl'. Other examples:
*9ali* 'uxt*a* sikirteera. 'Ali's sister is a secretary.'
*'iHna* mu9allim*na* 9ali. 'Our teacher is Ali.'
*hum* 9inda*hum* ʃarika fi San9a. 'They have a company in Sanaa.'

Other examples of other types of topical sentences will be given later on.

## VII. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

9indi walad w-bint. 'I have a boy and a girl.'

1. 'ant
2. 'anti
3. hiy
4. hum
5. 'iHna
6. hin
7. 'antu
8. 'antayn
9. huw
10. 'ana
11. 'antayn
12. 'iHna
13. 'anti
14. hum
15. hin

### Drill 2 Double Substitution

'al-walad'iama 9ali w-l-bint 'ismaha Haliima.
'The boy's name is Ali and the girl's name is Halima.

Example: T: mudiir 'manager'
S: 'al-mudiir 'isma 9ali w-l-mudiira 'ismaha Haliima.

1. minister
2. secretary
3. student
4. American
5. Bahraini
6. clerk
7. my brother
8. husband
9. teacher
10. this
11. he
12. manager
13. doctor
14. nurse
15. employee

### Drill 3 Repetition

1. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Haami l-yawm.
   'How is the weather today? The weather is hot today.'
2. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm.
3. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww naahi l-yawm.
4. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Hilw al-yawm.
5. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Hama l-yawm.
6. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww migbir al-yawm.

7. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww maaʃ Haami l-yawm.
8. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm.
9. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Haami w-miGbir al-yawm.
10. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid w-naahi l-yawm.

Drill 4 Double Substitution

kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
'How is the weather in Sanaa in winter ?'

1. 'al-Hodayda -- summer
2. 9amraan -- winter
3. 'abu δ̣abi -- winter
4. 'ar-riyaaδ̣ -- summer
5. 'al-baHrayn -- summer
6. 'ibb -- winter
7. gaTar -- winter
8. 'al-kuwayt -- summer
9. Hajja -- winter
10. Arizona -- summer

Drill 5 Double Substitution

'ana ʃaagi fi wazaarat al-'aʃGaal
'I am a workman in the Ministry of Public Works.'

1. teacher -- university
2. clerk -- Bank of Yemen
3. engineer -- Phillips Company
4. manager -- Bank of America
5. teacher -- school
6. employee -- Blood Bank
7. doctor -- Kuwait Hospital
8. nurse -- hospital
9. clerk -- Shell Company
10. doctor -- Ministry of Health
11. student - university
12. nurse -- Ministry of Health
13. clerk -- American Bank
14. workman -- Ministry of Public Works

Drill 6 Transformation: positive → negative

1. 'al-jaww Hilw kaθiir al-yawm.
2. fi S-SabaaH al-jaww baarid kaθiir.
3. 'al-wald 'isma SaaliH.

4. hiy 'amriikiyya.
5. δalHiin as-saa9a xams.
6. 'al-jaww baarid w-Hilw fi S-Sayf.
7. 'al-waziir maʃGuul.
8. 'al-mu9allim min al-baHrayn.
9. 'al-gahwa baarida.
10. hum fi l-jaami9a.
11. 'al-mu9allim mutazawwij.
12. ʃuGla kaatib fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.

Drill 7    Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id al-yawm saa9at sitt.
'I have an appointment today at six o'clock.'

1. he
2. she
3. they (m.)
4. you (f.s.)
5. you (m.s.)
6. tomorrow
7. one o'clock
8. two o'clock
9. now
10. I
11. you (p.)
12. we
13. today
14. they (f.)
15. two o'clock

Drill 8    Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. huw suuri min dimaʃg.
2. 'ant mu9allim haana ?
3. 'ana maʃGuul al-yawm.
4. tafa§§al 'ijlis!
5. 9inak ʃuGl fi S-SataaH ?
6. baarak aLLa fiik!
7. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!
8. 'antu fi l-jaami9a ?
9. 'ant mutazawwij ?
10. 9inda walad w-bint.
11. 'ant maʃGuul δalHiin ?
12. ʃuGlak haana ?
13. kayf Haalak ?
14. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr!

### Drill 9 Substitution

haaδa 1-jaww naahi kaθiir. 'This weather is very good.'

1. mu9allim
2. mu9allima
3. ʃaagi
4. gahwa
5. maktab
6. kaatib
7. yawm
8. waziir
9. Taalib
10. Tabiib
11. saa9a
12. jaami9a
13. mumarri§a
14. 'ingiliizi
15. 'amriiki

### Drill 10 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. maa 'ismi ?
2. min ayn ana ?
3. 'ana mutazawwij ?
4. 9indi walad w-bint ?
5. maa 'ism al-walad ?
6. maa 'ism al-bint ?
7. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa ?
8. maa ʃuGli ?
9. fi 'ayy wazara ?
10. kayf al-jaww fi l-Hodayda ?
11. 'al-jaww baarid fi S-Sayf ?
12. 'al-jaww Haami fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
13. kayf al-jaww haana ?
14. kayf al-jaww fi San9a ?

## VIII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : 'ant min San9a ?
   salmaan : maaʃi. 'ana min al-baHrayn.
   9ali : kayf al-baHrayn ?
   salmaan : naahiya, bass al-jaww fi S-Sayf Hama w-ruTuuba.
   9ali : w-fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
   salmaan : fi ʃ-ʃitaa' al-jaww naahi kaθiir, maaʃ baarid w-maaʃ Haami.
   9ali : haana fi San9a l-jaww naahi fi S-Sayf w-ʃ-ʃitaa', bass fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ʃwayya baarid min saa9at xams 'ila "until" saa9at 9aʃiṛ.

2. Hasan : 'ant mutazawwij ya yaHya ?

yaHya : 'ii na9am mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah w-9indi walad w-bint.

Hasan : 'al-walad w-l-bint fi l-madrasa ?

yaHya : 'al-walad bass fi l-madrasa.

Hasan : w-l-bint ?

yaHya : 'al-bint fi l-jaami9a, fi jaami9at San9a.

Hasan : 'ant maʃGuul al-yawm ?

yaHya : maʃGuul al-yawm aS-SabaaH. 9indi ʃuGl fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.

Hasan : w-Gudwa ?

yaHya : Gudwa l-xamiis 9indi maw9id ma9 mudiir bank ad-damm saa9at tisi9.

# UNIT 11

## REVIEW

Drill 1 Question -- Answer

1. maa 'ismak ?
2. min ayn ant ?
3. kayf Haalak ?
4. massaaʃ aLLa b-l-xayr!
5. kayf al-'ahl ?
6. 'anti yamaniyya ?
7. 'ayn ʃuGlak ?
8. 'ant mutazawwij ?
9. maa l-yawm ?
10. 9indiʃ ʃuGl al-yawm ?
11. 9indak maw9id al-yawm ?
12. f-ayy Hiin ?
13. 'ant maʃGuul al-yawm ?
14. 'as-saa9a xams δalHiin ?
15. 'al-jaww naahi l-yawm ?
16. Gudwa s-sabt ?

Drill 2 Transformation: non-definite → definite

1. huw mudiir ʃarika.
2. haaδi mumarriδ̣a.
3. hiy sikirteera fi bank.
4. Tabiiba fi mustaʃfa
5. waziir yamani
6. mudiir bank 'amriiki
7. mudiir ʃarika 'amriikiyya
8. maktab mudiir madrasa
9. Taalib jaami9a
10. muwaδ̣δ̣af bank
11. mudiir madrasa
12. wazaarat SiHHa

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'al-yawm al-jum9a. 'Today is Friday.'

1. yesterday
2. Saturday
3. Monday
4. tomorrow
5. Tuesday
6. Wednesday
7. Thursday
8. today
9. Friday
10. Saturday
11. Sunday
12. Monday
13. beautiful
14. hot
15. cold
16. not hot
17. dusty
18. very hot

## Drill 4 Transformation: statement → question

Use question words. The answer is underlined.

1. 'ismi SaaliH bin 9ali.
2. 'al-jaww al-yawm Haami.
3. hiy min Sa9da.
4. hum min wilaayat Mich.
5. 9indi maw9id saa9at xams.
6. hum min madiinat 'ibb.
7. 'ii na9am. 'al-mudiir haana.
8. 'al-jaww Hilw al-yawm.
9. 'al-jaww miGbir al-yawm.
10. ʃuGli fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.
11. 'al-mudiir fi l-maktab.
12. b-xayr ʃukran.
13. 9indi ʃuGl fi S-SabaaH.
14. landan fi 'ingiltara.

## Drill 5 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. 'ana sikirteer.
2. huw 'ingiliizi.
3. 'ant amriiki ?
4. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa.
5. 'isma zayd.
6. kayf Haalak ?
7. SabbaHk aLLa b-l-xayr!
8. 'ayn ʃuGlak ?
9. tafa§§al 'ijlis!
10. maa 'ismak ?
11. hum min al-Hodayda.
12. 'antu min gaTar ?
13. tafa§§ali haana!
14. hum min al-'urdun.
15. haaδa Tabiib al-mustaʃfa.
16. haaδa mu9allim miSri.

## Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id ma9 al-waziir.
'I have an appointment with the minister.'

1. director
2. doctor (f.)
3. secretary (f.)
4. manager (f.)
5. engineer
6. employee
7. today
8. at 10:00
9. he
10. they
11. tomorrow
12. minister
13. they (f.)
14. at 7:00
15. we
16. today
17. you (m.p.)
18. in the morning

Drill 7 Transformation: statement → negative

1. 'al-jaww Haami l-yawm.
2. 'al-mudiir haana.
3. 'as-saa9a xams δalHiin.
4. 'al-gahwa baarida.
5. 'al-jaww Hilw fi ʃ-ʃitaa'.
6. 'al-mu9allim fi l-madrasa.
7. 'ana maʃGuul Gudwa.
8. 'Gudwa l-xamiis.
9. 'al-yawm aθ-θaluuθ.
10. 'ams al-'aHad.
11. 'anti yamaniyya.
12. haaδa 'iiraani.

Drill 8 Substitution

'al-jaww baarid al-yawm. 'The weather is cold today.'

1. hot
2. not hot
3. fine
4. not fine
5. very hot
6. very cold
7. not cold
8. dusty
9. very dusty
10. cold but fine
11. hot but fine
12. not very hot
13. not very dusty
14. a little cold
15. humid

Drill 9 Transformation: prepositional phrase → nisba adj.

Example: huw min tuunis. → huw tuunisi.
'He is from Tunisia. → He is Tunisian.'

1. 'ana min al-yaman.
2. faaTima min gaTar.
3. 9abdaLLa min al-kuwayt.
4. saara min 'amriika.
5. George min 'ingiltara.
6. 9ali min al-9iraag.
7. kamaal min lubnaan.
8. maryam min miSr.
9. xadiija min liibya.
10. mHammad min al-baHrayn.
11. Michael min faransa.
12. Edward min 'aLmaanya.
13. haala min as-suudaan.
14. zahra min al-yaman.
15. kariim min al-maGrib.
16. yuusif min 'iiTaalya.

Drill 10 Translation

1. We have an appointment today with the minister at ten o'clock.
2. He is from the city of Tucson in the State of Arizona.
3. It is ten o'clock now. I have an appointment at the Ministry.
4. Yes, the Minister is here. Please sit down! He is busy now.
5. I work as a workman in the Ministry of Public Works, but he works as a nurse in the Blood Bank.
6. I work for the Ministry of Health. My work is very good.
7. The weather is very good today. It is a little dusty but good.
8. In the summer the weather is very hot and very humid.
9. Do you (m.s.) have work tomorrow? Yes, at 8:00 a.m.
10. I am married; I have a boy and a girl. They are in school.

# U N I T 12

## I. TEXT

### titkallam 9arabi ?

9abdaLLa : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum !

saami : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.

9abdaLLa : ma 'ismak ?

saami : 'ismi saami.

9abdaLLa : kayf Haalak ?

saami : la ba's 'al-Hamdu li-llaah.

9abdaLLa : 'ant min 'ayy bilaad ?

saami : 'ana min 'amriika.

9abdaLLa : min 'ayn fi 'amriika ?

saami : min Tucson fi Arizona.

9abdaLLa : 'ant titkallam 9arabi naahi waLLa.

saami : maaʃi. maaʃ naahi kaθiir 'atkallam 9arabi ʃwayya bass.

9abdaLLa : kayf al-jaww fi Tucson fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?

saami : baarid walaakin naahi fi ʃ-ʃitaa'. kayf al-jaww haana ?

9abdaLLa : fi ʃ-ʃitaa' 'al-bard gawi fi San9a fi S-SabaaH bass.
w-S-Sayf fi bilaadkum Haami ?

saami : Haami kaθiir walaakin maabiʃ ruTuuba; naaʃif.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Do you Speak Arabic ?

Abdalla : Peace be upon you!

Sami : Peace be upon you!

Abdalla : What's your name ?

Sami : My name is Sami.

Abdalla : How are you ?

Sami : Not bad. Praise be to God.

Abdalla : Which country are you from ?

Sami : I am from America.

Abdalla : From where in America?
Sami : From Tucson, Arizona.
Abdalla : You really speak Arabic well!
Sami : No, not very well. I speak a little Arabic only.
Abdalla : How is the weather in Tucson in the winter?
Sami : Cold, but nice in the winter. How is the weather here?
Abdalla : In the winter, it is very cold in Sanaa, only in the morning. Is the summer hot in your country?
Sami : Very hot, but there is no humidity; it is dry.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bilaad | country | 'atkallam | I speak |
| titkallam | you (m.s.) speak | gawi | strong; very |
| 9arabi | Arabic | maabiʃ | there is not, there aren't |
| naahi | well (adv.) | naaʃif | dry |
| waLLa | honestly, indeed | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'adrus | I study, am studying |
| 'at9allam | I learn, am learning |
| 'aktub | I write, am writing |
| 'ar-rabii9 | spring (season) |
| 'al-xariif | autumn, fall |
| faSl | season p. fuSuul |
| sana | year |
| maTar | rain |

## V. GRAMMAR

### Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The two verb tenses in SA, imperfect and perfect, roughly correspond to the English present and past tenses. The verb 'atkallam

'I speak' is made up of a subject-marker 'a-, referring to 'I' and a stem -tkallam-, corresponding to the English infinitive 'to speak'. Below is a sample conjugation of the verb -tkallam-:

| PRONOUN | VERB | AFFIX |
|---|---|---|
| huw | yitkallam | y-- |
| hiy | titkallam | t-- |
| 'ant | titkallam | t-- |
| 'anti | titkallami | t--i |
| 'ana | 'atkallam | 'a-- |
| hum | yitkallamu | y--u |
| hin | yitkallamayn | y--ayn |
| 'antu | titkallamu | t--u |
| 'antayn | titkallamayn | t--ayn |
| 'iHna | nitkallam | n-- |

Note that the vowel -i- is inserted between the imperfect stem -tkallam- and the subject marker. This vowel is sometimes -u-, depending on the vowel before the last consonant in the imperfect stem, which is called the stem vowel. If the stem vowel is -u-, the vowel of the subject marker is -u-; otherwise it is -i-. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| -drus- | yudrus 'he studies; he is studying' |
| -ktub- | yuktub 'he writes; he is writing' |
| -t9allam- | yit9allam 'he learns; he is learning' |

A few verbs take -a- after the subject marker, which will be pointed out.

Sometimes the imperfect tense of the verb may have a b-/bi- denoting a co-occurring action in the present or past. Thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| w-huw bi-yitkallam 9rabi | 'and he speaks Arabic' or 'he was speaking Arabic.' |

huw bi-yitkallam 9arabi δalHiin. 'He is speaking Arabic now.'
huw yitkallam 9arabi naahi. 'He (usually) speaks Arabic well.'

The imperfect tense in SA expresses the following meanings:

a. habitual: 'atkallam 9arabi kull yawm. 'I speak Arabic every day.'
b. general truth value ("generic", "dispositional", etc.): 'atkallam 9rabi naahi. 'I speak Arabic well.'
c. progressive: bi-yitkallam 9arabi δalHiin. 'He is speaking rabic now.'
d. future: bi-yitkallam Gudwa ? 'Will he, is he going to speak tomorrow?'

Note: The verb normally occurs without an independent pronoun, but the latter may be used for emphasis.

NOTE ON TEXT

waLLa 'indeed, really' (lit., 'by God, honest to God') is frequently used in SA before or after words, phrases, and sentences for emphasis:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-yawm bard. | 'It is cold today. |
| 'ii waLLa bard gawi. | 'Yes, indeed. It's very cold.' |
| waLLa ma∫Guul kaθiir. | 'I am really very busy.' |
| waLLa 9indi gahwa. | 'I do indeed have coffee.' |

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$: | 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! | 'Peace be upon you!' |
| $S_2$: | wa 9alaykum as-salaam. | 'And peace be upon you!' |
| $S_1$: | kayf Haalak ? | 'How are you ?' |
| $S_2$: | la ba's. 'al-Hamdu li-llaah. | 'Not bad. Praise be to God.' |

Drill 2 Substitution

'ant titkallam ma9 al-mudiir. 'You speak with the manager.'

1. engineer
2. minister
3. employee
4. doctor (f.)
5. teacher (f.)
6. 9ali
7. mHammad
8. nurse (f.)
9. clerk
10. secretary (f.)
11. employee (f.)
12. faaTima
13. 9abdaLLa
14. workman
15. 9aa'iʃa

Drill 3 Substitution

b-atkallam ma9 al-mudiir. 'I am speaking with the manager.' Use substitutions from Drill 2 above.

Drill 4 Repetition

1. huw bi-yitkallam 9arabi naahi.
2. hum bi-yitkallamu 9arabi naahi.
3. hiy bi-titkallam 9arabi naahi.
4. hin bi-yitkallamayn 9arabi naahi.
5. 'ant bi-titkallam 9arabi naahi.
6. 'antu bi-titkallamu 9arabi naahi.
7. 'anti bi-titkallami 9arabi naahi.
8. 'antayn bi-titkallamayn 9arabi naahi.
9. 'ana b-atkallam 9arabi naahi.
10. 'iHna bi-nitkallam 9arabi naahi.

Drill 5 Repetition

Repeat the sentences in Drill 4 above with the verb yuktub or bi-yuktub 'He writes (is writing).'

### Drill 6 Transformation: Conjugation

huw yitkallam 9arabi naahi. 'He speaks Arabic well.'

1. hum
2. hiy
3. hin
4. 'ant
5. 'antu
6. 'anti
7. 'antayn
8. 'ana
9. 'iHna
10. huw
11. hin
12. 'antu
13. hiy
14. huw
15. 'antayn

### Drill 7 Transformation: Conjugation

bi-yitkallam 9arabi ʃwayya. 'He speaks a little Arabic.'

1. 'ant
2. 'ana
3. hum
4. hin
5. 'anti
6. 'antu
7. 'iHna
8. huw
9. 'antayn
10. 'anti
11. 'ana
12. hiy
13. hin
14. hum
15. 'antayn

### Drill 8 Chain

T : kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'How is the weather today?'
S : waLLa baarid. 'It's really cold.'

Use the following in the answer:

1. hot and dry
2. cold but nice
3. hot but wet
4. very good
5. not bad
6. hot but dry
7. not very good
8. neither hot nor cold
9. hot and dusty
10. hot but dry
11. not bad
12. not dusty

Drill 9 Transformation: Conjugation

waLLa huw bi-yudrus 9arabi. 'He is studying Arabic.'

Use substitutions from Drill 7 above.

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: yitkallam 9arabi naahi. 'He speaks Arabic well.'

1. hiy
2. 'ana
3. 'aktub
4. hiy
5. hum
6. yit9allamu
7. hin
8. 'ant
9. 'anti
10. 'antayn
11. tuktubayn
12. 'ana
13. huw
14. 'iHna
15. 'antu

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : 'antu bi-tudrusu 9arabi δalHiin ?
Hasan : ii na9am kulluna bi-nudrus saa9a fi l-yawm.
9ali : fi l-jaami9a 'aw fi l-madrasa ? ('aw "or")
Hasan : fi l-jaami9a.
9ali : fi 'ayy jaami9a ?
Hasan : fi jaami9at San9a.

2. faaTima : kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi S-Sayf ?
kariima : fi S-Sayf riyaaH w-maTar ʃwayya.
faaTima : maabiʃ ruTuuba ?
kariima : maaʃi. 'ar-ruTuuba fi l-Hodayda fi faSl aS-Sayf.
faaTima : w-fi r-rabii9 ?
kariima : 'al-jaww fi San9a naahi fi kull fuSuul as-sana. fi faSl aS-Sayf w-faSl al-xariif w-faSl 'aʃ-ʃitaa' w-faSl ar-rabii9.

# UNIT 13

## I. TEXT

### taksi (i)

9abd al-9aziiz : taksi!

'as-sawwaag : 'ayn tiʃti truuH ?

9abd al-9aziiz : 'aʃti 'aruuH la-fundug aʃ-ʃeraton. kam tiʃti la-l-fundug ?

'as-sawwaag : 9iʃriin ryaal.

9abd al-9aziiz : maaʃi. 9iʃriin ryaal kaθiir. b-adfa9 xamsTa9ʃar ryaal bass.

'as-sawwaag : Tayyib tafaṣṣal!

9abd al-9aziiz : tafaṣṣal haaδi 9iʃriin ryaal.

'as-sawwaag : tafaṣṣal 'al-baagi xamsa ryaal.

9abd al-9aziiz : haaδi ryaalayn lak!

'as-sawwaag : ʃukran. ma9 as-salaama!

9abd al-9aziiz : sallamak aLLaah.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Taxi (i)

Abd Al-Aziz : Taxi!

Cab Driver : Where do you want to go?

Abd Al-Aziz : I want to go to the Sheraton Hotel. How much do you want to the hotel?

Cab Driver : Twenty riyals.

Abd Al-Aziz : No, twenty riyals is a lot. I'll pay fifteen riyals only.

Cab Driver : O.K. Hop in!

Abd Al-Aziz : Here you are! This is twenty riyals.

Cab Driver : Here! The remainder is five riyals.

Abd Al-Aziz : This is two riyals for you!

Cab Driver : Thanks! Goodbye!
Abd Al-Aziz : Goodbye.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| taksi | taxicab | fundug | hotel |
| sawwaag | driver | 9iʃriin | twenty |
| kam ? | How many? How much? | ryaal | riyal |
| tiʃti | you (m.s.) want, like | 'adfa9 | I pay |
| truuH | you (m.s.) go | xamsTa9ʃar | fifteen |
| 'aʃti | I want | Tayyib | O.K. |
| 'aruuH | I go | baagi | remainder; change |
| la | to (prep), var. 'ila | ryaalayn | two riyals |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hda9ʃ/-ar | eleven | θalaaθiin | thirty |
| 'iθna9ʃ/-ar | twelve | 'arba9iin | forty |
| θalaaθTa9ʃ/-ar | thirteen | xamsiin | fifty |
| 'arba9Ta9ʃ/-ar | fourteen | sittiin | sixty |
| siTTa9ʃ/-ar | sixteen | sab9iin | seventy |
| saba9Ta9ʃ/-ar | seventeen | θamaaniin | eighty |
| θamaanTa9ʃ/-ar | eighteen | tis9iin | ninety |
| tisa9Ta9ʃ/-ar | nineteen | duulaar | dollar |
| | | diinaar | dinar |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs-Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs presented in this lesson are -ʃti- 'to want, like', -ruuH- 'to go' and -dfa9- 'to pay'. -ʃti- 'to want' and -dfa9- 'to pay' are conjugated like -tkallam- (UNIT 12). -ruuH- 'to go' is not usually used with the vowel -i- before the subject marker. Below is a conjugation of -ʃti-:

| | |
|---|---|
| huw yiʃti | hum yiʃtu |
| hiy tiʃti | hin yiʃtayn |
| 'ant tiʃti | 'antu tiʃtu |
| 'anti tiʃti | 'antayn tiʃtayn |
| 'ana 'aʃti | 'iHna niʃti |

## 2. The Double Imperfect Construction

Note that double imperfect tenses of two verbs are used in SA for the *verb + infinitive* in English. Both verbs agree with the subject:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aʃti 'aruuH. | 'I want/would like to go.' |
| yiʃtu yruuHu. | 'They (m.) want to go.' |
| niʃti nudrus 9arabi. | 'We want to study 'Arabic.' |

## 3. The Dual

In English, nouns are either singular or plural; in SA they are singular, dual, or plural. The dual in SA is formed by adding the suffix *-ayn* to a masculine noun and *-tayn* to a feminine noun ending with *-a*:

ryaal 'one riyal' - - - - - ryaalayn 'two riyals'
sawwaag 'one driver' - - - - - sawwaagayn 'two drivers'
sana 'one year' - - - - - sanatayn 'two years'
ʃarika 'one company' - - - - - ʃarikatayn 'two companies'

Feminine nouns not ending with *-a* take *-ayn* and masculine nouns ending with *-a* take *-yayn* as dual suffixes:

uxt 'one sister' - - - - - 'uxtayn 'two sisters'
mustaʃfa 'one hospital' - - - - - mustaʃfayayn 'two hospitals'

## 4. Cardinal Numerals

a. The numerals for 'one' and 'two' have two forms each, a masculine form and a feminine form, depending upon the noun they modify or refer to:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9indi walad waaHid. | 'I have one son.' |
| 9indi bint waaHida. | 'I have one daughter.' |
| 'iθnayn haana w-θintayn fi l-madrasa. | 'Two (m.) are here and two (f.) are in school.' |

waaHid and 'iθnayn and their feminine forms, i.e., waaHida and θintayn follow the noun they modify: walad waaHind 'one boy' and bintayn θintayn 'two girls'.

b. θalaaθa -- 9aʃara. The numerals 'three' through 'ten' precede the noun they modify and the noun is plural; if that noun is a unit of money, however, it is left in the singular:

| | |
|---|---|
| xamsa ryaal | 'five riyals' |
| tis9a diinaar | 'nine dinars' |
| 'arba9at fuSuul | 'four seasons' |

Note that 'arba9a 'four' becomes 'arba9at in the third example because it is the first term of the construct.

c. Hda9ʃ/-ar -- tisa9Ta9ʃ/-ar

The cardinal numerals 11-19 end in -a9ʃ/-9ʃar or -Ta9ʃ/-Ta9ʃar. The first part of each of these cardinals is derived from the cardinals 1-9 with appropriate changes. It is best to learn them as independent vocabulary items. If these numerals are followed by nouns (not units of money), they end with -9ʃar or -Ta9ʃar. In counting, for example, you say either Hda9ʃ or Hda9ʃar, but you say only Hda9ʃar walad 'eleven boys', etc. The noun counted is always singular, not plural as in English.

d. 9iʃriin 'twenty', θalaaθiin 'thirty', 'arba9iin 'forty', etc., also take a singular noun after them:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9iʃriin ʃaagi | 'twenty workmen' |
| xamsiin mu9allim | 'fifty teachers' |
| tis9iin 9aa'ila | 'ninety families' |

5. kam 'how many? how much?'

kam is used with a countable noun, e.g., riyal, school, etc., or a noncountable noun, e.g., money, food, etc. The noun following kam is singular indefinite, not plural as in English:

| | |
|---|---|
| kam ryaal tiʃti ? | 'How many riyals do you (m.s.) want?' |

kam may be followed by a verb, in which case it means "how many (e.g., pounds, pieces, etc.)" or "how much":

| | |
|---|---|
| kam tiʃti ? | 'How many do you want?'<br>'How much do you want?' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

a. 'aʃti 'aruuH la-fundug aʃ-ʃeraton
'I want to go to the Sheraton Hotel.'

1. l-fundug
2. fundug saba'
3. l-jaami9a
4. jaami9at San9a

8. fundug al-hilton
9. bank ad-damm
10. l-bank al-'amriiki
11. baab al-yaman

5. mustaʃfa l-kuwayt
6. wazaarat aS-SiHHa
7. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal
12. fundug daar al-Hamd
13. ʃarikat Phillips
14. ma9aak

b. huw yiʃti yruuH la-fundug aʃ-ʃeraton.
'He wants to go to the Sheraton Hotel'

Use substitutions from a. above.

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aruuH la-l-fundug. 'I want to go to the hotel.'

1. he
2. now
3. the bank
4. at 10:00
5. she
6. today
7. we
8. they (f.)
9. the hospital
10. tomorrow
11. at 8:00
12. they (f.)
13. you (m.p.)
14. I
15. the ministry

Drill 3 a. Repetition

Hda9ʃ 'iθna9ʃ θalaaθTa9ʃ 'arba9Taʃ xamasTa9ʃ
siTTa9ʃ saba9Ta9ʃ θamaanTa9ʃ tisa9Ta9ʃ 9iʃriin

6. T writes, e.g., 15 on the board; individual students are asked to give the SA word for 15, i.e. xamasTa9ʃ.

Drill 4 a. Repetition

9iʃriin θalaaθiin 'arba9iin xamsiin
sittiin sab9iin θamaaniin tis9iin

b. T writes, e.g., 50 on one board; individual students are asked to give the SA word for fifty, i.e., xamsiin.

## Drill 5 Identification

Individual students give the SA words for the following:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30 | 90 | 60 | 40 | 20 | 70 |
| 15 | 13 | 12 | 19 | 11 | 14 |
| 2 | 10 | 9 | 6 | 1 | 50 |
| 8 | 3 | 80 | 17 | 5 | 80 |
| 70 | 4 | 16 | 7 | 90 | 15 |

## Drill 6 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| $S_1$ : | kam tidfa9 ? | 'How much will you pay?' |
| T : | xamsa ryaal. | 'five riyals' |
| $S_2$ : | 'adfa9 xamsa ryaal bass. | 'I'll pay five riyals only.' |

1. 10 riyals
2. 6 riyals
3. 20 dinars
4. 90 dinars
5. 15 riyals
6. $20
7. 2 riyals
8. 8 riyals
9. 50 dinars
10. the remainder
11. $9
12. 90 riyals
13. 2 dinars
14. 18 riyals
15. $2

## Drill 7 Transformation: singular → dual

1. ryaal
2. diinaar
3. duulaar
4. mustaʃfa
5. 'uxt
6. madrasa
7. jaami9a
8. bint
9. fundug
10. sawwaag
11. xamsa
12. ʃaagi
13. mu9allima
14. Tabiiba
15. mustaʃfa
16. faSl
17. 9aa'ila
18. Sadiiga

## Drill 8 Substitution

'al-baagi xamsiin ryaal. 'The remainder is fifty riyals.'

1. one riyal
2. two riyals
3. six dinars
4. $20
5. 90 dinars
6. one dinar
7. 11 riyals
8. $10
9. two tens
10. eight riyals
11. 17 dinars
12. $7

## Drill 9 Question -- Answer

1. kayf Haaliʃ ya zahra ?
2. kam as-saa9a δalHiin ?
3. kam tidfa9 ?
4. 'ayn tiʃti truuH ?
5. kam walad 9indiʃ ?
6. bi-titkallam 9arabi ?
7. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ?
8. 'ant bi-tit9allam 9arabi ?
9. hiy bi-tudrus 'ingiliizi ?
10. kam duulaar tiʃti ?
11. 'ayn tudrus 9arabi ?
12. huw bi-yuktub 9arabi ?

## Drill 10 Translation

1. I have five riyals. I'll pay only four riyals.
2. Five riyals is a lot. How much do you want to pay?
3. He wants to go to the Sheraton Hotel. How much?
4. All right. Hop in! I am the cab driver.
5. How many children do you have? How many boys and how many girls?
6. How many hospitals are there in Sanaa?
7. How many riyals do you want to pay ?
8. This is $10.00. Seven dollars is for the cab driver. How much is the remainder?
9. I do not want the remainder. The remainder is for you.
10. Would you like to learn Arabic at Sanaa University?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'ibraahiim : 'ayn as-sawwaag ?
yaHya : 'ana sawwaag at-taksi ? maa tiʃti ?
'ibraahiim : 'aʃti 'aruuH la-baab al-yaman. kam ryaal ?
yaHya : 9aʃara ryaal bass.
'ibraahiim : maaʃi. kaθiir.
yaHya : kam tidfa9 ?
'ibraahiim : b-adfa9 sab9a ryaal.
yaHya : Tayyib tafaδ̣δ̣al!

2. huda : bi-tit9allami 9arabi δalHiin ya muna ?
muna : b-adrus 9arabi fi madrasa fi ta9izz.
huda : kam saa9a fi l-yawm bi-tudrusi 9arabi ?
muna : saa9a waaHida bass.
huda : fiS-SabaaH 'aw fi l-masaa' ?
muna : fi l-masaa' saa9at xams.
huda : δalHiin 'anti bi-titkallami 9arabi naahi. bi-tuktubi 9arabi ?
muna : 'aʃti 'aktub bass maaʃ δalHiin.

# UNIT 14

## I. TEXT

### taksi (ii)

Hasan : 'aʃti 'aruuH wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'as-sawwaag : Tayyib. tafaδ̣δ̣al!
Hasan : kam ta'xuδ ?
'as-sawwaag : 9aʃara ryaal.
Hasan : maaʃi. 'addii-lak xamsa ryaal bass.
'as-sawwaag : xamsa ryaal w-ryaalayn sab9a ryaal. si9r al-Hukuuma.
Hasan : Tayyib.
'as-sawwaag : 'ant min gaTar ?
Hasan : maaʃi. min as-su9uudiyya.
'as-sawwaag : haaδi 'awwal marra tiji San9a ?
Hasan : laa, haaδi θaaliθ marra.
'as-sawwaag : kam lak fi l-yaman ?
Hasan : gad-li kaθiir haana. 9aʃarat siniin.
'as-sawwaag : 'ayn ti9mal ?
Hasan : 'a9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'as-sawwaag : nʃaaLLa 'i9jabatkum San9a ?
Hasan : San9a Haaliya. 'i9jabatni kaθiir. 'ana mirtaaH haana.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Taxi (ii)

Hasan : I want to go to the Ministry of Education.
Cab Driver : O.K. Hop in!
Hasan : How much will you take?
Cab Driver : Ten riyals.
Hasan : No. I'll give you only five riyals.
Cab Driver : Five riyals and two riyals is seven riyals. (It's) the government tariff.

Hasan : O.K.
Cab Driver : Are you from Qatar?
Hasan : No, I am from Saudi Arabia.
Cab Driver : Is this the first time you come to Sanaa?
Hasan : No, this is the third time.
Cab Driver : How long have you been in Yemen?
Hasan : I have been here for a long time. Ten years.
Cab Driver : Where do you work?
Hasan : I work for the Ministry of Education.
Cab Driver : I hope you liked Sanaa?
Hasan : Sanaa is beautiful. I like it very much. I am comfortable here.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tarbiya | education | tiji | you (m.s.) come |
| wazaarat at-tarbiya | ministry of education | θaaliθ | the third |
| ta'xuδ | you (m.s.) take | kam lak ? | How long have you (m.s.) been ? |
| 'addii-lak | I give you (m.s.) | siniin | years |
| si9r | price; tariff | ti9mal | you (m.s.) work |
| Hukuuma | government | 'i9jabatkum | you (m.p.) liked it (f.) |
| 'awwal | the first | Haaliya | beautiful; nice (f.) |
| marra | time; once | 'i9jabatni | I liked it (f.) |
| | | mirtaaH | comfortable |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| θaani | the second | taasi9 | the ninth |
| raabi9 | the fourth | 9aaʃir | the tenth |
| xaamis | the fifth | Haali | beautiful; nice (m.) |
| saadis | the sixth | 'ayyaam | days (s. yawm) |
| saabi9 | the seventh | yiʃtaGil | he works |
| θaamin | the eighth | hownaak | there, over there |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect verb stems -9mal- 'to work' and -ʃtaGil- 'to work' take -i- as a helping vowel. These two verbs are used almost interchangeably; -ʃtaGil- tends to be more commonly used in connection with manual labor. They are regular and conjugated like -tkallam- 'to speak'.

The stem -ji- 'to come' drops -i- when the suffixes -i, -u and -ayn are added:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 'anti | tiji | 'you (f.s.) come.' |
| hum | yiju | 'they (m.) come.' |
| hin | yijayn | 'they (f.) come.' |
| 'antayn | tijayn | 'you (f.p.) come.' |

The stem -'addi-' 'to give', like ji 'to come' drops -i- when the suffixes -i, -u and -ayn are added:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 'anti | t'addi | 'you (f.s.) give' |
| hum | y'addu | 'they (m.) give' |
| 'antayn | t'addayn | 'you (f.p.) give' |

The imperfect verb stem -'xuδ- 'to take' takes the stem vowel -a-:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| huw ya'xuδ. | 'He takes.' | hiy ta'xuδ. | 'She takes.' |
| 'antu ta'xuδu. | 'You (m.p.) take.' | hin ya'xuδayn. | 'They (f.) take.' |

Note that the form with 'ana is 'aaxuδ rather than *'a'xuδ.

## 2. *Ordinals*

Ordinals are derived from cardinals. The derivations of *'awwal* 'the first' and *θaani* 'the second' from *waaHid* 'one' and *'iθnayn* 'two' are irregular. *θaaliθ* 'the third' through *9aaʃir* 'the tenth', derived from *θalaaθa* 'three' through *9aʃara* 'ten', are fairly regular. They are formed according to the pattern $C_1aaC_2iC_3$, except for *saadis* 'the sixth' from *sitta* 'six':

| *Cardinal* | | *Ordinal* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| θalaaθa | 'three' | θaaliθ | 'the third' |
| xamsa | 'five' | xaamis | 'the fifth' |
| θamaaniya | 'eight' | θaamin | 'the eighth' |

Ordinals can either precede or follow the noun they modify. In this lesson they precede singular nouns, in which case they are not inflected for gender:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'awwal mu9allim | 'the first teacher (m.)' |
| 'awwal mu9allima | 'the first teacher (f.)' |
| 'awwal mu9allimatayn | 'the first two teachers (f.)' |
| 'awwal waladayn | 'the first two boys' |

## 3. *Special Constructions*

a. *'i9jab* is a perfect tense verb. It literally means 'to plese, be pleasing to'. *'i9jabatak San9a ?*, literally "Did Sanaa please you (m.s.)?', is equivalent to 'Did you (m.s.) like Sanaa?' in polished English. The suffix *-ak* is the object of the verb *'i9jab* and it refers to the subject of the polished English sentence, i.e., *you*. So, instead of saying, e.g., *I liked the city*, say: The city pleased me: *'al-madiina 'i9jabatni* or *'i9jabatni l-madiina*. If the subject is masculine singular, say *'i9jabni* ... for 'I liked'; if it is feminine singular, say *'i9jabatni*:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'i9jabni l-jaww. | 'I liked the weather.' |
| 'i9jabatni San9a. | 'I liked Sanaa.' |

The rest of the object pronouns suffixed to 'i9jab are the same as those suffixed to nouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'i9jabhum | 'They (m.) liked it, him.' |
| 'i9jabna | 'We liked it, him.' |
| 'i9jabkayn | 'You (f.p.) liked it, him.' |

b. Learn kam lak haana ? 'How long have you (m.s.) been here?' as a formula for the time being. Other forms are :

| | |
|---|---|
| kam liʃ haana ? | 'How long have you (f.s.) been here?' |
| kam lakum haana ? | 'How long have you (m.p.) been here ?' |
| kam laha haana ? | 'How long has she been here?' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Repetition

'awwal θaani θaaliθ raabi9 xaamis
saadis saabi9 θaamin taasi9 9aaʃir

### Drill 2 Transformation: cardinal → ordinal

T : sana waaHida 'one year'
S : 'awwal sana 'the first year'

1. sawwaag waaHid
2. 'arba9at fuSuul
3. sanatayn
4. bintayn
5. xamsat siniin
6. fundug waaHid
7. marra waaHida
8. marratayn
9. 9aʃarat 'ayyaam
10. jaami9a waaHida
11. mu9allimayn
12. θalaaθat 'ayyaam

Drill 3 a. Repetition

1. haaδi 'awwal marra 'aji San9a.
'This is the first time I come to Sanaa.'
2. haaδi θaani marra 'aji San9a.
3. haaδi θaaliθ marra 'aji San9a.
4. haaδi raabi9 marra 'aji San9a.
5. haaδi xaamis marra 'aji San9a.
6. haaδi saadis marra 'aji San9a.
7. haaδi saabi9 marra 'aji San9a.
8. haaδi θaamin marra 'aji San9a.
9. haaδi taasi9 marra 'aji San9a.
10. haaδi 9aaʃir marra 'aji San9a.

b. Chain

T : three
S : haaδi θaaliθ marra 'aji San9a.
'This is the third time I come to Sanaa.'

Drill 4 Chain

$S_1$ : kam lak fi l-yaman ? 'How long have you been in Yemen?'
T : θalaaθat siniin. 'three years.'
$S_2$ : gad-li θalaaθat siniin haana bass.
'I have been here three years only.'

1. sanatayn
2. 'arba9at siniin
3. xamsat siniin
4. gad-li kaθiir
5. sittat 'ayyaam
6. yawm waaHid
7. yawmayn
8. θamaaniyat siniin
9. sana waaHida
10. 9iʃriin yawm

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw yaji min al-madrasa saa9at θalaaθ.
'He comes from school at 3 o'clock.

1. hiy
2. 'ant
3. 'ana
4. 'iHna
5. 2 o'clock
6. 1 o'clock
7. 4 o'clock
8. hum
9. hin
10. 'aʃ-ʃuGl
11. 'anti
12. 'antayn

Drill 6 a. Repetition

1. huw yi9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
   'He works in the Ministry of Education.'
2. hum yi9malu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
3. hiy ti9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
4. hin yi9malayn fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
5. 'ant ti9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
6. 'antu ti9malu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
7. 'anti ti9mali fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
8. 'antayn ti9malayn fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
9. 'ana 'a9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
10. 'iHna ni9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.

b. Substitute yiʃtaGil 'he works' in a. above.

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: yi9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'He works in the Ministry of Education.'

1. hum
2. hiy
3. tiʃtaGil
6. bank al-yaman
7. 'anti
8. 'al-fundug
11. 'ana
12. haana
13. huw

4. 'antu
5. 'al-mustaʃfa
9. 'al-madrasa
10. ti9mali
14. 'iHna
15. bank ad-damm

### Drill 8 Repetition

a. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatni kaθiir.
'I like Yemen a lot.'

1. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatna kaθiir.
2. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatha kaθiir.
3. 'al-yaman 'i9jabathayn kaθiir.
4. 'al-yaman 'i9jabata kaθiir.
5. 'al-yaman 'i9jabathum kaθiir.
6. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatak kaθiir.
7. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatkum kaθiir.
8. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatkayn kaθiir.
9. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatiʃ kaθiir.
10. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatni kaθiir.

b. Substitute 'al-mu9allim 'the teacher' for 'al-yaman in a. above.

### Drill 9 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'addii-lak 9aʃara ryaal bass.
'I will give you (m.s.) ten riyals only.'

1. you (m.p.)
2. you (f.s.)
3. 18 riyals
4. two riyals
5. her
6. them (m.)
7. them (f.)
8. 20 riyals
9. him
10. you (f.p.)
11. two riyals
12. you (m.s.)

### Drill 10 Translation

1. I like Yemen a lot. I have been here for five years. I am very comfortable.

2. The first hospital here is the Government Hospital.
3. She has been here for two years only. She works as a secretary for the Ministry of Education.
4. Twenty riyals isn't much. I'll give you thirty riyals.
5. Here you are. The remainder, five riyals, is for you.
6. You are an American, but you speak Arabic well. Are you studying Arabic here? Do you write Arabic?
7. Yes, indeed. I am studying Arabic. I have been studying Arabic for two years.
8. Do you like the weather here in the summer?
9. To tell the truth, it is very hot and very humid here in the summer; the winter is very nice.
10. Are you married? Is the family with you? How many children do you have?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : truuHi la-ta9izz ya xadiija ?
xadiija : laa. 'aruuH la-l-Hodayda. 'axi w-'uxti hownaak.
tagiyya : tirja9i Gudwa ?
xadiija : yawm ar-rabuu9 nʃaaLLa.
tagiyya : Tayyib ma9 as-salaama ya xadiija.
xadiija : sallamiʃ aLLa.

2. 9abd al-gaadir : 'ayn tiʃti 'aruuH ?
yaHya : 'aʃti 'aruuH la-'amriika.
9abd al-gaadir : maa tiʃti ti9mal hownaak ?
yaHya : 'aʃti 'adrus 'ingiliizi w-tarbiya.
9abd al-gaadir : fi 'ayy jaami9a ?
yaHya : fi jaami9at Arizona.
9abd al-gaadir : bi-ta'xuδ al-9aa'ila ma9aak ?
yaHya : maaʃ δalHiin. bi-yiju fi ʃ-ʃitaa' nʃaaLLa.
9abd al-gaadir : 'aʃ-ʃitaa' fi Arizona naahi ?
yaHya : naahi kaθiir.

# UNIT 15

## I. TEXT

### mHammad mariið̣

mHammad : SabaaH al-xayr ya 'ax yuusif!

yuusif : 'ahlan wa sahlan! tafað̣ð̣al 'ijlis!

mHammad : ʃukran.

yuusif : tiʃti tiʃrab ʃay'? ʃaahi, kaafi, bunn, gahwat giʃr ?

mHammad : ʃaahi law samaHt.

yuusif : kayf Haalak ? kayf al-'ahl ? 'ayʃ ti9mal ?

mHammad : 'al-'ahl kulluhum b-xayr, bass 'ana maaʃ naahi. mariið̣ w-9indi Haraara.

yuusif : 'aLLaah yiddii-lak aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya! ruH la-T-Tabiib!

mHammad : 'al-yawm 9indi maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiib yaHya saa9at θintayn 'illa rub9 ba9d að̣-ð̣uhr. xaaTirkum.

yuusif : ma9 as-salaama.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Muhammad Is Ill

Muhammad : Good morning, brother Yusif!

Yusif : Welcome! Please sit down!

Muhammad : Thank you.

Yusif : Would you like to drink something: tea, coffee, Yemeni coffee, giʃr coffee?

Muhammad : Tea, if you please.

Yusif : How are you? How is the family? What are you doing?

Muhammad : All of the family are well, but I am not well. I am ill and running a temperature.

Yusif : God give you good health! Go to the doctor!

Muhammad : Today, I have an appointment with Dr. Yahya t a quarter to two in the afternoon. Goodbye!

Yusif : Goodbye.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SabaaH al-xayr! | Good morning! | 'ayʃ? | what? |
| tiʃrab | you (m.s.) drink | ti9mal | you (m.s.) do, make |
| ʃay' | something; anything | mariið̣ | ill, sick |
| ʃaahi | tea | Haraara | temperature; heat |
| kaafi | (Western) coffee | ruH! | Go (m.s.)! |
| bunn | (Yemeni) coffee | 'illa | except; to (e.g., quarter of five) |
| giʃr | skin (e.g., of coffee beans | rub9 | one-fourth |
| law | if | ba9d | after (prep.) |
| samaHt | you (m.s.) allowed, permitted | ð̣uhr | noon, noontime |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Haliib | milk | θalaaθmiya | 300 |
| yurt | yogurt | 'arba9miya | 400 |
| biira | beer | xamsmiya | 500 |
| sukkar | sugar | sitmiya | 600 |
| mee' | water | saba9miya | 700 |
| nuSS | half | θamaanmiya | 800 |
| θiliθ | one-third | tisa9miya | 900 |
| gabl | before (prep.) | 'alf | 1,000 |
| miya | 100 | 'alfayn | 2,000 |
| miyatayn | 200 | θalaaθa 'alf | 3,000 |

kam as-saa9a ? What time is it?

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Imperatives

The imperative is used in giving commands, i.e., in telling or asking someone or a group of people to do something, e.g., ruH! 'Go (m.s.)!' and tafað̣ð̣al 'ijlis! 'Please sit down (m.s.)!' There are four imperative forms in SA: masculine singular, masculine plural, feminine singular, and feminine plural. Nearly all the imperative forms are formed from the imperfect stems of verbs. The masculine singular form of the imperative is the base of all the other forms. The following rules pertain to the formation of the masculine singular imperative from the imperfect stems we have had so far:

a. If the stem vowel (the vowel between the second and the third radical) is -u-, the prefix is 'u-; otherwise it is 'i-. This rule applies to stems that have three consonants or radicals only.

-dfa9- → 'idfa9 ! 'Pay (m.s.)!'
-ddi- → 'iddi ! 'Give (m.s.)!'
-9mal- → 'i9mal ! 'Do (m.s.)!'
-drus- → 'udrus! 'Study (m.s.)!'
-ktub- → 'uktub! 'write (m.s.)!'

b. If the stem has more than three consonants, i- is prefixed optionally:

-ʃtaGil- → ('i)ʃtaGil! 'Work (m.s.)!'
-t9allam- → ('i)t9allam ! 'Learn (m.s.)!'
-tkallam- → ('i)tkallam ! 'Speak (m.s.)!'

c. The imperative forms of -ruuH- 'to go', -xuδ- 'to take', and -ji- 'to come' are: ruH !, xuδ !, and ta9aal !. Learn them, for the time being as independent items.

The masculine plural form (said to two or more people) takes the suffix -u:

'iʃrab ! → 'iʃrabu !
'ijlis ! → 'ijlisu !
ta9aal ! → ta9aalu !
xuδ ! → xuδu !

The feminine singular and plural forms of the imperative are formed by adding -i and -ayn, respectively, to the base form:

'iʃrab ! → 'iʃrabi → 'iʃrabayn
'udrus ! → 'udrusi → 'udrusayn !
xuδ ! → xuδi → xuδayn !
ta9aal ! → ta9aali → ta9aalayn !

## 2. Telling Time

The word saa9a 'hour; clock; watch' is used in asking and stating the time:

| | |
|---|---|
| kam as-saa9a ? | 'What time is it?' |
| 'as-saa9a xams. or:<br>saa9at xams. | 'It's five o'clock' |

Up to and including the half hour, minutes are added to the hour by using the proper numeral after w- 'and', between the half hour and the next hour they are subtracted from the next hour by using 'illa 'except'. If the time is 'thirty-five minutes past ...' or 'thirty-five minutes to ...', it is usually expressed by w-nuSS w-xams or w-nuSS illa xams. The fractions rub9, θilθ, and nuSS are usually used for a quarter of an hour, a third of an hour, and a half hour, respectively. The word for minutes is seldom used.

| | |
|---|---|
| 'as-saa9a xams w-9aʃir.<br>saa9at xams w-9aʃir. | 'It's 5:10' or |
| 'as-saa9a xams 'illa 9aʃir.<br>saa9at xams 'illa 9aʃir. | 'It's 4:50.' or |

'aS-SabaaH 'in the morning' is usually up to but not including noon. Noon is literally 'aδ̣-δ̣uhr. ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr is usually any time after twelve-noon up to 4:00 or 5:00 p.m. After 5:00 p.m. it is 'al-masaa' 'in the evening' or simply 'p.m.'.

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aji s-saa9a tis9 aS-SabaaH. | 'I come at 9:00 a.m.' |
| 'aji s-saa9a 'iθna9ʃ aδ̣-δ̣uhr. | 'I come at 12:00 noon.' |

'aji s-saa9a waaHida ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr. 'I come at 1:00 p.m.'
'aji s-saa9a xams al-masaa'. 'I come at 5:00 p.m.'

### 3. Cardinal Numerals

### a. miya, miyatayn, - - - tisa9miya

The hundreds, except miya 'one hundred' and miyatayn 'two hundred', consist of the numerals θalaaθa 'three' through tis9a 'nine' (the -a ending is dropped) plus miya:

xamsmiya '500'  θamaanmiya '800'
Exceptions: sab9a 'seven' → saba9miya or sabi9miya '700'
θamaaniya 'eight' → θamaanmiya
tis9a 'nine' → tisa9miya or tisi9miya '900'

If the noun counted is expressed, miya changes to miyat, being the first term of the noun construct. The noun counted is singular, not plural:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| xamsmiyat ryaal | '500 riyals' | *xamsmiya ryaal |
| miyat duulaar | '$100' | *miya duulaar |

### b. 'alf, 'alfayn, θaalaaθa 'alf, ... tis9a 'alf

The thousands, 3,000-9,000, consist of the numerals θalaaθ 'three' through tis9a 'nine' plus 'alf:

xamsa 'alf '5,000'  9aʃara 'alf '10,000'

The noun counted is singular:

| | |
|---|---|
| xamsa 'alf ryaal | '5,000 riyals' |
| 'alfayn ryaal | '2,000 riyals' |
| sitta 'alf ryaal | '6,000 riyals' |

## NOTE ON TEXT

1. In Yemen there are three kinds of coffee. kaafi is Western coffee: English, American, etc.; bunn is Yemeni coffee, which is Turkish coffee, usually served in a teacup; and gahwat giʃr, which is coffee made by boiling the skin of coffee beans.

2. Learn 'aLLaah yiddii-lak aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya 'God give you good health!' as a formula or an idiomatic expression; it is said when wishing someone good health, a speedy recovery, etc.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Chain

$S_1$ : SabaaH al-xayr ya 'ax yuusif! 'Good morning, Yusif!'
$S_2$ : 'ahlan wa sahlan! tafaḍḍal 'ijlis!
'Welcome! Please sit down!'

### Drill 2 Substitution

tiʃrab ʃaahi ? 'Would you like to drink tea?'

1. gahwa
2. Haliib
3. biira
4. mee'
5. bunn
6. tea
7. Haliib baarid
8. ʃaahi ma9 Haliib
9. gahwa yamaniyya
10. mee' baarid
11. Haliib ma9 sukkar
12. gahwat giʃr

### Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'ʃti 'aʃrab kaafi. 'I want to drink coffee.'

1. ʃaahi
2. Haliib
3. huw
6. 'iHna
7. 'ant
8. 'antu
11. 'anti
12. 'ana
13. 'antayn

4. hiy
5. mee'
9. gahwa
10. hum
14. ʃaahi
15. hin

Drill 4 Substitution

'ayn al-mudiir law samaHt ? 'Where is the director, please?'

1. wazaarat at-tarbiya
2. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal
3. wazaarat aS-SiHHa
4. aT-Tabiib
5. fundug saba'
6. 'aʃ-ʃaahi
7. 'al-baagi
8. mudiir aʃ-ʃarika
9. gahwat al-giʃr
10. 'al-yurt
11. mustaʃfa l-Hukuuma
12. bank ad-damm

Drill 5 Substitution

'ana mariiδ al-yawm.

1. 9indi Haraara
2. maaʃ naahi
3. mirtaaH kaθiir
4. maʃGuul ʃwayya
5. 'adrus 9arabi
6. 'aʃtaGil
7. 'adii-lak ryaal
8. 9indi ʃuGl
9. 'at9allam faransi
10. 'aktub 9arabi
11. 'aʃti 'aruuH
12. 'aruuH la-T-Tabiib
13. 'aji ma9aak
14. 'aaxuδak ma9i

Drill 6 Repetition

a. ruH! tafaδ̣δ̣al! 'ijlis! 'iʃrab! 'idfa9!
'iddi! 'i9mal! 'udrus! 'uktub! ta9aal!

b. ruuHi! tafaδ̣δ̣ali! 'ijlisi! 'iʃrabi! 'idfa9i!
'iddi! 'i9mali! 'udrusi! 'uktubi! ta9aali!

## Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: ruH 'iʃrab gahwa! 'Go drink (m.s.) coffee!'

1. 'anti
2. 'antu
3. work
4. learn Arabic
5. pay $1,000
6. 'anti
7. 'antayn
8. take them
9. 'ant
10. 'anti
11. study
12. talk to him
13. 'antu
14. give him $5
15. 'ant

## Drill 8 Transformation: indicative → imperative

Example: 'ant tiʃrab gahwa. 'You (m.s.) drink coffee.' →
'iʃrab gahwa! 'Drink (m.s.) coffee!'

1. 'ant bi-tiʃtaGil haana.
2. 'anti bi-tiʃtaGili haana.
3. 'antu bi-tiʃrabu gahwa.
4. 'antayn bi-tudrusayn.
5. 'ant bi-titkallam 9arabi.
6. 'antu bi-tiʃrabu ʃaahi
7. 'anti bi-ta'xuδi $3,000.
8. 'ant bi-t'addii-lu sitta ryaal.
9. 'antu bi-tidfa9u $9,000.
10. 'antayn bi-tuktubayn 9arabi.
11. 'ant bi-ta9mal haana.
12. 'anti bi-tiji ma9aahin.
13. 'antu bi-truuHu la-T-Tabiib.
14. 'ant bi-ta'xuδ YR. 800.

## Drill 9 Translation

1. YR. 500
2. $2,000
3. 200 schools
4. 10,000 students
5. YR. 100
6. 14 years
7. 7 days
8. 10 hospitals
9. $9,000
10. five dinars
11. ten years
12. 12 doctors
13. two days
14. YR. 20,000
15. two years

## Drill 10 Repetition

1. ta9aal as-saa9a tisi9 aS-SabaaH! 'Come (m.s.) at 9:00 a.m.'
2. ta9aal as-saa9a tisi9 al-masaa'!
3. ta9aal as-saa9a iθna9ʃ að̣ð̣uhr!
4. ta9aal as-saa9a Hda9ʃ w-nuSS gabl að̣-ð̣uhr!

5. ta9aal as-saa9a 'iθna9ʃ 'illa rub9!
6. ta9aal as-saa9a 'iθna9ʃ 'illa θiliθ!
7. ta9aal as-saa9a θintayn w-θiliθ ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr!
8. ta9aal as-saa9a waaHida w-nuSS ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr!
9. ta9aal as-saa9a Hda9ʃ w-rub9 gabl aδ̣-δ̣uhr!
10. ta9aal as-saa9a 5:10 p.m.
11. ta9aal as-saa9a 8:50 a.m.
12. ta9aal as-saa9a 2:25 p.m.
13. ta9aal as-saa9a 12:40 p.m.

Drill 11 Question -- Answer

1. 'ayʃ tiʃti tiʃrab ? coffee, tea, milk?
2. kayf Haalak ? mirtaaH nʃaaLLa ?
3. 9indak maw9id al-yawm ma9 aT-Tabiib ?
4. 9indak ʃuGl fi l-masaa' al-yawm ? tiʃti tiji ma9i ?
5. kam as-saa9a δalHiin law samaHt ?
6. 'ant mutazawwij ? kam walad 9indak ?
7. kam lak fi l-yaman ? nʃaaLLa 'i9jabatak San9a ?
8. kam ta'xuδ min haana la-hownaak ? kam si9r al-Hukuuma ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Hasan : nʃaaLLa 'i9jabatak al-Hodayda ?
   Jim : 'al-Hodayda naahiya fi ʃ-ʃitaa'. fi S-Sayf 'al-jaww Haami w-ruTuuba kaθiir.
   Hasan : kam lak fi l-yaman ?
   Jim : θalaaθat siniin.
   Hasan : w-l-9aa'ila ma9aak ?
   Jim : 'ana maaʃ mutazawwij. nʃaaLLa ba9d sanatayn.

2. 9aa'iʃa : kayf Haaliʃ ya maryam ?
   maryam : mariiδ̣a w-9indi Haraara.
   9aa'iʃa : ruuHi T-Tabiiba!
   maryam : 9indi maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiiba haala fi mustaʃfa l-kuwayti Gudwa saa9at 9aʃir.
   9aa'iʃa : 'aLLaah yidii-liʃ aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya!

maryam : ʃukran ya 9aa'iʃa. xaaTriʃ!

9aa'iʃa : ma9 as-salaama.

# UNIT 16

## I. TEXT

### fi s-suug (i)

'amiina : b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ?
'al-bayyaa9 : b-9iʃriin ryaal al-kiilo.
'amiina : Gaali kaθiir.
'al-bayyaa9 : maaʃi, maaʃ Gaali; raxiiS. 'al-yawm maabiʃ TamaaTiis kaθiir fi s-suug.
'amiina : b-adfa9 xamasTa9ʃar ryaal bass.
'al-bayyaa9 : la. haaða galiil.
'amiina : la, ma 'aʃtiiʃ. fi 'amaani llaah!
'al-bayyaa9 : ta9aali! saba9Ta9ʃar ryaal! tiʃti ?
'amiina : maaʃi. xamasTa9ʃar ryaal bass. 'aʃti 'aʃtari bayð̣ w-burtagaal w-9inab ba9da.
'al-bayyaa9 : kam tiʃti ?
'amiina : 'iddii-li θalaaθa kiilu TamaaTiis w-darzan bayð̣ w-'iθnayn kiilo burtagaal w-kiilo 9inab.
'al-bayyaa9 : naahi.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Marketplace (i)

Amina : How much are tomatoes today?
Seller : Twenty riyaals a kilo.
Amina : Very expensive!
Seller : No, it's not expensive; it's cheap. Today there aren't many tomatoes in the market.
Amina : I'll pay fifteen riyals only.
Seller : No, that is too little.
Amina : No, I do not want any. Goodbye!
Seller : Come! Just seventeen riyaals! Do you want any?

Amina : No. Fifteen riyals only. I would like to buy eggs, oranges, and grapes too.

Seller : How much do you want?

Amina : Give me three kilos of tomatoes, one dozen eggs, two kilos of oranges and one kilo of grapes.

Seller : Fine.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| suug | marketplace, market | ma....ʃ | not (with foll. verb) |
| b-kam ? | for how much? | 'aʃtari | I buy |
| TamaaTiis | tomatoes | bayð̣ | eggs |
| bayyaa9 | seller | burtagaal | oranges |
| b-9iʃriin | for twenty | 9inab | grapes |
| kiilo | kilo(gram) | ba9da | later on |
| Gaali | expensive | darzan | dozen |
| raxiiS | cheap, inexpensive | naahi | O.K., fine |
| galiil | little; a few | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| HabHab | watermelons | zubda | butter |
| baTTiix | cantaloupes | jubn | cheese |
| tuffaaH | apples | rizz | rice |
| mawz | bananas | xubz | bread |
| barguug | apricots | buTaaT | potatoes |
| lahm | meat | bisbaas | hot peppers |
| Huut | fish | gaat | qat |
| dihn | shortening | biibar | bell peppers |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Cardinal Numerals

SA has a special system for saying the cardinals. Any number between 21 and 99 is expressed by a phrase consisting of the units numeral followed by the conjunction w- 'and', and then followed by the tens numeral:

| | |
|---|---|
| xamsa w-xamsiin | 'fifty-five' |
| waaHid w-sittiin | 'sixty-one' |

Numbers between 101 and 999 are expressed by saying the hundreds numeral first followed by the conjunction w-, then the units numeral or the numeral phrse:

| | |
|---|---|
| miya w-xamsa | '105' |
| θalaaθmiya w-xamsa w-9iʃriin | '325' |
| miyatayn w-sitta w-tis9iin | '296' |

If a number has 'alf 'one thousand' as its biggest numeral, you say the thousand first, followed by w-, and then followed by the appropriate phrase as described above:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'alf w-tisa9miya w-xamsa w-θamaaniin | '1985' |

## 2. Collective Nouns

TamaaTiis 'tomatoes', bayδ 'eggs', burtagaal 'oranges', HabHab 'watermelons', baTTiix 'cantaloupes, sweet melons', jubn 'cheese', xubz 'bread', and zubda 'butter' are examples of collective nouns. Almost all kinds of vegetables, fruits, grains, flowers, fruit trees, grasses, etc., are collective nouns. The singular noun or item associated with a collective noun is known as a "unit noun". Thus, bayδ is '(some) eggs' and bayδa is 'an egg'. Most unit nouns are formed by adding -a to the collective noun, sometimes with appropriate stem changes, which will be explained as we go along; a few take the suffix -i. Other unit nouns are formed by using the word Habbat 'grain; seed, one unit of', ra's 'head of' (UNIT 17) or 9uudi 'root, stalk', etc., before the collective noun. Those that take the suffix -i in this lesson are bisbaas 'hot peppers' and biibar 'bell peppers'. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| bisbaasi | 'a hot pepper' |
| biibari | 'a bell pepper' |
| Habbat rizz | 'a grain of rice |
| Habbat buTaaT | 'a potatoe' |
| ra's guʃmi (UNIT 17) | 'a radish' |
| 9uudi gaat | 'a qat root' |

## 3. The Negative Particle *ma*

ma negates verbs, as opposed to maaʃ that negates nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases. It occurs before the verb and the verb usually takes the suffix -ʃ:

| | |
|---|---|
| huwa ma yiʃrabʃ biira. | 'He does not drink beer.' |
| 'ana ma b-adrusʃ ðalHiin. | 'I am not studying now.' |
| hiy ma titkallamʃ ingiliizi. | 'She does not speak English.' |

If the verb ends with a vowel, that vowel is lengthened before -ʃ. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| ma tiʃtiiʃ. | 'She does not want.' |
| ma yruuHuuʃ. | 'They (m.) do not go.' |
| ma truuHuuʃ | 'You (m.p.) do not go.' |
| ma yijiiʃ. | 'He does not come.' |

Notes:

The adding of -ʃ is optional.

The word ʃay' 'something; anything' after the verb with or without -ʃ expresses the meaning of 'not ... anything'. Example: ma yiʃtiiʃ ʃay'. 'He does not want anything.' The second and third person masculine plural form is used instead of the feminine form:

| | |
|---|---|
| hin ma yiʃtuuʃ. ' | 'They (f.) do not want.' |
| 'antayn ma tiʃtuuʃ. | 'You (f.p.) do not want.' |

In a double or a triple imperfect construction it is only the first verb that is negated:

| | |
|---|---|
| ma 'aʃtiiʃ 'aʃtari. | 'I do not want to buy.' |
| ma yiʃtuuʃ yiju yudrusu. | 'They do not want to come to study.' |

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ? 'How much are tomatoes today?'

1. sukkar
2. Haliib
3. bayḍ
4. burtagaal
5. HabHab
6. 9inab
7. baTTiix
8. tuffaaH
9. mawz
10. laHm
11. Huut
12. dihn
13. rizz
14. buTaaT
15. gaat

Drill 2 Double Substitution

b-9iʃriin ryaal al-kiilo. 'Twenty riyals per kilogram.'

1. 30 -- dozen
2. 12 -- kilogram
3. 50 -- piece
4. 12 -- dozen
5. 20 -- kilogram
6. 100 -- piece
7. 15 -- kilogram
8. 40 -- dozen
9. 35 -- kilogram
10. 25 -- piece

Drill 3 Transformation: masculine → feminine

haaδa Gaali. → haaδi Gaaliya. 'This is expensive.'

1. haaδa raxiiS.
2. haaδa galiil.
3. haaδa kaθiir.

8. waLLa maaʃ naahi l-yawm.
9. mariiḍ w-9indi Haraara.
10. ta9aal! xuδ haaδa!

4. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr!
5. 'ayʃ tiʃti tiʃrab ?
6. ʃaahi law samaHt!
7. kayf Haalak ya kariim ?
11. 'ant bi-tudrus 9arabi ?
12. 'al-mu9allim mutazawwij ?
13. 'aLLaah yidii-lak al-9aafiya!
14. tafaṣṣal 'iʃrab gahwa!

Drill 4 Transformation: positive → negative

huw yudrus 9arabi. → huw ma yudrusʃ 9arabi.
'He studies Arabic. → He doesn't study Arabic.'

1. hiy tiʃrab biira.
2. 9indi ʃuGl al-yawm.
3. 'al-yawm 'al-xamiis.
4. 'iHna bi-nudrus 9arabi.
5. hum yiʃtu yruuHu.
6. 'ana 'aʃti 'aʃtari bayṣ.
7. huw yiʃtaGil ma9aana.
8. 'anti bi-ti9mali fi l-bank ?
9. 'ant truuH aT-Tabiib ?
10. huw yiji ma9aana.
11. 'antu titkallamu 9arabi ?
12. 'antayn tit9allamayn faransi ?
13. hiy tuktub 9arabi naahi.
14. 'i9jabni l-jaww fi San9a.

Drill 5 Transformation: indicative → imperative

Example: T: 'ant tiʃrab gahwa. → 'iʃrab gahwa!
'You (m.s.) drink coffee. → Drink coffee!'

1. 'ant tiji ma9i.
2. 'anti tiji ma9aana.
3. hiy tiʃtari TamaaTiis.
4. 'ant tiʃtari laHm.
5. 'anti ta'xuδi $2,000.
6. 'antu tiʃtaGilu hownaak.
7. ant tiʃrab ʃaahi.
8. 'antayn tudrusayn 9arabi.
9. 'anti truuHi l-madrasa.
10. 'ant t'addii-li miyat ryaal.
11. 'antu tiʃrabu Haliib.
12. 'antayn tijayn al-yawm.

Drill 6 Double Substitution

ma 'aʃtiiʃ aʃtari mawz. 'aʃti 'aʃtari 9inab.

1. oranges -- bananas
2. eggs -- meat
3. meat -- fish
4. fish -- cheese
5. shortening -- butter
6. watermelons -- grapes
7. rice -- potatoes
8. potatoes -- tomatoes
9. tomatoes -- hot peppers
10. qat -- bell peppers
11. apricots -- apples
12. apricots -- oranges

Drill 7 Identification

Individual students are asked to say the following numbers:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 35 | 72 | 106 | 9000 | 1001 |
| 20 | 24 | 1116 | 1900 | 672 |
| 1985 | 1914 | 1066 | 1776 | 312 |
| 1990 | 1111 | 2831 | 111 | 10000 |

Drill 8 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | 'as-sabt | 'Saturday' |
| $S_1$ : | 'as-sabt gabl al-'aHad. | 'Saturday is before Sunday.' |
| $S_2$ : | 'al-'aHad ba9d as-sabt. | 'Sunday is after Saturday.' |

Carry on with all the days of the week.

Drill 9 Question -- Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ?
2. 'aT-TamaaTiis Gaali l-yawm 'aw raxiiS ?
3. 'aT-TamaaTiis kaθiir al-yawm fi s-suug ?
4. maa tiʃti tiʃtari 'amiina ba9da ?
5. tiʃti tiʃtari tuffaaH ?

6. kam kiilo TamaaTiis tiʃti 'amiina ?
7. kay darzan bayδ̣ tiʃti ?
8. tiʃti 'amiina 'iθnayn kiilo barguug ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'aHmad : 'as-salaam 9alaykum!
'al-bayyaa9 : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
'aHmad : 9indak tuffaaH ?
'al-bayyaa9 : 9indi tuffaaH lubnaani naahi.
'aHmad : b-kam al-kiilo ?
'al-bayyaa9 : b-9aʃara ryaal al-kiilo w-lak b-θamaaniya.
'aHmad : maaʃi. Gaali kaθiir.
'al-bayyaa9 : bass haaδ̣a tuffaaH lubnaani.
'aHmad : Tayyib 'addii-li θalaaθa kiilo tuffaaH w-kiilo 9inab w-darzan bayδ̣.

2. mHammad : ruH la-s-suug w-iʃtari-lana laHm!
9abdaLLa : 'al-laHm Gaali l-yawm. maabiʃ laHm kaθiir fi s-suug. 'al-Huut raxiiS w-naahi.
mHammad : b-kam kiilo l-Huut ?
9abdaLLa : b-9iʃriin ryaal.
mHammad : Tayyib 'aʃti 'aji ma9aak.
9abdaLLa : Tayyib 'ahlan wa sahlan! tafaδ̣δ̣al!

# UNIT 17

## I. TEXT

### fi s-suug (ii)

tagiyya 9a-truuH as-suug 9ala sibb tiʃti tiʃtari TamaaTiis w-dubbe w-xiyaar w-faaSuulya xaḍraa' w-SalaTa w-biibar w-baaδinjaan 'aswad. Gudwa, 'al-jum9a, 9indahum ḍuyuuf fi l-bayt saa9at tisi9 fi l-layl. tagiyya tiʃti tuTbux 'akl yamani. yumkin ma tilgaaʃ laHm Tali l-yawm. tigdar tiʃtari bagari 'aw 9ijl 'aw dajaaj. 9aa'iʃa, Sadiigat tagiyya, 9a-tiji 'ila bayt tagiyya w-ta'kul ma9aahum.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Marketplace (ii)

Tagiyya will go to the market because she wants to buy tomatoes, zucchini, cucumbers, green beans, lettuce, bell pepper, and black eggplant. Tomorrow, Friday, they will have guests at home at 9:00 p.m. Tagiyya wants to cook Yemeni food. She might not find lamb today. She may buy beef or veal or chicken. Aisha, Tagiyya's friend, will come to Tagiyya's home and eat with them.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9a-truuH | she will go | 'akl | food |
| 9ala sibb | because | yumkin | perhaps, maybe |
| dubbe | (coll.) zucchini s. | tilga | she finds |
| | dubbaayi | Tali | lamb (animal); lamb (meat) |
| xiyaar | (coll.) cucumbers | tigdar | she can |
| faaSuulya | (coll.) beans | bagari | beef |
| xaḍraa' | green (f.) | 9ijl | veal; calf (of cow) |
| salaTa | (coll.) lettuce | (laHm) 9ijl | (coll.) veal |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| baaδinjaan | (coll.) eggplant | dajaaj | (coll.) chickens; chicken |
| 'aswad | black | | |
| ḍuyuuf | guests (s. ḍayf) | 9a-tiji | she will come |
| layl | night; nighttime | ta'kul | she eats |
| tuTbux | she cooks; you (m.s.) cook | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lawn | color | δahabi | gold (color) |
| bunni | brown | wardi | pink |
| 'abyaḍ | white | 'aHmar | red |
| 'aSfar | yellow | liim | (coll.) lemons |
| 'axḍar | green | guʃmi | (coll.) radishes |
| 'azrag | blue | Habba | piece, grain |
| burtagaali | orange (color) | ra's | head |
| ramaadi | grey | ra's salaTa | head of lettuce |
| | | ra's guʃmi | a radish |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Collective Nouns

It was pointed out in UNIT 16 that most unit nouns are formed by adding -a or -i to the collective noun and others are formed by using Habbat, ra's, or 9irg to the collective noun. Note and learn the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| TumTusa | 'a tomatoe' |
| dubbaayi | 'a piece of zucchini' |
| xiyaara or Habbat xiyaar | 'a cucumber' |
| Habbat faaSuulya | 'a bean (of, e.g., green beans)' |
| Habbat salaTa or ra's salaTa | 'a head of lettuce' |
| biibari 'a bell pepper' | bisbaasi ' a hot pepper' |
| baaδinjaana or Habbat baaδinjaan | 'an eggplant' |
| dajaaja | 'a hen; a chicken' |

| | |
|---|---|
| laHma | 'a piece of meat' |
| Habbat 9inab | 'a grape' |

## 2. Color Adjectives

Color adjectives behave syntactically like adjectives; they modify nouns and agree with them in gender, number (only singular and plural) and definiteness. In this section we are concerned with the singular only. Most masculine singular color adjectives fit the pattern $'aC_1C_2aC_3$. The feminine singular pattern is $C_1aC_2C_3aa'$:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'axδ̣ar | → | xaδ̣raa' | 'green (f.)' |
| 'aHmar | → | Hamraa' | 'red (f.)' |
| 'aSfar | → | Safraa' | 'yellow (f.)' |
| 'azrag | → | zargaa' | 'blue (f.)' |
| 'aswad | → | sawdaa' | 'black (f.)' |
| 'abyaδ̣ | → | bayδ̣aa' | 'white (f.)' |

Those that end with -i form their singular feminine forms by adding -yya (like nisba adjectives):

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bunni | → | bunniyya | 'brown (f.)' |
| ramaadi | → | ramaadiyya | 'grey (f.)' |
| burtagaali | → | burtagaaliyya | 'orange (f.)' |
| wardi | → | wardiyya | 'pink (f.)' |

## 3. The Future Tense

The future tense in SA is indicated by suffixing ʃa- or 9a- to the imperfect tense verb. The former, ʃa- indicates future with intention, but it is used almost interchangeably with 9a-. In Sanaa ʃ- is usually used with the first person singular; in other regions it is used with all persons.

| | |
|---|---|
| 9a-yiji. | 'He will come; he is coming.' |
| 9a-yudrus. | 'He will study; he is going to study.' |

With the first person singular 'a- drops:

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃa-ktub. | 'I will write; I am going to write.' |
| ʃa-ʃtaGil. | 'I will work; I am going to work.' |

## 4. The Verb *-gdar-*

-gdar- is the imperfect stem of the verb which means 'to be able to, can'. It can be used by itself or in a string with other verbs:

| | |
|---|---|
| na9am 'agdar. | 'Yes, I can.' |
| yigdar yruuH. | 'He can go.' |
| yigdar yruuH yiʃrab. | 'He can go to (have a) drink.' |

## 5. Imperatives

The imperative forms of -akul- 'to eat' and -Tbux- 'to cook' are:

kul, kuli, kulu, kulayn
'uTbux, 'uTbuxi, 'uTbuxu, 'uTbuxayn

As of UNIT 18 verbs in the vocabulary and additional vocabulary sections will be entered in their stem forms, e.g., -ruuH- 'to go', etc.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

a. 'aʃti 'aakul dajaaj. 'I want to eat (some) chicken.'

1. dubbe
2. xiyaar
3. faaSuulya
4. baaδinjaan
5. Tali
6. bagari
7. 9ijl
8. salaTa
9. guʃmi
10. bayδ̣
11. burtagaal
12. tuffaaH
13. 9inab
14. rizz
15. Huut

b. Replace the collective nouns in a. above with unit nouns.

### Drill 2 Combination

Example: 'aʃti 'aruuH as-suug. 'aʃti 'aʃtari TamaaTiis. →
'aʃti 'aruuH as-suug 9ala sibb 'aʃti 'aʃtari TamaaTiis.
'I want to go to the marketplace. I would like to buy (some tomatoes. → I want to go to the marketplace because I would like to buy (some) tomatoes.'

1. hiy tiʃti truuH aT-Tabiib. hiy mariiδ̣a.
2. 'ant ma tigdarʃ tij. 'ant mariiδ̣ w-9indak Haraara.
3. ma nigdar niji Gudwa. 9indana δ̣uyuuf.
4. tigdari tiʃtari dajaaj. 'ad-dajaaj raxiiS al-yawm.
5. ma 'agdarʃ 'aʃrab haaδi l-biira. 'al-biira maaʃ baarida.
6. yiʃti yruuH la-l-bayt. yiʃti ya'kul.
7. 'aʃti 'aruuH al-madrasa. 'aʃti 'at9allam.
8. tiʃtu tiʃtari dubbe w-Tali. tiʃti tuTbux 'akl 9arabi.

### Drill 3 Substitution

tagiyya tiʃti tuTbux 'akl yamani. 'Tagiyya wants to cook Yemeni food.'

1. Arabic
2. Lebanese
3. Bahraini
4. English
5. French
6. Indian
7. Tunisian
8. Egyptian
9. Kuwaiti
10. Syrian
11. Yemeni
12. Libyan
13. Jordanian
14. Qatari
15. German

### Drill 4 Variable Substitution

yumkin tilga Huut fi s-suug.
'You (m.s.) may find fish in the market.'

1. Tali
2. bagari
3. 'anti
4. xiyaar
5. liim
6. guʃmi
7. hum
8. 'antu
9. mawz
10. bisbaas
11. 'ana
12. baaðinjaan
13. dajaaj
14. 'antayn
15. HabHab

### Drill 5 Completion

a. 'ana 'agdar .... 'I can ....'

T: speak Arabic
S: 'ana 'agdar 'atkallam 9arabi. 'I can speak Arabic.'

1. speak English
2. speak French
3. buy red apples
4. find green beans
5. come at 5:30 a.m.
6. come at night
7. go to the market
8. eat Arabic food
9. go home now
10. drink beer
11. pay $800
12. study at school
13. write to them
14. work now or at night

b. 'ant tigdar .... 'You (m.s.) can ....'

c. huw yigdar .... 'He can ....'

Use substitutions from Drill a. above.

Drill 6 Transformation: positive → negative → future (positive).

Change the sentences in Drill 5, above, into the negative and then into the future.

Example: 'ana 'agdar 'atkallam 9arabi. → ma 'agadrʃ 'atkallam 9arabi.
→ ʃa-gdar 'atkallam 9arabi.
'I can speak Arabic. → I cannot speak Arabic.
→ I will be able to speak Arabic.

Drill 7 Repetition

1. 'al-mawz 'aSfar.
2. 'al-mawza Safraa'.
3. 'ad-dubbe xaḍraa'.
4. Habbat ad-dubbe xaḍraa'.
5. 'al-baaδinjaan 'aswad.
6. 'al-baaδinjaana sawdaa'.
7. 'at-tuffaaH 'aHmar.
8. 'at-tuffaaHa Hamraa'.
9. 'al-bayḍ 'abyaḍ.
10. 'al-bayḍa bayḍaa'.
11. 'at-taksi bunni.
12. 'al-gahwa bunniyya.
13. 'al-lawn δahabi.
14. 'as-saa9a δahabiyya.
15. haaδa 'azrag.
16. haaδi zargaa'.

Drill 8 Chain

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| a. $S_1$: | maa lawn haaδa ? | 'What color is this (m.) ?' |
| T: | 'aswad | 'black' |
| $S_2$: | lawna 'aswad. | 'Its color is black.' |

1. 'abyaḍ
2. 'azrag
6. bunni
7. ramaadi
11. white
12. brown

3. 'axḍar
4. 'aHmar
5. 'aSfar
8. δahaabi
9. burtagaali
10. yellow
13. red
14. black
15. green

b. Change the above to the feminine.

Drill 9    Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. haaδa 'aswad.
2. haaδa 'aSfar.
3. 'al-walad 'abyaḍ.
4. haaδa 'axḍar.
5. haaδa 'aswad.
6. haaδa 'aHmar.
7. haaδa ramaadi.
8. huw 'aswad.
9. huw δahabi.
10. 'al-mudiir 'abyaḍ.
11. haaδa 'azrag.
12. huw wardi.
13. haaδa 'aHmar.
14. haaδa burtagaali.

Drill 10    Question -- Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. maa tiʃti tiʃtari tagiyya ?
2. tagiyya tiʃti tiʃtari faaSuulya naaʃifa ?
3. tiʃti tiʃtari baaδinjaan 'aHmar ?
4. f-ayy saa9a 9indahum ḍuyuuf fi l-bayt ?
5. tagiyya tiʃti tuTbux 'akl 9arabi ?
6. man 9aa'iʃa ?
7. 'ayn 9a-tiji 9aa'iʃa ?

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Answer the following questions:

1. maa l-yawm ?
2. kam as-saa9a δalHiin ?
3. f-ayy Hiin ʃa-ruuH as-suug ?
4. maa 'aʃti 'aʃtari ?
5. Gudwa l-xamiis ?
6. 'aḍ-ḍuyuuf 9a-yiju l-yawm ?
7. f-ayy Hiin 9a-yiju ?
8. 'al-bagari naahi ?
9. 'al-bagari Gaali 'aw raxiiS ?
10. kam si9r al-bagari ?

# UNIT 18

## I. TEXT

### Hajj aHmad

| | |
|---|---|
| 9ali : | ya Hajj aHmad! ya Hajj aHmad! 'ayn ant ? maHHad yʃuufak! |
| Hajj aHmad : | waLLa 9indi ʃuGl kaθiir: b-aruuH 'ila ʃ-ʃuGl aS-SubH saa9at sitt w-b-arja9 saa9at θalaaθ ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr kull yawm. |
| 9ali : | kayf al-'usra w-al-'awlaad ? |
| Hajj aHmad : | la ba's. 'al-Hamdu lillaah. Gudwa 9a-tiftaH al-madaaris w-δalHiin ʃa-siir 'ila l-bank 9ala sibb 'aʃti 'ajurr fuluus. 'al-'awlaad yiʃtu kutub w-dafaatir w-'aglaam ..... etc. |
| 9ali : | 'al-madrasa ba9iida min haana ? |
| Hajj aHmad : | maaʃi. gariiba. yimʃu. b-aʃillahum b-s-sayyaara w-zaaratHiin bi-yruuHu b-l-baaS. |
| 9ali : | tamaam! 'aLLaah yi9iinak w-yigawwiik! |
| Hajj aHmad : | xaaTrak! b-asiir δalHiin. |
| 9ali : | ma9 as-salaama! |

## II. TRANSLATION

### Haj Ahmad

| | |
|---|---|
| Ali : | Haj Ahmad! Haj Ahmad! Where have you been? No one sees you. |
| Haj Ahmad : | Really, I have a lot of work: I go to work in the morning at six and come back at three in the afternoon every day. |
| Ali : | How are the family and the children? |
| Haj Ahmad : | Not bad. Praise be to God. Tomorrow schools will open, and now I am going to the bank because I want to withdraw |

some money. The children need books, notebooks, pencils, ... etc.

Ali : Is the school far from here?

Haj Ahmad : No, it's close. They walk. I take them by car and sometimes they go by bus.

Ali : Right! God help you and give you strength!

Haj Ahmad : Goodbye! I am going now.

Ali : Goodbye.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| maHHad | no one, nobody | 'aglaam | pens; pencils |
| -ʃuuf- | to see | | (s. galam) |
| 'aS-SubH | in the morning | ba9iida | far (f.) |
| -rja9- | return, come back | gariiba | close, nearby (f.) |
| 'usra ('usar) | family; household | -mʃi- | walk |
| 'awlaad | children (s. walad) | -ʃill- | to carry, lift |
| -ftaH- | to open | sayyaara | car |
| madaaris | schools (s. madrasa) | b-s-sayyaara | by car |
| -siir- | go; walk | zaaratHiin | sometimes |
| -jurr- | withdraw (e.g. money) | baaS | bus |
| fuluus | money (f.) | b-l-baaS | by bus |
| kutub | books (s. kitaab) | tamaam! | right! correct! |
| dafaatir | notebooks, copybooks (s. daftar) | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aHad | someone; anyone |
| haaδawlaak | these (m. or f.) |
| haδaak | that; that one (m.) |
| haδiik | that, that one (f.) |
| haaδawlaak | those (m. or f.) |
| b-l-9arabi | in Arabic |
| kull | (with foll. indef. n.) each; every |
| kull al-yawm | all day long, the whole day |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems -ʃuuf- 'to see', -siir- 'to go; to walk', -jurr- 'to withdraw', and -ʃill- 'to carry; to lift' do not usually take a prefix vowel since they do not have initial consonant clusters.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| huw | yjurr fuluus. | 'He withdraws money.' |
| hiy | tjurr fuluus. | 'She withdraws money.' |

The others -rja9- 'to return', -ftaH 'to open', and -mʃi- 'to walk' usually take -i-:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9a-yirja9 Gudwa. | 'He will return tomorrow.' |
| 'al-bank yiftaH al-yawm. | 'The bank opens today.' |

The imperative forms of -ʃuuf- and -siir- are like those of -ruuH- 'to go':

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ʃuf! | 'See (m.s.)!' | ʃuufi! | 'See (f.s.)!' |
| ʃuufu! | 'See (m.p.)!' | ʃuufayn! | 'See (f.p.)!' |

Those of -ftaH- 'to open', -rja9- 'to return', and -mʃi- 'to walk' take the prefix i-:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'iftaH! | 'Open (m.s.)!' | 'iftaHi! | 'Open (f.s.)!' |
| 'iftaHu! | 'Open (m.p.)!' | 'iftaHayn! | 'Open (f.p.)!' |

-jurr- 'to withdraw' and -ʃill- 'to carry; to lift' do not take a prefix: jurr! jurri! jurru! jurrayn!

## 2. Plurals of Nouns

There are two kinds of plurals of nouns in SA: masculine sound or feminine sound plurals and broken plurals.

a. Most masculine sound plural nouns refer to male human beings or to a group in which there is at least one male. They are formed by adding *-iin* to the masculine singular noun, sometimes with stem changes. If the masculine singular noun ends with *-i*, the stem adds *-yy* before *-iin*: *yamani* 'Yemeni' → *yamaniyyiin* → 'Yemenis', *'amriiki* 'American' → *'amriikiyyiin* 'Americans'.

b. The feminine sound plural is formed by adding *-aat* to the singular. It is used for four general classes of nouns:

(1) Those referring to females, e.g.

Tabiiba → Tabiibaat
bint → banaat (irreg.)
yamaniyya → yamaniyyaat
'uxt → 'axawaat (irreg.)

(2) Most feminine singular nouns ending in *-a*:

saa9a → saa9aat
wazaara → wazaaraat
sana → sanawaat (irreg.)
ʃarika → ʃarikaat
marra → marraat

Included in this section are some unit nouns formed from collectives:

TumTusa → TumTusaat
tuffaaHa → tuffaaHaat
mawza → mawzaat
xiyaara → xiyaaraat

If the unit noun ends with *-i*, *-yy-* is added before *-aat*:

bisbaasi → bisbaasiyyaat
biibaari → biibaariyyaat

(3) Some masculine nouns of foreign origin:

baaS → baaSaat
kiilo → kiilowaat (-o + -aa + -waa)

(4) Certain masculine nouns ending in -a, such as:

mustaʃfa → mustaʃfayaat

c. Broken plurals are formed from the singular not by adding suffixes but by chanding the internal structure of the word. There are a number of such different patterns which will be learned separately. It will be here sufficient to illustrate two types that have already shown up:

bank 'a bank' → bunuuk '(some) banks'

Here the singulr pattern CaCC changes to the plural pattern CuCuuC. Other examples of the plural pattern CuCuuC are: ra's 'head' → ru'uus, bayt 'house' → buyuut, faSl 'seson' → fuSuul, etc. Another example of the other pattern is ʃuGl 'work, job' → 'aʃGaal, where the singular pattern CuCC changes into 'aCCaaC. Other examples are : suug 'market, marketplace' → 'aswaag, si9r 'price; tariff' → 'as9aar, lawn 'color' → 'alwaan. These two patterns CuCuuC and 'aCCaaC are probably the two most common broken plural patterns in SA.

Note: All plurals of nouns in VOCABULARY and ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY will be parenthesized as of UNIT 19.

### 3. Noun -- Adjective Concord

Adjectives in SA agree with the nouns they modify in gender and definiteness. As for number, they have two numbers: singular and plural only. If a noun is singular, the adjective is singular; if it is dual or plural, the adjective is plural or feminine singular sometimes, especially if the plural noun is non-human:

| | |
|---|---|
| bunuuk kibaar (kabiira) | 'big banks' |
| bankeen kibaar | 'two big banks' |
| 'awlaad kibaar | 'big boys' |
| waladeen kibaar | 'two big boys' |
| banaat Haaliyaat | 'beautiful girls' |
| buyuut gadiima | 'old houses' |
| 'al-banaat al-Haaliyaat | 'the beautiful girls' |

Sometimes the word for two 'iθnayn (m.) or θintayn (f.) is used before the plural of a noun to mean 'two --'. The adjective is plural: 'iθnayn buyuut kbaar 'two big houses', θintayn banaat Haaliyaat 'two beautiful girls.'

## 4. Object Pronouns

When a pronoun suffix is added to a verb, it always functions as the object of that verb, e.g., 'aaxuδhum 'I take them'. Other examples are:

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃa-kulhum. | 'I will eat them.' |
| yʃillahum. | 'He takes them; he picks them up.' |
| niʃrabhum. | 'We drink them.' |

If the verb ends with a vowel, the vowel is lengthened before the object pronoun:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aʃtiiha. | 'I like it (f.).' |
| yiʃrabuuha. | 'They (m.) drink it (f.).' |
| 'i9jabnaahum. | '(We pleased them.) They liked us.' |

These suffixed pronouns are the same as those that are suffixed to nouns, except the one that corresponds to the first person singular. It is -ni:

bayt 'house' → bayti 'my house'
yaaxuδ 'he takes' → yaaxuδni 'He takes me.'

## 5. *Demonstratives*

The demonstratives in SA are:

| *Masc. Sing.* | *Fem. Sing.* | *Plural* |
|---|---|---|
| haaδa | haaδi | haaδawlaa' |
| haδaak | haδiik | haaδawlaak |

There are other forms that are used in free variation with the forms above but they are less commonly used, e.g.,

*haaδa* or *δayya*, *haaδi* or *tayyih*
*haaδawlaa'* or *δawlaa'i*
*haδaak* or *δaak*, *haδiik* or *δiik*

Note the following constructions:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδi l-bint Haaliya. | 'This girl is beautiful.' |
| haaδi bint Haaliya. | 'This is a beautiful girl.' |
| haaδi l-bint al-Haaliya | 'this beautiful girl ...' |

In the first sentence, the definite noun *l-bint* is part of the subject of the sentence: *haaδi l-bint* 'this girl'. In the second sentence *haaδi* 'this' is the entire subject of the sentence. Due to interference from English, English speakers have a tendency to equate *haaδi sayyaara* with 'this car', which is wrong. Remember that if the noun after the demonstrative is definite, you have a phrase and not a sentence, e.g., *haaδa l-walad* 'this boy ...'; if it is indefinite, you have a sentence, e.g., *haaδa walad*. 'This is a boy.' If we want to express the meaning of 'This is the ...', the independent personal pronoun is inserted between the demonstrative and the definite noun, e.g., haaδi hiy al-bint al-Haaliya. 'This is the beautiful girl.'

6. maHHad 'no one, nobody'

maHHad is a combination of ma 'aHad (lit., "not anyone, no one"). 'aHad 'someone, anyone' is used in a question or a negative statement: fii 'aHad ? 'Is there anyone?' la maabiʃ 'aHad. 'No, there isn't anyone.' waaHid 'someone' is used in a positive statement.

| | |
|---|---|
| fii waaHid yiʃtaGil haana. | 'There is someone (m.) who works here.' |
| waaHid bi-yudrus w-waaHid bi-yuktub. | 'Someone (m.) is studying and another (m.) is writing.' |
| waaHid minhum | 'one of them (m.)' |

If the noun that waaHid refers to is feminine, use the feminine form waaHida. maHHad is used for males or males and females.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. 'usra is used almost interchangeably with 9aa'ila, although 9aa'ila is sometimes used as a euphemism for wife.
2. ba9δ̣ al-'aHyaan or ba9δ̣ al-'awgaat are sometimes used instead of zaaratHiin.
3. Learn 'aLLa yi9iinak w-yigawwiik! 'God help you and give you strength!' as a formula at this stage.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

'ant: maHHad yʃuufak. 'You (m.s.): No one sees you (m.s.).'

Example: T: huw 'he'
S: maHHad yʃuufa. 'He: No one sees him.'

1. hiy
2. hum
3. 'anti
4. haδaak
5. haδiik
6. 'antayn
7. 'iHna
8. hin
9. 'antu
10. haaδawlaa'
11. haaδawlaak
12. huw
13. 'ant
14. 'ana
15. 'al-'awlaad
16. haδiik
17. haδaak
18. haaδawlaak

### Drill 2 Transformation: conjugation

'ana: 'asiir 'aʃ-ʃuGl aS-SubH w-'arja9 saa9at xams.
'I: I go to work in the morning and return at five.'

1. hiy
2. huw
3. 'ant
4. 'antu
5. 'anti
6. 'antayn
7. hin
8. 'iHna
9. 'ana
10. haaδi
11. haδaak
12. haδiik
13. kulluna
14. haaδawlaak
15. haδiik

### Drill 3 Repetition (singular → plural)

a. bank → bunuuk    bayt → buyuut    fils → fuluus
faSl → fuSuul    hindi → hunuud    δ̣ayf → δ̣uyuuf

b. ʃuGl → 'aʃGaal    suug → 'aswaag    si9r → 'as9aar
yawm → 'ayyaam    walad → 'awlaad    lawn → 'alwaan

'ism → 'asmaa'    galam → 'aglaam    Hiin → 'aHyaan
Haal → 'aHwaal    ʃay' → 'aʃyaa'

c. daftar → dafaatir    taksi → takaasi    fundug → fanaadig
maktab → makaatib    madrasa → madaaris

d. Taalib → Tullaab    kaatib → kuttaab

e. 'aHmar → Humr    'axδ̣ar → xuδ̣r    'azrag → zurg
'aSfar → Sufr    'abyaδ̣ → biiδ̣    'aswad → suud

f. kiilo → kiilowaat    baaS → baaSaat    mustaʃfa → mustaʃfayaat

g. bint → banaat    'uxt → 'axawaat    sana → sanawaat

h. yamani → yamaniyyiin    kuwayti → kuwaytiyyiin
'urduni → 'urduniyyiin    'amriiki → 'amriikiyyiin
'ingiliizi → 'ingiliiz

i. Sadiig → 'aSdigaa'    Tabiib → 'aTibbaa'    'ax → 'ixwa
madiina → mudun    ʃaagi → ʃugaa    maw9id → mawaa9iid
balad → bilaad    mudiir → mudaraa'    gariib → gariibiin

Drill 4    Transformation: singular → plural

1. haaδa walad.
2. haδiik bint.
3. huw fi l-madrasa.
4. 'al-baaS gariib.
5. haaδa kitaab 'aHmar.
6. huw kaatib miSri.
7. haaδa l-walad 'abyaδ̣.
8. haaδa l-kaatib miSri.
9. 'al-muhandis 'ingiliizi.
10. 'uxti Taaliba.
11. li haana sana waaHida.
12. 'aT-Taalib yiʃti kitaab w-galam.

### Drill 5 Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: T: ʃuf al-mudiir! 'See the director!'
S: ma 'agdar 'aʃuuf al-mudiir. 'I cannot see the director.'

1. ruH aT-Tabiib!
2. xuð taksi!
3. 'iftaH al-kitaab!
4. jurr fuluus min al-bank!
5. 'uktub 'ismak b-l-9arabi!
6. ruH b-s-sayyaara!
7. ta9aal b-l-baaS!
8. sir 'ila s-suug!
9. 'addii-li $100!
10. 'iʃrab biira!
11. tkallam b-l-9arabi!
12. 'udrus 9arabi kull yawm!
13. 'idfa9 fuluus 'ila l-bank!
14. 'iʃtari sayyaara!
15. 'irja9 ma9aana b-l-baaS!
16. ʃill al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara!

### Drill 6 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aʃuuf al-'awlaad. 'I want to see the children.'

1. huw
2. hiy
3. haðaak
4. 'iHna
5. hum
6. now
7. at 10:30
8. tomorrow
9. hin
10. 'ana
11. 'ant
12. 'anti
13. at home
14. 'antu
15. 'antayn

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

'al-madrasa tiftaH al-yawm. 'The school opens today.'

1. tomorrow
2. morning
3. at 8:30
4. 'al-bank
5. at night
6. today
7. negative
8. at noon
9. at 8:00
10. positive
11. the ministry
12. the market
13. at 4:00 p.m.
14. on Friday
15. every day

### Drill 8 Substitution

'as-sayyaara Gaaliya. 'The car is expensive.'

1. blue
2. cheap
3. close by
4. expensive
5. black
6. white
7. red
8. green
9. yellow
10. grey
11. gold
12. cold
13. hot
14. American
15. far away

### Drill 9 Substitution

hiy tiʃti tiʃtari rizz. 'She wants to buy (some) rice.'

1. car
2. books
3. haδaak
4. haaδawlaak
5. everything
6. something
7. milk
8. cheese
9. apricots
10. potatoes
11. bell peppers
12. hot pepper
13. fish
14. apples
15. haaδawlaa'

### Drill 10 Translation

1. Meat is expensive today, but fish is inexpensive.
2. These apples are yellow, but those are red.
3. I am not working today because today is Friday.
4. I want to go to the bank because I want to withdraw some money.
5. No one is working today because it is Friday, not Thursday.
6. One of my friends is an engineer in the Ministry of Agriculture.
7. I would like to get some Arabic bread. This bread is French.
8. He goes to work at 7:00 a.m. and returns at 3:30 p.m.
9. How is the family and children? Not bad, thank you.
10. I pick up the children from school sometimes and take them home.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'ismaa9iil : 'ant mutazawwij ya 'ax mahdi ?
mahdi : 'ii na9am. 'al-Hamdu lillaah.
'ismaa9iil : kam walad 9indak ?
mahdi : θalaaθat 'awlaad w-bintayn.
'ismaa9iil : bi-yudrusu fi l-madrasa kulluhum ?
mahdi : maaʃi. bass waladayn w-bint. b-aʃillahum aS-SubH as-saa9a θamaan w-bi-yirja9u saa9at θintayn ba9d að̣-ð̣uhr.
'ismaa9iil : tamaam.

2. sayda : ba9iida ta9izz min haana ya zaynab ?
zaynab : maaʃi. bass sa9atayn b-s-sayyaara.
sayda : 'agdar 'ruuH b-l-baaS ?
zaynab : na9am tigdari. 'al-baaSaat tsiir kull yawm.
sayda : kam ryaal b-l-baaS ?
zaynab : 9iʃriin ryaal. 9a-tsiiri Gudwa ?
sayda : la ba9d Gudwa w-ʃa-rja9 ba9d xamsat 'ayyaam nʃaaLLa.
zaynab : ma9 as-salaama ya sayda!
sayda : sallamiʃ aLLaah!

# UNIT 19

## I. TEXT

### fi maHaTTat al-batrool

Hasan : 9aadi 'aw mumtaaz ?
mHammad : mumtaaz law samaHt.
Hasan : kam galoon tiʃti ?
mHammad : malli t-taaniki!
Hasan : Haað̣ir.
mHammad : nað̣ð̣if az-zujaaj law samaHt! wasx kaθiir! w-tfaagad al-9ijiil!
Hasan : tamaam! ... 'at-taayiraat tamaam.
mHammad : tfaagad taaniki l-mee' w-s-saliiT!
Hasan : naahi .... taaniki l-mee' yiʃti mee' ʃwayya. 'as-saliiT galiil. tiʃti gumgumi saliiT.

mHammad : kam ? 'iddii-li faatuura!
Hasan : tafað̣ð̣al (handing him the bill)! θamanTa9ʃar ryaal.
mHammad : tafað̣ð̣al! 9iʃriin ryaal! 'ayn al-baagi?
Hasan : 'al-baagi ryaalayn. tafað̣ð̣al!

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Gas Station

Hasan : Regular or super?
Muhammad : Super, if you please.
Hasan : How many gallons do you want?
Muhammad : Fill the tank!
Hasan : Yes, sir.
Muhammad : Clean the glass, plese! It's very dirty. Check the tires!
Hasan : Right! The tires are good.

Muhammad : Check the radiator and the oil.
Hasan : Fine! The radiator needs a little water. The oil is low. You need a can of motor oil.

Muhammad : How much? Give me a bill!
Hasan : Here (handing him the bill)! Eighteen riyals.
Muhammad : Here! Twenty riyals. Where is the change?
Hasan : The remainder is two riyals. Here!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| maHaTTa | (-aat) station, e.g., gas station, bus station |
| batrool | gasoline; petroleum |
| 9aadi | (-yyiin) regular; ordinary |
| mumtaaz | (-iin) super; excellent, superb |
| galoon | (-aat) gallon |
| malli! | Fill! Fill up! |
| taaniki | (tawaaniki) tank, e.g., gasoline tank, water tank, etc. |
| naẓẓif! | Clean! |
| zujaaj | glass |
| wasx | (-iin) dirty, filthy |
| tfaagad! | Check! |
| 9ijiil | tires (s. 9ajala). syn. taayiraat |
| taayiraat | tires (s. taayir). syn. 9ijiil |
| taaniki l-mee' | the water tank, the water reservoir |
| saliiT | motor oil |
| gumgumi | (gamaagim) can, e.g., can of motor oil |
| faatuura | (fawaatiir) bill, invoice |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| naẓiif | (niẓaaf, -iin) clean | jamiil | (-iin) beautiful; handsome |
| Tawiil | (Tiwaal) tall; long | ẓaruuri | (-yyiin) necessary |
| gaSiir | (giSaar) short | gafaS | (gifaaS) package |
| ʃiigaara | (ʃigaayir) cigarette | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| jadiid | (jidaad) new | gafaS ʃigaayir | package of cigarettes |
| gadiim | (gidaam) old, not new | | |
| gaS9a | (giSa9) small can (e.g., of tomatoe sauce) | | |

## V. GRAMMAR

### Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs 'to fill, fill up', 'to clean' and 'to check' are the same as the masculine singular forms of the imperatives:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| maali! | 'Fill! Fill up!' | ------- | -malli- | 'to fill up' |
| nað̣ð̣if! | 'Clean!' | --------------- | -nað̣ð̣if- | 'to clean' |
| tfaagad! | 'Check!' | -------------- | -tfaagad- | 'to check' |

Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| huw yimalli t-taaniki. | 'He fills up the tank.' |
| hum 9a-yinað̣ð̣ifu z-zujaaj. | 'They will clean the glass.' |
| bi-yitfaagad al-9ijiil. | 'He is checking the tires.' |

### NOTE ON TEXT

Haað̣ir as a response to an imperative has the meaning of 'yes, certainly, surely ... etc.' and it implies respect.

| | |
|---|---|
| nað̣ð̣if az-zujaaj! | 'Clean the glass!' |
| Haað̣ir. | 'Certainly'. |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

haaδa 9aadi. 'This is regular.'

1. handsome
2. good
3. comfortable
4. busy
5. excellent
6. cheap
7. expensive
8. tall
9. short
10. new
11. old
12. clean
13. dirty
14. a lot
15. regular
16. not much
17. near
18. far away

### Drill 2 Substitution

9aadi 'aw mumtaaz? 'Regular or Super'?

1. cheap -- expensive
2. a lot -- a little
3. short -- long
4. clean -- dirty
5. sick -- fine
6. black -- white
7. hot -- cold
8. dry -- humid
9. nurse -- doctor
10. Arab -- American
11. Tali -- 9ijl
12. far -- near
13. necessary -- not necessary
14. walad -- bint

### Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

T : car

$S_1$ : haaδi sayyaara. 'This is a car.'

T : beautiful

$S_2$ : haaδi s-sayyaara jamiila. 'This car is beautiful.'

1. oil -- regular
2. motor oil -- super
3. boy -- tall
9. eggplant -- black
10. apple -- green
11. bread -- Arabic

4. pen -- yellow
5. girl -- beautiful
6. car -- red
7. apricots -- cheap
8. bill -- new

12. pen -- gold
13. squash -- fresh
14. tire -- old
15. house -- dirty
16. tank -- clean

### Drill 4 Combination

haaδi sayyaara. 'as-sayyaara jamiila → haaδi s-sayyaara jamiila.
'This is a car. The car is beautiful. → This car is beautiful.'

1. This is motor oil. This motor oil is super.
2. This is a car. The car is new and excellent.
3. These are tires. The tires are new and clean.
4. This is water. The water is cold and clean.
5. This is a tomatoe can. The tomatoe can is cheap.
6. This is a house. The house is cheap but far away.
7. This is a cigarette. The cigarette is long.
8. This is a package of cigarettes. The package of cigarettes is English.
9. This is a boy. The boy is sick and running a temperature.
10. This is a cheese can. The cheese can is Canadian.

### Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw yiʃti gafaS ʃigaayir. 'He wants a package of cigarettes.'

1. 'ana w-'ant
2. 'antu
3. gaS9at TamaaTiis
4. hiy w-huw
5. 'iHna
6. 'ant
7. gaS9at jubn

8. gumgumi
9. Haliib w-sukkar
10. 'al-'usra
11. fresh eggs
12. old car
13. 'ana
14. apples and grapes

**Drill 6** Variable Substitution

hiy tinaδ̣δ̣if al-bayt. 'She cleans the house.'

1. 'az-zujaaj
2. 'al-Huut
3. 'ana
4. 'ant
5. 'as-sayyaara
6. 'iHna
7. 'at-taaniki
8. nimalli
9. huw
10. 'antu
11. titfaagadu
12. 'ana
13. 'anaδ̣δ̣if
14. huw
15. ya'xuδ
16. 'antu
17. 'as-sayyaara
18. 'antayn

**Drill 7** Chain -- Cued

T : haaδi s-sayyaara Gaaliya ? 'Is this car expensive?'
S : laa maaʃ Gaaliya. raxiiSa kaθiir.
'No, not expensive. It is very cheap.'

1. haaδ l-batrool 9aadi ?
2. haaδi l-faatuura jadiida ?
3. haaδa l-mee' naδ̣iif ?
4. haaδi l-bint Tawiila ?
5. haaδi l-madrasa ba9iida ?
6. haaδa l-kitaab gadiim ?
7. haaδa l-bayt Gaali ?
8. haaδi ʃ-ʃiigaara δ̣aruuriyya ?
9. haaδa l-gafaS Gaali ?
10. haaδi l-jaami9a jadiida ?
11. haaδa l-walad gaSiir ?
12. haaδa l-gumgumi 'amriiki ?
13. haaδa l-laHm naahi ?
14. haaδa l-'akl galiil ?

**Drill 8** Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: malli t-tadniki! → ma 'agdar 'amalli t-taaniki.
'Fill (m.s.) the tank! → I cannot fill the tank.'

1. naδ̣δ̣if az-zujaaj!
2. tfaagad al-9ijiil!
3. ʃuf taaniki l-mee'!
4. 'iftaH al-gumgumi!
5. jurr al-fuluus!
8. 'irja9 ba9d Gudwa!
9. 'imʃi la-s-suug!
10. ʃill at-taaniki!
11. xuδ al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara!
12. ta9aal ma9aana la-l-fundug!

6. sir ma9i!
7. ruH b-l-baaS!
13. 'addii-li $1,000!
14. 'iʃtaGil fi l-layl!

Drill 9 Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: maalu t-taaniki! → ma nigdar nimalli t-taaniki.
'Fill (m.p.) the tank! → We cannot fill the tank.'

Use substitutions from Drill 8 above.

Drill 10 Question -- Answer

1. 9indak sayyaara jadiida ? truuH la-ʃ-ʃuGl b-s-sayyaara ?
2. man yidfa9 faatuurat al-mee' ?
3. 'ayn tuskun ? ba9iid min aʃ-ʃuGl ?
4. 'al-batrool Gaali fi -l-yaman ? b-kam al-galoon?
5. kayf al-'usra w-l-'awlaad ?
6. tiʃrab biira zaaratHiin ?
7. 'ayy saa9a tirja9 min aʃ-ʃuGl ? b-l-baaS 'aw ta'xuδ taksi ?
8. yumkin tilga HabHab fi s-suug δalHiin ?
9. 'ayʃ tiʃti ta'kul ? laHm, Huut, faaSuulya, dajaaj ?
10. 9a-tsiir al-Hodayda Gudwa ? b-s-sayyaara 'aw b-l-baaS ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. yaasamiin : 'anti maʃGuula kaθiir al-yawm ya 'amiina ?
'amiina : 'aʃti 'anaδ̣δ̣if al-bayt δalHiin w-ba9da ʃa-ruuH as-suug 9ala sibb 'aʃtari Tali w-biibar.
yaasamiin : 'anti taruuHi la-s-suug kull yawm ?
'amiina : maaʃi. zaaratHiin.
yaasamiin : 'aLLaah yi9iiniʃ w-yigawwiiʃ!
'amiina : xaatriʃ!
yaasamiin : ma9 as-salaama!
'amiina : 'aLLa ysallimʃ.

2. Husayn : 'ayn 9a-tsiir ya 9abdaLLa ?
9abdaLLa : maHaTTat al-batrool.
Husayn : tiʃti batrool ? 'al-batrool Gaali fi l-yaman.
9abdaLLa : kull ʃay' Gaali fi l-yaman.
Husayn : tiʃti tsiir as-suug ba9da ?
9abdaLLa : 'ii na9am. ta9aal ma9i!
Husayn : Tayyib. baarak aLLa fiik ya 9abdaLLa!

# UNIT 20

## I. TEXT

### fi warʃat as-sayyaaraat

SaaliH : SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr ya Hasan!

Hasan : SabaaH al-xayr w-l-9aafiya! ha! jibt as-sayyaara ?

SaaliH : na9am. jibtaha 9ala sibb 'aʃtiik titfaagadha. 'as-siraajaat Haggaha maaʃ naahiyiin.

Hasan : yumkin al-baTaarya maaʃ gawiyya.

SaaliH : waLLaah as-siraajaat ma gadhumʃ naahiyiin. ma 'adriiʃ al-miʃkila.

Hasan : Tayyib xalliiha. ʃa-tfaagadha Gudwa nʃaaLLa. haaδa l-'usbuu9 maʃGuuliin kaθiir.

SaaliH : tamaam! baddil as-saliiT law samaHt! 'ayy Hiin 'ajiilha ?

Hasan : 9afwan! 'ana nsiit. Gudwa al-jum9a 9uTla. laa tiji Gudwa! mGalligiin. ta9aal ba9d Gudwa 'as-sabt.

SaaliH : tamaam! 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

Hasan : wa 9alaykum as-salaam. ma9 as-salaama!

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Garage

Salih : Good morning, Hasan!

Hasan : Good morning. Ha! Have you brought the car?

Salih : Yes. I brought it because I want you to check it. Its lights are not good.

Hasan : It might be that the battery is not strong.

Salih : Its lights are not good. I do not know the problem.

Hasan : O.K. Leave it! I will check it tomorrow. This week we are very busy.

Salih : Right! Change the oil, please! When shall I come back for it ?

Hasan : Don't come tomorrow! Sorry! I forgot. Tomorrow, Friday, is a holiday. We are closed. Come after tomorrow, Saturday.

Salih : O.K. Goodbye!

Hasan : Goodbye.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| warʃa | (-aat) workshop |
| jibt ? | Did you (m.s.) bring ? |
| jibtaha | I brought it. |
| siraaj | (-aat) light of a car; lamp, lantern |
| Hagg | belonging to |
| baTaarya | (-aat) battery |
| gawi | (-yyiin) strong |
| ma gadhumʃ | they are not |
| -dri- | to know |
| miʃkila | (maʃaakil) problem |
| -xalli- | to leave s.th; to leave alone |
| 'usbuu9 | ('asaabii9) week |
| maʃGuuliin | busy (s. maʃGuul) |
| -baddil- | to change |
| 9afwan! | Sorry! |
| nsiit | I forgot |
| 9uTla | (9uTal) holiday |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fagiir | (-iin, fugara) poor | majnuun | (majaaniin) crazy, insane |
| Gani | (-yyiin, 'aGniya) rich | Sa9b | (-iin) difficult |
| samiin | (simaan) fat | sahl | (-iin) easy |
| naHiif | (niHaaf) skinny, thin | ʃahr | ('aʃhir) month |
| δ̣a9iif | (-iin, δ̣u9afa) weak | mikaaniiki | (-yyiin) mechanic; mechanical |
| 9aagil | (-iin) rational, wise | | |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stem of the verb 'to leave s.th., to leave alone' is the same as the imperative form xalli!, i.e., -xalli-. ʃa-xalliiha haana. 'I will leave it here.'

-xalli- may take an imperfect tense or an imperative after it, and the meaning is 'to let s.o. do s.th., make s.o. do s.th.:

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃa-xallii yitfaagadha. | 'I will let him check it.'<br>'I will make him check it.' |
| yiʃti yxalliina niʃtaGil. | 'He wants to let us work.'<br>'He wants to make us work.' |
| xalliihum yiʃtaGilu! | 'Let them work!'<br>'Make them work.' |
| xalliini 'aʃtaGil! | 'Let me work!' |

### 2. Verbs -- Perfect Tense

Two perfect tense verbs are introduced in this lesson: jibt 'you (m.s.) brought' and nsiit 'I forgot.' Perfect tense verbs will be discussed at a later stage. For now, learn the following forms:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ana jibt. | 'I brought.' | 'ant jibt. | 'You (m.s.) brought.' |
| 'anti jibti | 'You (f.s.) brought.' | 'antu jibtu. | 'You (m.p.) brought.' |
| 'ana nsiit. | 'I forgot!' | 'ant nsiit. | 'You (m.s.) forgot.' |
| 'anti nsiiti. | 'You (f.s.) forgot.' | 'antu nsiitu. | 'You (m.p.) forgot.' |

A perfect tense verb, like a present tense verb, may take a suffixed object pronoun (See UNIT 18):

| | |
|---|---|
| jibtaha. | 'I brought it; you (m.s.) brought it.' |
| nsiituuhum. | 'You (m.p.) forgot them.' |

### 3. The Particle *Hagg*

There are two ways of expressing possession in SA:

(a) Noun Construct: N + N or N + Pronoun:

| | |
|---|---|
| warʃat Hasan | 'Hasan's workshop' |
| warʃata | 'his workshop' |

(b) N + Hagg + N or N + Hagg + Pronoun:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-warʃa Hagg Hasan | 'Hasan's workshop' |
| 'al-warʃa Hagga | 'his workshop' |

*Hagg*, like any other particle or noun, takes suffixed pronouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'as-sayyaara Haggi | 'my car' |
| 'as-sayyaara Haggahum | 'their (m.) car' |

It is not inflected for gender or number. There is no difference in meaning between *warʃat Hasan* 'Hasan's workshop' or *'al-warʃa Hagg Hasan*.

### 4. Negative Commands

A negative command (or request) is used to tell someone not to do something. In SA, a negative command consists of the negative particle *laa* followed by the imperfect tense of the verb: *laa tiji!* 'Do not (come)!', *laa taʃrab biira!* 'Do not drink (m.s.) beer!'

| Command | | Negative Command | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tfaagad! | 'Check (m.s.)!' | laa titfaagad! | 'Do not check!' |
| tfaagadi! | 'Check (f.s.)!' | laa titfaagadi! | 'Do not check!' |
| tfaagadu! | 'Check (m.p.)!' | la titfaagadu! | 'Do not check!' |
| tfaagadayn! | 'Check (f.p.)!' | laa titfaagadayn! | 'Do not check!' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: ha! jibt as-sayyaara ?
'Ha! did you (m.s.) bring the car?'

1. baTaarya
2. taaniki
3. 'antu
4. mikaaniiki
5. sawwaag
6. laHm
7. Huut
8. siraaj
9. 'anti
10. TamaaTiis
11. sayyaara
12. 'ant
13. Tabiib
14. 'antu
15. gaat

### Drill 2 Substitution -- Completion

ma 'adriiʃ 'ayn as-sayyaara. 'I do not know where the car is.'

1. where the garage is
2. where the battery is
3. where the gas station is
4. where the boys are
5. how he works at night
6. how to change the tire
7. how he works all day long
8. what her name is
9. what the problem is
10. what to buy at the market
11. what he wants to do
12. where he comes from
13. how much he wants to pay
14. how much he makes (takes) per month

### Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'adri kayf 'aji. 'I know how to come.'

1. huw
2. 'iHna
3. work
4. hum
5. come
6. hiy
7. cook
8. 'ant
9. 'anti
10. go
11. 'antu
12. buy qat
13. return
14. hin
15. 'antayn

### Drill 4 Substitution

haaδa Haggi. 'This is mine.'

T : hiy 'she'
S : haaδa Haggaha. 'This is hers.'

1. 'ant
2. 'anti
3. 'antu
4. 'antayn
5. hum
6. 'ana
7. 'iHna
8. huw
9. hiy
10. hin
11. 'iHna
12. hum
13. hiy
14. 'antu
15. 'antayn

### Drill 5 Double Substitution

'as-sayyaara Hagg aʃ-ʃarika. 'The car belongs to the company.'
'the company car'

1. garage -- Ali
2. battery -- car
3. light -- house
4. books -- school
5. pens -- clerk
6. tire -- car
7. cigarettes -- Yahya
8. taxi -- hotel
9. money -- bank
10. pencils -- students
11. watch -- teacher
12. food -- workmen
13. bus -- company
14. bank -- government
15. milk -- children

## Drill 6 Transformation: indicative → imperative

Example: 'aʃti 'aʃuufha. → xalliini 'aʃuufha!
'I would like to see it (f.) → Let me see it!'

1. 'aʃti 'aaxuδha.
2. yiʃti yiʃraba.
3. yiʃtu yiju.
4. tiʃti tiʃtariihum.
5. yiʃti ybaddilha.
6. 'aʃti 'amallii.
7. niʃti niʃtari sayyaara.
8. tiʃti ta'kul haana.
9. 'aʃti 'ajurr fuluus.
10. yiʃtayn ysiirayn ma9aana.
11. niʃti niʃrab biira.
12. yiʃti yitfaagadha.

## Drill 7 Substitution

xalliini 'aʃufha! 'Let me see it (f.s.)!'

T : hiy 'she'
S : xalliiha tʃuufha! 'Let her see it (f.s.)!'

1. hum
2. hin
3. 'iHna
4. 'ana
5. hiy
6. maryam
7. zayd
8. 'al-mikaaniiki
9. 'as-sawwaag
10. hum
11. huw
12. hiy
13. hin
14. 'aamina
15. 'al-muhandis

## Drill 8 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: baddil as-saliiT law samaHt!
'Change the oil, please!'

1. 'al-baTarrya
2. δalHiin
3. tfaagad
4. 'antu
5. Gudwa
6. 'al-9ijiil
7. baddilu
8. 'ant
9. naδ̣δ̣if
10. 'al-yawm
11. taaniki l-mee'
12. malli
13. 'antu
14. 'anti
15. malli

### Drill 9 Chain -- Cued

T : Change (m.s.) the oil, please!
$S_1$ : baddil as-saliiT law samaHt!
$S_2$ : Haaδ̣ir.

1. Go to the gas station, please!
2. Fill the radiator, please!
3. Clean (f.s.) the house, please!
4. Check the tires, please!
5. Change the tire, please!
6. Open the tomatoe can, please!
7. Come (f.p.) with me now, please!
8. Pay (f.s.) $1,000, please!
9. Buy (m.p.) some tomatoes, please!
10. Go withdraw some money, please!
11. Take the children to school, please!
12. Check the lights, please!
13. Speak (m.P.) in Arabic now, please!
14. Walk with me to the garage, please!
15. Drink this milk, please!

### Drill 10 Combination

haaδa ʃaagi. 'aʃ-ʃaagi fagiir. → haaδa ʃ-ʃaagi fagiir.
'This is a workman. The workman is poor. → This workman is poor.'

1. haaδa muhandis. 'al-muhandis samiin.
2. haaδa mudiir. 'al-mudiir 9aagil.
3. haaδi bint. 'al-bint δ̣a9iifa.
4. haaδi miʃkila. 'al-miʃkila Sa9ba.
5. haaδa Tabiib. 'aT-Tabiib mumtaaz.
6. haaδawlaa' banaat. 'al-banaat naHiifaat.
7. haaδawlaak mu9allimiin. 'al-mu9allimiin miSriyyiin.
8. haaδa sawwaag. 'as-sawwaag majnuun.

9. haaδawlaa' ʃugaa. 'aʃ-ʃugaa fagiiriin.
10. haaδi jaami9a. 'al-jaami9a sahla.
11. haaδa ʃahr. 'aʃ-ʃahr Tawiil.
12. haaδa bayyaa9. 'al-bayyaa9 gaSiir w-samiin.

Drill 11 Transformation: imperative → negative command

Example: 'iʃrab biira! → laa tiʃrab biira!
'Drink (m.s.) beer! → Don't drink beer!'

1. tkallam b-l-9arabi!
2. 'iʃtari bagari!
3. siiri la-l-madrasa!
4. tfaagad as-saliiT!
5. naaδ̣δ̣ifi l-bayt!
6. xuδu taksi!
7. ruuHayn la-l-fundug!
8. ta9aalu l-yawm!
9. 'uTbuxi faaSuulya!
10. ruH 'ila l-warʃa!
11. tfaagadu l-9ijiil!
12. 'uktub b-l-'ingiliizi!
13. 'idfa9u l-fuluus!
14. jurr $750 min al-bank!

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. maHmuud : 'ayn 9a-tsiir ya 9ali ?
9ali : ʃa-siir as-suug nʃaaLLa. 'aʃti 'aʃtari Tali.
maHmuud : bass al-yawm al-jum9a 9uTla. 'as-suug mGallig.
9ali : tamaam! 'ana nsiit al-yawm al-jum9a.
maHmuud : tigdar truuH Gudwa s-sabt.
9ali : 'ayy saa9a yiftaH as-suug aS-SubH ?
maHmuud : saa9at tisi9 w-yumkin saa9at θamaan.

2. yaHya : SabbaHak aLLaah b-l-xayr ya 'ax yuusif!
yuusif : SabaaH al-xayr w-l-9aafiya.
yaHya : 'ayn as-sayyaara ?
yuusif : 'as-sayaara ma tiʃtaGil. ʃa-ruuH al-warʃa 9ala sibb yiju w-yjurruuha.
yaHya : 'ayʃ al-miʃkila ?

yuusif : taaniki l-mee' gadiim w-maaʃ naahi w-l-baTaarya gadiima. 'aʃti 'abaddilha.
yaHya : Tayyib xuδ as-sayyaara Haggi 'aw ta9aal ma9i w-nsiir al-warʃa.
yuusif : baarak aLLaah fiik!

## VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION (on tape)

Listen to the passage on tape, and then answer the following questions:

1. 'ayn yi9mal 9abd al-gaadir ?
2. huw mudiir 'aw muhandis ?
3. kam ya'xuδ fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
4. kam la fi l-yaman ? 'i9jabatu San9a ?
5. kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi S-Sayf ?
6. 9abd al-gaadir mutazawwij ?
7. 9inda 'awlaad ? kam walad w-kam bint ?
8. 'ayy saa9a yruuH la-ʃ-ʃuGl ?
9. 'ayy saa9a yirja9 la-l-bayt ?
10. 'ant mutazawwij ? 9indak 'usra kabiira ?

# UNIT 21

## REVIEW

Drill 1 Transformation: positive → negative

1. 'ana min ingiltara.
2. haaδa walad 9aagil.
3. haaδi bint Haaliya.
4. haaδawlaa' al-'awlaad naHiifiin.
5. haaδawlaak al-mu9allimiin yamaniyyiin.
6. huw yudrus 9arabi kull yawm.
7. 'ant tigdar tiʃtari sayyaara ?
8. ʃill al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara!
9. ruH b-s-sayyaara w-ta9aal b-l-baaS!
10. ta9aal as-saa9a 9aʃir aS-SubH!
11. ʃill al-kutub w-sir la-l-madrasa!
12. jurr fuluusak min al-bank!
13. 9indi maw9id al-yawm.
14. 'al-jaww Haami w-miGbir.
15. hin yudrusayn faransi.
16. 'al-yawm al-xamiis.
17. baddil as-saliiT!
18. kul Huut w-rizz kull yawm!

Drill 2 Transformation: statement → question

Ask questions to which the underlined words are the short answers:

1. 'aʃti 'aʃtari TamaaTiiʃ.
2. Tayyib ʃukran.
3. maaʃi. 'atkallam 9arabi ʃwayya.
4. 'al-jaww baarid w-naaʃif al-yawm.
5. yiʃtu yudrusu 9arabi.

6. 'adfa9 9iʃriin ryaal bass.
7. 'as-saa9a θintayn 'illa θiliθ .
8. 'ii na9am. 'al-yawm as-sabt.
9. laa ba's. baarak aLLa fiiʃ.
10. na9am. 'i9jabatni al-yaman kaθiir.
11. maaʃi. 'al-xamiis ba9d ar-rabuu9.
12. marii§ w-9indi Haraara.
13. hin min 9ammaan fi l-'urdun.
14. aT-Tabiib yiji saa9at tisi9.
15. hum yaʃtaGilu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
16. 'ii. 'al-burtagaal raxiiS kaθiir al-yawm.
17. li haana xamsat siniin.
18. ya'xuδ θalaaθa 'alf ryaal fi ʃ-ʃahr.

### Drill 3 Transformation: singular → plural

1. haaδa ʃaagi fagiir.
2. haaδa l-fundug na§iif.
3. haaδi l-bint Haaliya.
4. haaδi l-madrasa jadiida.
5. yiʃti yiʃtari galam w-daftar.
6. 'idfa9 al-faatuura!
7. tigdar tiji Gudwa ?
8. mudiir aʃ-ʃarika maʃGuul.
9. haaδa T-Taalib mumtaaz.
10. taaniki l-mee' wasx.
11. aT-Taalib fi l-madrasa.
12. 'al-mu9allim maʃGuul δalHiin.
13. 'ant mutazawwij ?
14. kayf Haalak ? nʃaaLLa murtaaH.
15. 'al-mustaʃfa gadiim bass na§iif.
16. 'agdar 'alga Huut w-bagari.

### Drill 4 Variable Substitution

9indi maw9id al-yawm. 'I have an appointment today.'

1. at 1:00 p.m.
2. in the morning
3. you (m.s.)
4. you (f.s.)
5. you (m.p.)
6. you (f.p.)
11. at 1:55 p.m.
12. today
13. hum
14. question
15. 'antayn
16. on Monday

7. tomorrow morning
8. negative
9. hiy
10. at 9:45
17. on Wednesday
18. at 12:30
19. on Saturday
20. on Thursday

Drill 5 Completion

'ana aʃti ... 'I would like to ...'

1. go to the market
2. work at the garage
3. buy a gas station
4. get a package of cigarettes
5. know the problem
6. take a holiday
7. buy a cheese can
8. check the lights
9. see the bank manager
10. withdraw YR. 100
11. eat Arabic food
12. go pay (some) money
13. give you my books
14. go by car
15. come to Yemen
16. speak Arabic very well

Drill 6 Combination

haaδa walad. 'al-walad samiin. → haaδa l-walad samiin.
'This is a boy. The boy is fat. → This boy is fat.'

1. This is gasoline. The gasoline is regulr, not super.
2. This is a book. The book is new, not old.
3. These are tomatoes. The tomatoes are very expensive.
4. These are boys. The boys are fat, not thin.
5. These are girls. The girls are skinny, not thin.
6. This is a package of cigarettes. It is American.
7. This is a workshop. The workshop is far, not close.
8. This is a patient. The patient is feverish.
9. This is cheese. The cheese is white, not green.
10. This is a problem. The problem is difficult, not easy.
11. These are teachers. The teachers are poor, not rich.
12. This is a battery. The battery is weak, not strong.

13. These are girls. The girls are sane, not crazy.
14. This is a secretary (f.). The secretary is beautiful, but fat.
15. This is a holiday. The holiday is short, not long.
16. This is money. The money is little, not much.
17. This is qat. The qat is expensive, not cheap.
18. This is a nurse. The nurse is English, not American.

Drill 7 Chain

a. $S_1$ : haaδi 'awwal marra tiji l-yaman ?
'Is this the first time you come to Yemen?'
$S_2$ : maaʃi. haaδi θaani marra.
'No, this is the second time.'

Carry on through the tenth time.

Drill 8 Chain

b. $S_1$ : 'as-saa9a waaHida. 'It's one o'clock.'
$S_2$ : 'as-saa9a waaHida w-waaHida. 'It's 1:01.'
$S_3$ : 'as-saa9a waaHida w-θalaaθ. 'It's 1:03.'

Carry on through 2:00 o'clock.

Drill 9 Identification

Individual students are asked to read the following numerals.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 20 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 13 | 17 |
| 100 | 130 | 170 | 190 | 200 | 210 |
| 201 | 317 | 325 | 940 | 1,000 | 1,005 |
| 1,492 | 1,914 | 4,789 | 1,948 | 1,973 | 2,730 |
| 21 | 215 | 3,986 | 7,002 | 1,001 | 10,379 |

Drill 10 Question--Answer

1. kam lak haana ? nʃaaLLa 'i9jabatak al-yaman ?
2. 'ant mutazawwij ? kam walad 9inak ?
3. 'al-'awlaad kulluhum fi l-madrasa ?
4. 'ayn ti9mal ? 'ant murtaaH fi ʃ-ʃuGl ?
5. kam ryaal ta'xuδ fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
6. tiʃtaGil yawm al-xamiis w-l-jum9a ?
7. 'ayʃ ti9mal yawm al-jum9a ?
8. kam yawm 9uTla ta'xuδ fi s-sana ?
9. kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi faSl aS-Sayf ? fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
10. min 'ayy wilaaya 'ant ? min 'ayy madiina ?
11. kayf al-jaww hownaak fi r-rabii9 ? w-fi l-xariif ?
12. kayf al-'as9aar fi l-yaman ? kull ʃay' Gaali ?

# UNIT 22

## I. TEXT

### fi l-maTaar (i)

'al-kaatib : 'at-taδkara w-l-jawaaz law samaHt!
'al-musaafir : tafaδ̣δ̣al!
'al-kaatib : 9indak ta'ʃiira Hagg landan ?
'al-musaafir : maabiʃ. ʃa-xuδha fi maTaar landan. 'ana 'amriiki. ma 'aʃtiiʃ ta'ʃiira.
'al-kaatib : 'ii na9am. kam ʃamTa ma9aak ?
'al-musaafir : ʃamTatayn.
'al-kaatib : ('ila l-Hammaal) ʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT w-HuTTahum 9ala l-miizaan! ('ila l-musaafir) ma9aak ʃimiiT θaaiyiin ?
'al-musaafir : maaʃi. bass haaδi ʃamTat yadd.
'al-kaatib : 9indak ziyaada xamsa kiilo. 'iddii-li miya w-xamsa ryaal Hagg az-ziyaada, w-xamsiin ryaal δ̣ariibat al-maTaar. kull musaafir laazim yidfa9 xamsiin ryaal.
'al-musaafir : tafaδ̣δ̣al! miya w-xamsa w-xamsiin ryaal.
'al-kaatib : malli haaδi l-biTaaga w-ba9da laazim 9alayk truuH al-jawaazaat fiisa9.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Airport (i)

Clerk : The ticket and the passport please!
Traveller : Here!
Clerk : Do you have a visa for London?
Traveller : No. I will take it at London Airport. I am an American. I do not need a visa.
Clerk : Right! How many bags to you have?
Traveller : Two.

Clerk : (to the porter) Lift the bags and put them on the scales! (to the traveller) Do you have other bags?

Traveller : No, but this is a handbag.

Clerk : You have five kilograms of excess baggage. Give me YR. 105.00 for excess baggage and fifty riyals for the airport tax. Every passenger must pay fifty riyals.

Traveller : Here you are! One hundred and fifty-five riyals.

Clerk : Fill this card and then you should go to the passports section right away.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| maTaar | (-aat) airport |
| kaatib | (kuttaab) clerk; writer |
| musaafir | (-iin) traveller, passenger |
| taδkara | (taδaakir) ticket |
| jawaaz | (-aat) passport |
| ta'ʃiira | (-aat) visa |
| ʃamTa | (ʃimiiT) bag, suitcase |
| Hammaal | (-iin) porter, carrier |
| -ʃiil- | to lift; to carry |
| -HuTT- | to put, place |
| miizaan | (mawaaziin) balance, scales |
| θaani | (-yiin) other; another |
| yadd | ('aydi) hand |
| ziyaada | (-aat) excess; surplus; increase, increment |
| δ̣ariiba | (δ̣araayib) tax, duty |
| laazim 9ala- | (with foll. imperf.) must; have to; ought to |
| biTaaga | (-aat) card; ticket |
| 'al-jawaazaat | the passports department |
| fiisa9 | adv. fast, quickly, right away |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| bayruut | Beirut |
| ʃurTi | (ʃurTa) policeman |
| gaskari | (9askar) soldier |
| jayʃ | army; (the) military |
| jumruk | (jamaarik) customs, duty |
| dala dala | adv. slowly (syn. ʃwayya ʃwayya) |
| SaGiir | young; small, little |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs 'to lift; to carry' -ʃiil- and 'to put' -HuTT- are the same as the third person masculine imperative forms: ʃiil! 'Carry; lift (m.s.)!' and HuTT 'Put (m.s.)!'. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| hum yʃiilu ʃ-ʃimiiT. | 'They (m.) carry the suitcases.' |
| hiy tʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT. | 'She carries the suitcases.' |
| hum yHuTTu ʃ-ʃimiiT. | 'They (m.) put the suitcases.' |
| hiy tHuTT aʃ-ʃimiiT. | 'She puts the suitcases.' |

### 2. *laazim 9ala-*

laazim 9ala- 'must; have to; ought to; (it is) necessary that' is in this lesson followed by the imperfect form of the verb. It is invariable, i.e., it has only one form, but the verb form following it varies according to the subject:

| | |
|---|---|
| laazim 9alayy 'asiir δalHiin. | 'I have to (must) go now.' |
| laazim 9alayha tuTbux. | 'She ought to cook.' |
| laazim 9alayna niji l-yawm. | 'We should come today.' |

The negative of such constructions is made by using the negative particle ma before laazim 9ala-:

ma laazim 9alayy 'asiir ðalHiin. 'I do not have to go now.'
'I must not go now.'

If the meaning is only 'must not, ought not to,...' ma precedes the imperfect tense or it is used after laazim 9ala-:

laazim 9alayy ma 'ajiiʃ al-yawm. 'I must not, should not, come today.'

3. *θaani* 'another; other'

In UNIT 14, GRAMMAR 2., we had θaani as an ordinal (derived from 'iθnayn 'two') meaning "the second": θaani yawm 'the second day', θaani bint 'the second girl', etc. In this lesson it is used as an adjective following the noun, in which case it agrees with the noun it follows in gender, number, and definiteness. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| maTaar θaani | 'another airport' |
| maTaaraat θaaniyiin | 'other airports' |
| ʃamTa θaaniya | 'another suitcase' |
| ʃimiiT θaaniyiin | 'other suitcases' |
| 'al-maTaar aθ-θaani | 'the other airport' |
| 'al-maTaaraat aθ-θaaniyiin | 'the other airports' |
| 'aʃ-ʃimiiT aθ-θaaniyiin | 'the other suitcases' |

4. *kull* 'each, every'

kull followed by an indefinite singular noun means 'each, every' :

| | |
|---|---|
| kull musaafir | 'each passenger' |
| kull yawm | 'every day' |

If kull is followed by a suffixed pronoun as in UNIT 3 or followed by a definite noun, it expresses the meaning of 'all of the, the whole of the:

| | |
|---|---|
| kull al-musaafiriin | 'all of the passengers' |
| kull aʃ-ʃimiiT | 'all the suitcases' |
| kull al-yawm | 'the whole day, all day long' |
| kull al-madiina | 'the whole city' |

## 5. Elative Adjectives

Elative adjectives correspond in meaning to comparative and superlatives adjectives in English, e.g., the comparative adjective 'aTwal (from Tawiil 'long; tall') can be used to mean 'longer; taller' or 'longest; tallest', depending upon the construction in which it is used. In this lesson, we will deal with the comparative meaning, i.e., those constructions in which the elative adjective is used when comparing two people or two things.

The elative adjective is formed on the pattern $'aC_1C_2aC_3$ from the corresponding simple form of the adjective. Examples:

| Simple | | Elative |
|---|---|---|
| jadiid 'new' | → | 'ajdad 'newer' |
| Tawiil 'long; tall' | → | 'aTwal 'longer, taller' |
| Sa9b 'difficult' | → | 'aS9ab 'more difficult' |

Other adjectives that are governed by this rule are: raxiiS 'cheap, inexpensive', naδiif 'clean', baarid 'cold', mariiδ 'ill', samiin 'fat', δa9iif 'weak', sahl 'easy', wasx 'dirty, filthy', etc.

Note the following variations:

(a) Most adjectives ending with -i form their elative forms on the pattern $'aC_1C_2a$:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Haali | 'beautiful, nice' | → | 'aHla | 'more beautiful' |
| Gaali | 'expensive | → | 'aGla | 'more expensive' |
| gawi | 'strong' | → | 'agwa | 'stronger' |
| Gani | 'rich' | → | 'aGna | 'richer' |
| Haami | 'hot' | → | 'aHma | 'hotter, warmer' |

(b) Adjectives in which the second and the third consonants are identical form their elatives on the pattern $'aC_1aC_2C_3$ (except for jadiid 'new'): galiil → 'agall 'less', majnuun → 'ajann, etc.

(c) Other adjectives (including color adjectives) form their elatives by postposing the elative 'akθar 'more' to the adjective:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| δ̣aruuri | 'necessary' | → | δ̣aruuri 'akθar | 'more necessary' |
| bunni | 'brown' | → | bunni 'akθar | 'browner' |
| 'aHmar | 'red' | → | 'aHmar 'akθar | 'redder' |

Elatives in SA, unlike adjectives, are not inflected for gender or number:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-walad 'aTwal. | 'The boy is taller.' |
| 'al-bint 'aTwal. | 'The girl is taller.' |
| 'al-'awlaad 'aTwal. | 'The boys are taller.' |
| 'al-banaat 'aTwal. | 'The girls are taller.' |
| haaδa bunni 'akθar. | 'This (m.) is browner.' |
| haaδi bunniyya 'akθar. | 'This (f.) is browner.' |

Like adjectives, elatives can function as predicates of equational sentences or modifiers of indefinite nouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa 'aHla. | 'This (m.) is better, more beautiful.' |
| haaδi sayyaara 'aGla. | 'This is a more expensive car.' |

The preposition min is used after the elative to express the meaning of 'than' in English:

| | |
|---|---|
| haaδa 'awsax min δaak. | 'This is dirtier than that (one).' |
| bayta 'akbar min bayti. | 'His house is bigger than my house.' |

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: singular → plural

1. haaδa maTaar jadiid.
2. haaδi taδkara Gaaliya.

8. haaδa musaafir 'amriiki.
9. haaδi biTaaga Hamraa'.

3. haaδa jawaaz gadiim.
4. haaδi ta'ʃiira δ̣aruuriyya.
5. haaδi ʃ-ʃamTa sawdaa'.
6. haaδa miizaan mumtaaz.
7. haaδi δ̣ariibat al-maTaar.
10. haaδa l-walad Tawiil.
11. haaδa l-bayt naδ̣iif.
12. haaδa Hammaal samiin.
13. haaδa s-siraaj naahi
14. naaδi l-bint naHiifa.

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana ʃa-HuTT fuluus fi l-bank. 'I will put money in the bank.'

1. hiy
2. 9ali
3. 'iHna
4. 'anti
5. 'antayn
6. hum
7. 'ana
8. ʃa-jurr
9. maryam
10. 9aa'iʃa
11. 9abdaLLa
12. Gudwa
13. ba9d Gudwa
14. ya'xuδ
15. 'iHna

### Drill 3 Repetition

1. huw yʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.
2. hum yʃiilu ʃ-ʃimiiT.
3. hiy tʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.
4. 'ant tʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.
5. 'antu tʃiilu ʃ-ʃimiiT.
6. 'anti tʃiili ʃ-ʃimiiT.
7. 'antayn tʃiilayn aʃ-ʃimiiT.
8. hiy tʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.
9. 'ana 'aʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.
10. 'iHna nʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT.

### Drill 4 Repetition

1. ʃiil aʃ-ʃimiiT!
2. HuTT aʃ-ʃmiiT haana!
3. xalli s-sayyaara ma9aak!
4. baddil as-saliiT!
5. ʃuf al-mudiir!
6. malli t-taaniki!
7. naaδ̣δ̣if az-zujaaj!
8. tfaagad al-9ijiil!
9. 'iftaH al-gaS9a!
10. jurr fuluus!
11. sir ma9aana!
12. 'addii-li l-fuluus!
13. ruH la-T-Tabiib!
14. 'iʃrab ʃaahi!

### Drill 5 Transformation: imperative → negative command

ʃiil aʃ-ʃamTa! → laa tʃiil aʃ-ʃamTa!
'Carry (m.s.) the bag! → Don't carry the bag!'

Use the commands in Drill 4, above.

### Drill 6 Completion

laazim 9alay ... 'I have to, must, should, ...'

1. study Arabic every day
2. put money in the bank
3. lift the tomatoes
4. pay the airport tax
5. change the tires
6. leave it here
7. fill the card
8. clean the car
9. check the radiator
10. open the tomatoe can
11. give them $20
12. see the minister
13. check the lights
14. take a taxi to the hotel
15. buy a new battery
16. take those

### Drill 7 Transformation

imperative → ma laazim 9ala- + imperfect

'udrus 9arabi! → ma laazim 9alayy 'adrus 9arabi.
'Study (m.s.) Arabic! → I don't have to study Arabic.'
'I mustn't study Arabic.'

Use the commands in Drill 4, above.

### Drill 8 Repetition

1. laazim 9alayy 'aruuH 9al sibb as-saa9a tisi9.
2. laazim 9alayy 'ajurr fuluus 9al sibb ma 9indiiʃ fluus.
3. laazim 9alayy 'aʃtari tuffaaH 9al sibb 'at-tuffaaH raxiiS.

4. laazim 9alayy 'asiir aT-Tabiib 9al sibb 'ana mariiδ̣.
5. laazim 9alayy 'aaxuδ taksi 9al sibb ma 'agdarʃ 'amʃi.
6. laazim 9alayy 'addii-lhum fuluus 9al sibb hum fagiiriin.

Drill 9 Substitution

a. Substitute huw 'he' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

b. Substitute hiy 'she' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

c. Substitute 'ant 'you (m.s.)' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

d. Substitute 'anti 'you (f.s.)' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

e. Substitute 'iHna 'we' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

Drill 10 Transformation: positive → elative

Example: T : haaδa kitaab jadiid. 'This is a new book.'
S : haδaak kitaab 'ajdad. 'That is a newer book.'

1. haaδa bayt kabiir.
2. 9indi fuluus kaθiira.
3. haaδi taδkara Gaaliya.
4. haaδa maTaar SaGiir.
5. haaδi bint naHiifa.
6. haaδa jawaaz jadiid.
7. haaδa 9askari Tawiil.
8. haaδi ʃamTa sawdaa'.
9. haaδa jaww Haami.
10. haaδa T-Tabiib Gani.
11. haaδi l-gahwa baarida.
12. haaδi l-madiina Haaliya.
13. haaδa l-laHm Gaali.
14. haaδa ʃ-ʃuGl δ̣aruuri.

Drill 11 Comparison -- Cued

Example: T : maktab -- bayt -- naδ̣iif
'office -- house -- clean'
S : 'al-maktab 'anδ̣af min al-bayt.
'The office is cleaner than the house.'

1. bint -- walad -- Tawiil
2. tuffaaH -- barguug -- Gaali
3. HabHab -- baTTiix -- kabiir
4. baaδinjaan -- HabHab -- SaGiir
5. bayruut -- 'al-gaahira -- jamiil
6. sayyaarati -- sayyaaratak -- jadiid
7. 'ibb -- San9a -- SaGiir
8. gahwa -- ʃaahi -- δ̣aruuri
9. Tali -- Huut -- Gaali
10. kaatib -- mudiir -- majnuun
11. bint -- walad -- naHiif
12. Hammaal -- ʃaagi -- samiin

Drill 12 Translation

1. Go quickly! You will find him at the airport.
2. Do you have another suitcase? Put it on the scales right away!
3. He is an old man. He walks slowly.
4. I do not have other tickets. This is the other ticket.
5. You will find many soldiers in the marketplace now.
6. There are policemen at the airport, not soldiers.
7. Take your passport and this red card and go to customs right away!
8. Did you bring the tickets with you? Sorry. I forgot.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. SaaliH : b-kam at-taδkara la-'amriika?
'al-kaatib : b-xamsa 'alf ryaal yamani.
SaaliH : w-aS-SiGaar?
'al-kaatib : taδkarat aS-SaGiir nuSS as-si9r. b-'alfayn w-xamsmiya ryaal.
SaaliH : Gaali kaθiir. 'arxaS maabiʃ?
'al-kaatib : 'arxaS min haaδa maabiʃ. fi S-Sayf 'aGla.

2. zaynab : min 'ayy balad fi 'amriika 'anti ya nuura ?
nuura : min madiinat Tucson fi wilaayat Arizona.
zaynab : Tucson 'akbar min San9a ?
nuura : maaʃ 'akbar.
zaynab : w-l-jaww hownaak 'aHla ?
nuura : fi ʃ-ʃitaa' haana 'abrad. fi S-Sayf fi Tucson 'al-jaww 'aHma w-'anʃaf. fi S-Sayf haana ryaaH w-miGbir 'akθar bass 'abrad.
zaynab : w-l-maTar ?
nuura : 'al-maTar haana 'akθar w-'agwa.
zaynab : 9afwan ya nuura! laazim 9alayy 'asiir fiisa9.
nuura : tafað̣ð̣ali! ma9 as-salaama!
zaynab : sallamiʃ aLLa.

# UNIT 23

## I. TEXT

### fi l-maTaar (ii)

'aʃ-ʃurTi : haat al-jawaaz w-biTaagat al-xuruuj!
'al-musaafir : Haaδ̣ir! tafaδ̣δ̣al!
'aʃ-ʃurTi : 'ila 'ayn musaafir ?
'al-musaafir : la-landan nʃaaLLa.
'aʃ-ʃurTi : 'ii tamaam! 9ala l-yamaniyya 9an Tariig al-gaahira.
tafaδ̣δ̣al!
('al-musaafir yibsir mahdi)
mahdi : 'al-gahira nʃaaLLa ?
'aʃ-ʃurTi : laa. 9ala nafs aT-Tayyaara bass 'ana musaafir
la-landan. maHHad yi9rifni hownaak.
mahdi : 'ana 9indi 'aSdigaa' kaθiiriin hownaak. (mahdi yuktub)
xuδ! haaδa 'ism w-9inwaan w-ragam talafoon waaHid min
jamaa9ati. Hiin tiwSal hownaak 'ittaSil-bih w-huw
9a-yaaxuδak w-ywarriik landan.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Airport (ii)

Policeman : Give me the passport and the boarding pass!
Traveller : Yes, sir! Here!
Policeman : Where are you travelling?
Traveller : To London, I hope.
Policeman : You are right! On Yamaniya by way of Cairo. Here!
(Passenger sees Mahdi)
Mahdi : To Cairo, I hope.
Traveller : No. On the same plane, but I am going to London. No one
knows me there.

| | |
|---|---|
| Mahdi : | I have many friends there. (Mahdi writes) Here! This is the name, the address and the telephone number of one of my relatives. When you arrive there, contact him and he will take you and show you London. |

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| haat! | Give (me, us)! Bring! |
| xuruuj | v.n. exit, going out |
| biTaagat xuruuj | boarding pass |
| musaafir | act. part. (-iin) travelling |
| 'al-yamaniyya | Yamaniya Airline |
| Tariig | (Turug) way; road |
| 9an Tariig | by way of, via |
| -bsir- | to see; to watch |
| nafs | (with foll. genit.) the same |
| Tayyaara | (-aat) airplane |
| -9rif- | to know |
| Sadiig | ('aSdigaa') friend |
| 9inwaan | (9anaawiin) address; title, e.g., of a lecture |
| ragam | ('argaam) number, No.; numeral |
| talafoon | (-aat) telephone |
| waaHid min | one of |
| jamaa9a | relatives, kinsfolk; group of people |
| Hiin | conj. when, at the time when |
| -wSal- | to arrive at a place |
| -ttaSil- b- | to contact s.o. |
| -warri- | to show s.o. s.th. |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| jinsiyya | (-aat) nationality; citizenship |
| 'iglaa9 | v.n. departure (of a plane), taking off |
| wuSuul | v.n. arrival |
| makaan | ('amaakin) place, location |

| | |
|---|---|
| wilaada | v.n. birth, delivery |
| makaan al-wilaada | birthplace |
| duxuul | v.n. entrance, entry |
| taariix | (tawaariix) date; history |
| 'al-faransiyya | the French (plane, airline, company), Air France |
| 'as-su9uudiyya | Saudia (Airline) |
| 'al-'aLmaaniyya | the German Airline, Lufthansa |
| ʃaari9 | (ʃawaari9) street |
| lamman | conj. when, at the time when (syn. Hiin) |
| -saafir- | to travel |
| -rja9- | to return, go back |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Elative Adjectives

| | |
|---|---|
| huw 'akbar walad. | 'He is the biggest, oldest boy.' |
| hiy 'akbar bint. | 'She is the biggest, oldest girl.' |
| huw 'akbar al-'awlaad. | 'He is the biggest, oldest of (the) boys.' |
| hiy 'akbar al-banaat. | 'She is the biggest, oldest of (the) girls.' |
| hum 'akbar al-'awlaad. | 'They (m.) are the biggest, oldest of the boys.' |
| hin 'akbar al-banaat. | 'They (f.) are the biggest, oldest of the girls.' |

There are two major constructions in which the superlative meaning of the SA elatives is expressed. In the first two sentences the elative 'akbar is followed by a singular indefinite noun, which corresponds to English 'the biggest, oldest boy (girl)'. In the third and fourth sentences the elative construction contains a plural definite noun, and corresponds to English 'the biggest of (the) boys (girls)'. In the last two sentences the subject is plural, masculine and feminine, respectively. The elative in all the sentences is invariable; it is not inflected for gender or number.

If the elative is used predicatively, i.e., if it is the predicate of an equational sentence, it takes the article prefix for expressing the superlative meaning:

| | |
|---|---|
| huw al-'akbar. | 'He is the biggest, oldest.' |
| hiy al-'aHla. | 'She is the most beautiful.' |

The superlative meaning of adjectives that do not have associated elative forms (see UNIT 22, GRAMMAR 5) is expressed by the adjective followed by 'akθar 'the most' followed by waaHid 'one':

| | |
|---|---|
| huw maʃGuul akθar waaHid. | 'He is the busiest (one).' |

## 2. The Conjunction *Hiin*

Hiin is a conjunction in SA and has the following range of English equivalents: 'when', 'whenever', 'as soon as', 'any time that', etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| Hiin tiwSal ittaSil bih. | 'When you (m.s.) arrive, contact him.' |
| Hiin yiwSal laazim 9alayh ysiir al-9amal. | 'As soon as he arrives, he must go to work.' |
| Hiin yiʃrab yiʃrab kaθiir. | 'Whenever he drinks, he drinks a lot.' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Repetition

1. 'ana musaafir Gudwa.
2. huw musaafir Gudwa.
3. 'ant musaafir Gudwa.
4. 'anti musaafira Gudwa.
5. hiy musaafira Gudwa.
6. hum musaafiriin Gudwa.
7. 'iHna musaafiriin Gudwa.
8. 'antu musaafiriin Gudwa.
9. 'antayn musaafiraat Gudwa.
10. hin musaafiraat Gudwa.

## Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana musaafir al-gaahira. 'I am travelling to Cairo.'

1. hiy
2. huw
3. 'antu
4. hum
5. 'al-yawm
6. 'ant
7. ba9d saa9a
8. 'anti
9. 'iHna
10. 'ana
11. bayruut
12. miSr
13. now
14. hin
15. 'antayn

## Drill 3 Completion

ana ma 'a9rifʃ ... 'I do not know ...'

1. what his name is
2. what the phone number is
3. what his nationality is
4. what the date is
5. what his address is
6. where the place is
7. where the exit is
8. where the entrance is
9. where the boarding pass is
10. how to get to the place
11. how to contact him
12. how to return home
13. how I can see the film
14. how to show you the place

## Drill 4 Transformation: positive → elative

Example: T : haaδa ʃ-ʃaari9 Tawiil. 'This street is long.'

$S_1$ : haaδa ʃ-ʃaari9 'aTwal min haδaak aʃ-ʃaari9.
'This street is longer than that street.'

$S_2$ : haaδa 'aTwal ʃaari9. 'This is the longest street.'

1. haaδa l-9inwaan jadiid.
2. haaδa t-talafoon gadiim.
3. haaδa l-makaan naδ̣iif.
4. haaδi l-bint Haaliya.
5. haaδi t-taδkara Gaaliya.
6. haaδi l-'as9aar Gaaliya.
7. haaδa l-musaafir majnuun.
8. haaδa l-maTaar kabiir.
9. haaδi l-biTaaga waSxa.
10. haaδa l-walad 9aagil.

6. haaδi T-Tayyaara jadiida.
7. haaδa l-Hammaal fagiir.
13. haaδa T-Tariig sahl.
14. haaδi l-miʃkila Sa9ba.

### Drill 5 Substitution

T : see the place
S : Hiin tiwSal hownaak ʃuf al-makaan.
'When you get there, see the place.'

1. show them the card
2. contact them
3. go to the hotel
4. take a taxi
5. pay the money
6. buy some apples
7. go to the hospital
8. walk to the office
9. clean the car
10. withdraw the money
11. fill the water tank
12. show them the suitcase
13. get some fish
14. eat Arabic food

### Drill 6 Double Substitution

warriini l-jawaaz! 'Show me the passport!'

1. them (m.) -- the tickets
2. him -- the place
3. us -- the address
4. them (f.) -- the film
5. her -- the exit
6. me -- the phone
7. me -- the phone number
8. them (m.) -- place of arrival
9. us -- place of departure
10. her -- the bill

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

yiʃti ysaafir Gudwa. 'He wants to travel tomorrow.'

1. 'ana
2. δalHiin
3. ba9d Gudwa
6. nirja9
7. hiy
8. at 10 a.m.
11. yittaSil biik
12. yruuH
13. 'iHna

4. hum
5. 'iHna
9. hin
10. huw
14. niji
15. hum

## Drill 8 Translation

1. He will travel with us tomorrow on the same plane.
2. You can take Saudia to Jadda, and from there take Air France to Paris.
3. Yamaniya goes to London via Cairo three times a week.
4. Write the address, the date of birth, and the place of birth in this space (place)!
5. Give me the tickets, the passports, and the boarding passes!
6. You have five kilograms of excess baggage. Give me YR. 200 for excess baggage and fill out this card!
7. The airport tax is YR. 50. Every passenger should pay it.
8. One of my friends will show you how to go to the hotel from the airport.

## Drill 9 Question -- Answer (based on TEXT)

1. 'ila 'ayn 9a-yruuH al-musaafir ? 9an Tariig jadda ?
2. 9ala 'ayy Tayyaara ?
3. man mahdi ?
4. 'ila 'ayn yiʃti ysaafir mahdi ?
5. 9ala 'ayy Tayyaara ?
6. man yi9rif al-musaafir fi landan ?
7. man 9inda 'aSdigaa' kaθiiriin fi landan ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : 'ayn 9a-tsaafiri ya 'afraaH ?
'afraaH : la-l-yaman nʃaaLLa 9an Tariig New York.
tagiyya : kam saa9a b-T-Tayyaara ?
'afraaH : min haana la-New York sittat saa9aat w-min N.Y. la-baariis θamaaniyat saa9aat w-min baariis la-San9a 9an

Tariig al-gaahira 9aʃarat saa9aat. xaaTriʃ! b-asiir δalHiin.

tagiyya : ma9 as-salaama!

2. mirʃid : b-kam at-taδkara la-l-gaahira ?

9ali : b-'alf w-xamsmiyat ryaal.

mirʃid : Tayyib. 'aʃti 'aʃtari taδkara.

9ali : 'ayn al-jawaaz ? 9indak ta'ʃiira ?

mirʃid : nsiit al-jawaaz fi l-bayt. ma 'aʃtiiʃ ta'ʃiira 9ala sibb 'ana 9arabi.

9ali : Tayyib bass ruH fiisa9 w-haat al-jawaaz!

# UNIT 24

## I. TEXT

### bayti

'askun fi bayt kabiir fi ʃaari9 sitta w-9iʃriin sabtambir fi San9a. 'al-bayt yatkawwan min 'arba9at TarHaat. 'al-'awwala fiiha maxaaziin w-tannuur, w-9ala θ-θaaniya w-aθ-θaaliθa makaanaat an-nawm Haggi w-Hagg zawjati w-9iyaali w-'ummi w-'abi 9ala sibb yaskunu ma9aana. makaan ya9ni "Gurfa". 'ana mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah w-9indi θalaaθat 'awlaad w-bintayn. 'abi rajjaal kabiir 9umra sab9iin sana w-'ummi 'asGar minna. 9umraha xamsiin sana.

'al-bayt fii θalaaθat Hammaamaat w-dayma w-maTbax. "dayma" ya9ni 'ism gadiim Hagg al-maTbax al-yamani l-gadiim. δalHiin nguul maTbax bass. Gurfat aT-Ta9aam fiiha maasa w-9aʃarat karaasi. 'al-maTbax fii θallaaja w-Gassaala w-furn. 'ad-diiwaan w-l-mafraj 9ala T-TarHa r-raabi9a.

## II. TRANSLATION

### My House

I live in a big house on September 26 Street in Sanaa. The house is made up of four floors. On the first floor there are storage rooms and a bread baking oven. On the second and third floors are sleeping rooms for myself and my wife, my children, my mother and my father because they live with us. *makaan* means "room". I am married, thanks to God, and I have three boys and two girls. My father is an old man; he is seventy years old, and my mother is younger than he is; she is fifty years old.

The house has three bathrooms, an old kitchen and a modern kitchen. *dayma* is an old name for an old Yemeni kitchen. Now we say maTbax only. There are a (dining) table and ten chairs in the dining room. There are a refrigerator, a washing machine and a stove (with an oven) in the kitchen. The living room and the reception hall are on the fourth floor.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| -skun- | to dwell, live |
| sabtambir | September |
| -tkawwan- | to be made up of, consist of |
| TarHa | (-aat) floor, story |
| mixzaan | (maxaaziin) storage room |
| tannuur | (tanaaniir) bread baking oven |
| makaan | (-aat) room. syn. Gurfa |
| nawm | v.n. sleep; sleeping |
| 9iyaal | children; sons and daughters |
| 'umm | ('ummahaat) mother |
| 'Gurfa | (Guraf) room. syn. makaan p. -aat |
| 'ab/'abu- | ('aabaa') father |
| rajjaal | (rijaal) man |
| 9umr | ('a9maar) age, lifetime |
| fii | there is; there are |
| Hammaam | (-aat) bath; bathroom |
| dayma | (diyam) kitchen, old Yemeni kitchen |
| maTbax | (maTaabix) kitchen |
| ya9ni | that is to say, i.e.; it means |
| -guul- | to say |
| Ta9aam | food |
| maasa | (-aat) table; desk |
| kursi | (karaasi) chair |
| θallaaja | (-aat) refrigerator |
| Gassaala | (-aat) washing machine |
| furn | ('afraan) oven; stove |
| diiwaan | (dawaawiin) living room |
| mafraj | (mafaarij) reception room, reception hall |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| mag9ad | (magaa9id) sofa |
| 'ax | ('ixwa) brother |
| 'uxt | ('axawaat) sister |
| baab | ('abwaab) door |
| Taaga | (Tiigaan) window |
| 'at-taHriir | Tahrir (Independence) Square, also known as *maydaan at-taHriir* |
| dikkaan | (dakaakiin) shop, store |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. *fii* as a Verb

*fii* is a prepositional phrase which means "in it". In this lesson it is a verb, and it means "there is; there are":

| | |
|---|---|
| fii mee' haana. | 'There is water here.' |
| fii rijal fi l-bayt. | 'There are men in the house.' |

The negative of *fii* is *maabiʃ* 'there isn't; there aren't':

| | |
|---|---|
| maabiʃ laHm naahi fi s-suug. | 'There isn't good meat in the market.' |
| maabiʃ 9iyaal haana. | 'There aren't any children here.'<br>'There are no children here.' |

*fii* may function as part of the predicate of a topic - comment sentence:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-bayt fii Gurfatayn nawm. | 'There are two bedrooms in the house.'<br>'The house has two bedrooms.' |
| San9a fiiha dakaakiin Hilwa. | 'There are beautiful shops in Sanaa.'<br>'Sanaa has beautiful shops.' |
| 'al-buyuut fiihum Gassaalaat. | 'There are washing machines in homes.'<br>'Homes have washing machines.' |

## 2. Telling Ages

When you are asked how old you are in English, you say, "I am ... years old." In French, e.g., you say the equivalent of English "I have ... years." Other languages have other ways of telling age. In SA, as in most other dialects of Arabic, you say the equivalent of English "My age is ... years."

| | |
|---|---|
| 9umri xamsiin sana. | 'I am fifty years old.' |
| 9umrak 9iʃriin sana ? | 'Are you twenty years old?' |
| 'al-bint 9umraha 9aʃr sanawaat. | 'The girl is ten years old.' |

The question, 'How old are you?' is kam 9umrak (m.s.) ? and kam 9umriʃ (f.s.) ?

## NOTES ON TEXT

1. A typical Yemeni house has three or four floors. On the first floor there are usually storage rooms (maxaaziin), a bread baking oven (tannuur), heating stoves, etc. Bedrooms are usually on the second and third floors. A diiwaan is on the top floor. The top floor may have a smaller room called manδar, p. manaaδir, which overlooks surroundings. A mafraj is either on the top floor or a room adjacent to the house. A mafraj is closed in on all sides except the side facing the south in Sanaa. Chewing qat takes place either in the diiwaan or in the mafraj.

2. 9iyaal has no singular derived from it; it means children, kids, boys and girls. It does not include one's wife. Wife is either zawja or 9aa'ila, which also means family. 'usra includes both children and wife.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Chain -- Cued

T : bayt 'house'
S : haaδa bayt. 'This is a house.'

1. ʃaari9
2. mixzaan
3. makaan
4. Gassaala
5. θallaaja
6. mag9ad
7. Taaga
8. maasa
9. diiwaan
10. mafraj
11. maTbax
12. Gurfa
13. rajjaal
14. dikkaan
15. kursi

### Drill 2 Substitution

haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii diiwaan.
'This is a house. The house has a living room'

1. six rooms
2. three bedrooms
3. two bathrooms
4. Yemeni kitchen
5. dining room
6. ten chairs
7. two sofas
8. six windows
9. reception hall
10. two stoves
11. four floors
12. two storage rooms
13. three families
14. washing machine
15. large kitchen

### Drill 3 Combination

haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii diiwaan kabiir →
haaδa l-bayt fii diiwaan kabiir.

'This is a house. The house has a large living room →
This house has a large living room.'

1. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii xamsat makaanat.
2. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii θalaaθat makaanaat.
3. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii dining room.

4. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii three sofas.
5. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii two washing machines.
6. haaδa jawaaz. 'al-jawaaz fii ta'ʃiira Hagg landan.
7. haaδa maTbax. 'al-maTbax fii table and six chairs.
8. haaδa MaTaar. 'al-maTaar fii Tayyaaraat kaθiira.
9. haaδi madrasa. 'al-madrasa fiiha miya w-xamsiin Taalib.
10. haaδi Tayyaara. 'aT-Tayyara fiiha miyat musaafir.
11. haaδa maktab. 'al-maktab fii 20 employees.
12. haaδa suug. 'as-suug fii 20 shops.
13. haaδa daftar. 'ad-daftar fii xamsiin ragam talafoon.
14. haaδa mafraj. 'al-mafraj fii 15 men.
15. haaδa bayt. 'al-bayt fii my parents, my brother and his family.

### Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'askun fi bayt kabiir. 'I live in a big house.'

1. 'abi
2. 'ummi
3. 'axi
4. SaGiir
5. 'ahli
6. jadiid
7. huw
8. hum
9. 'antu
10. gadiim
11. 'ant
12. 'anti
13. hiy
14. gariib
15. ba9iid

### Drill 5 Double Substitution

waaHid minhum kabiir w-θ-θaani SaGiir.
'One of them is large (old) and the other is small (young).'

1. expensive -- cheap
2. fat -- thin
3. tall -- short
4. rich -- poor
5. thin -- skinny
6. strong -- weak
7. crazy -- sane
8. here -- there
9. nurse -- doctor
10. American -- Arab
11. white -- black
12. difficult -- easy
13. regular -- excellent
14. busy -- not here

### Drill 6 Substitution

9umra sittiin sana. 'He is sixty years old.'

1. 50 years
2. 30 years
3. 1 1/2 years
4. 8 months
5. 2 years
6. 11 months
7. two weeks
8. 15 days
9. three weeks
10. 20 days
11. 75 years
12. 100 years
13. 45 years
14. 3 1/2 years
15. 17 years

### Drill 7 Repetition

Taaga -- Tiigaan
dikkaan -- dakaakiin
mixzaan -- maxaaziin
'umm -- 'ummahaat
'ab -- 'aabaa'
Gurfa -- Guraf
rajjaal -- rijaal
maTbax -- maTaabix
dayma -- diyam
kursi -- karaasi
furn -- 'afraan
diiwaan -- dawaawiin
mafraj -- mafaarij
'ax -- 'ixwa
'uxt -- 'axawaat
baab -- 'abwaab

### Drill 8 Transformation: singular → plural

1. haaδa kursi kabiir.
2. haaδa ʃaari9 naδ̣iif.
3. haaδa rajjaal samiin.
4. haaδi bint naHiifa.
5. haaδi Gurfa SaGiira.
6. haaδa baab al-bayt.
7. haaδi θallaaja Gaaliya.
8. haaδa furn ad-dayma.
9. haaδi 'umm al-'awlaad.
10. haaδa 'axuuha.
11. 'uxti mu9allima.
12. haaδa l-maTbax al-gadiim.
13. haaδi Taagat al-mixzaan.
14. haaδi maasat al-maktab.

### Drill 9 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. 'ayn 'askun ? f-ayy ʃaari9 ?
2. 'al-bayt yatkawwan min kam TarHa ?

3. 'ayn al-maxaaziin w-t-tannuur ?
4. 'ayn makaanaat an-nawm ?
5. man yuskun ma9aana ?
6. 'ayʃ ya9ni "makaan" ? 'ayʃ ya9ni "dayma" ?
7. 'ana mutazawwij ? kam walad 9indi ?
8. kam 9umr 'abi ? kam 9umr 'ummi ?
9. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ?
10. kayf tguul "dayma" b-l-'ingiliizi ?
11. kam maasa fi Gurfat aT-Ta9aam ?
12. kam kursi fi Gurfat aT-Ta9aam ?
13. fii θallaaja w-Gassaala 9indana ?
14. 'ayn ad-diiwaan w-l-mafraj ?

Drill 10 Answer the following questions:

1. 'ant mutazawwij ? 9indak 'usra kabiira ?
2. taskun fi bayt SaGiir 'aw kabiir ?
3. 'ahlak yaskunu ma9aak ? man ?
4. 'abuuk 'akbar min 'ummak 'aw 'aSGar minha ?
5. kam 9umrak ? kam lak fi San9a ?
6. 'ayn 9a-tsaafir Gudwa ? b-T-Tayyaara 'aw b-l-baaS ?
7. 9indak jawaaz w-ta'ʃiira ?
8. baytak ba9iid min at-taHriir ?
9. 9indak talafoon fi l-bayt ?
10. kam ragam talafoonak ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Husayn : 9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir δalHiin.
'as-sikirteer : tafaδ̣δ̣al 'ijlis! tiʃrab ʃaahi ?
Husayn : gahwa law samaHt.

'al-mudiir : kam 9umrak ya 'ax Husayn ?
Husayn : xamsa w-9iʃriin sana.
'al-mudiir : maa tiʃti ti9mal haana ?

Husayn : 'aʃti 'aʃtaGil kaatib.
'al-mudiir : ti9rif 'ingiliizi ?
Husayn : na9am. 'atkallam w-'aktub 'ingiliizi naahi.
'al-mudiir : Tayyib. 9a-nittaSil-bik ba9d 'usbuu9. kam ragam talafoonak ?
Husayn : sab9a sab9a tis9a sab9a waaHid. (77971)

2. 'isma9iil : maa 'ismak ?
9awað̣ : 'ismi 9awað̣.
'isma9iil : maa jinsiyyatak ?
9awað̣ : yamani.
'isma9iil : 'ayʃ 9inwaanak ?
9awað̣ : bayt 9ali raggaaS fi t-taHriir.
'isma9iil : kam 9umrak ?
9awað̣ : xamsa w-θalaaθiin sana.
'isma9iil : 'ayn makaan al-wilaada ?
9awað̣ : Sa9da.
'isma9iil : taariix al-wilaada ?
9awað̣ : 9aʃara tis9a 'alf w-tisa9miya w-xamsiin.

# UNIT 25

## I. TEXT

### bayt la-l-'iijaar

'al-musta'jir : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

'al-mu'ajjir : wa 9alaykum as-salaam. 'ahlan wa sahlan! ha! 'ayʃ tiʃti ?

'al-musta'jir : 'ana b-adawwir 9ala bayt SaGiir w-naδ̣iif gariib min al-mustaʃfa l-jumhuuri. 'ana muwaaδ̣δ̣af b-aʃtaGil Hagg al-jariida, jariidat aθ-θawra. 'aʃti 'asta'jir bayt. 'ant 9indak bayt la-l-'iijaar ?

'al-mu'ajjir : 'ii na9am. 9indi bayt fi gaa9 al-yahuud, gariib min al-jaami9 w-yatkawwan min θalaaθat TarHaat.

'al-musta'jir : kam Gurfat nawm fii ?

'al-mu'ajjir : fii θalaaθat Guraf nawm w-Hammaam 9arabi w-Hammaam 'ifranji. 'al-mafraj fawg w-al-maxaaziin taHt.

'al-musta'jir : 'ant al-mu'ajjiir 'aw SaaHib al-bayt ?

'al-mu'ajjir : 'ana l-mu'ajjir w-SaaHib al-bayt ba9da.

'al-musta'jir : kam al-kiraa' ?

'al-mu'ajjir : 'al-kiraa' 'alfayn ryaal fi ʃ-ʃahr w-al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' 9alayk.

'al-musta'jir : maaʃ ma9guul! haaδa l-'iijaar Gaali kaθiir.

'al-mu'ajjir : ruH dawwir w-'absir al-buyuut!

'al-musta'jir : maaʃi. ma 'aʃti 'aruuH 'adawwir ba9da. 'alf w-xamsmiyat ryaal ?

'al-mu'ajjir : Tayyib, bass fii 9agd 'iijaar la-sana. bi-tidfa9 δalHiin.

'al-musta'jir : Tayyib. xalliina nruuH nibsir al-bayt.

## II. TRANSLATION

### A House for Rent

Tenant : Peace be upon you!

Landlord : Peace be upon you! You are welcome! Ha! What can I do for you?

Tenant : I am looking for a house that is small, clean, and close to the Republican Hospital. I am an employee working for the newspaper, the Thawra Newspaper. I would like to rent a house. Do you have a house for rent?

Landlord : Yes, indeed. I have a house in the Jewish Quarter, near the mosque, and it is made up of three floors.

Tenant : How many bedrooms does it have?

Landlord : It has three bedrooms, an Arabic bathroom, and a Western bathroom. The reception room is upstairs and the storage rooms are downstairs.

Tenant : Are you the manager or the owner of the house?

Landlord : I am the manager and owner of the house.

Tenant : How much is the rent ?

Landlord : The rent is YR. 2,000 per month; you pay for the water and the electricity.

Tenant : Unreasonable! This rent is very expensive.

Landlord : Go look and see (other) homes!

Tenant : No, I do not want to go and look any more. YR. 1,500?

Landlord : All right; but there is a one-year lease. You will pay now.

Tenant : O.K. Let's go see the house!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'iijaar | rent; rent money |
| la-l-'iijaar | for rent |
| musta'jir | (-iin) tenant, lessee |

| | |
|---|---|
| mu'ajjir | (-iin) landlord, lessor; manager (of an apartment building) |
| -dawwir-9ala | to look for s.th. or s.o. |
| gariib min | prep. near, close to |
| jumhuuri | (-yyiin) republican |
| jariida | (jaraa'id) newspaper |
| θawra | (-aat) revolution |
| -sta'jir- (min) | to rent s.th. (from s.o.) |
| gaa9 | (gii9aan) quarter, section of a city |
| yahuudi | (yahuud) Jew; Jewish |
| jaami9 | (jawaami9) mosque |
| 'ifranji | (-yyiin) Western, European |
| fawg | adv. upstairs; prep. above; over |
| taHt | adv. downstairs; below; prep. beneath, under |
| SaaHib | (with foll. n. or pron.) owner of, proprietor of |
| kiraa' | rent money; wage; fare |
| kahrabaa' | electricity |
| ma9guul | (-iin) reasonable, sensible |
| 9agd | (9uguud) lease; contract |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| miftaaH | (mafaatiiH) key |
| 'arð̣ | ('araað̣i) floor of a room; dirt, earth |
| sagf | (suguuf) ceiling |
| bustaan | (basaatiin) backyard; garden; orchard |
| saxxaan | (--aat) heater |
| -Gallig- | to close, shut |
| gandiil | (ganaadiil) light bulb |
| miil | (-aat) neon light |
| siraaj | (electricity) light |
| xalf | adv.; prep. behind |
| -xazzin- | to chew qat |
| ʃugga | (ʃugag) apartment |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Verbs -- Imperatives

The imperfect stems -dawwir-9ala- 'to look for s.th. or s.o.', -Gallig- 'to shut, close', -xazzin- 'to chew qat', and -sta'jir (min), 'rent s.th. (from s.o.)' are the same imperative forms (of the first person masculine singular):

| | |
|---|---|
| Gallig al-baab! | 'Shut (m.s.) the door!' |
| dawwir 9ala bayt! | 'Look (m.s.) for a house!' |
| xazzin ma9aana! | 'Chew (m.s.) qat with us!' |

If a double imperative construction is used, each imperative form agrees with the subject.

| | |
|---|---|
| ruuH dawwir 9ala ʃugga! | 'Go (m.s.) look (m.s.) for an apartment!' |
| ruuHi dawwiri 9ala ʃugga! | 'Go (f.s.) look (f.s.) for an apartment!' |
| ruuHu dawwiru 9ala ʃugga! | 'Go (m.p.) look (m.p.) for an apartment!' |
| ruuHayn dawwirayn 9ala ʃugga! | 'Go (f.p.) look (f.p.) for an apartment!' |

After the imperative xalli! 'leave; let' a double imperfect construction may be used (see UNIT 13, GRAMMAR 2).

| | |
|---|---|
| xalliina nruuH nibsir! | 'Let's go see!' |
| xalliiha truuH tibsir! | 'Let her go see!' |
| xaalliihin yruuHayn yibsirayn! | 'Let them (f.) go see!' |

### 2. The Triple Imperfect Construction

A string of three imperfect tense forms may occur in SA. Each form should agree with the same subject, i.e., all the three forms have one and the same subject:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aʃti 'aruuH 'adawwir 9ala bayt. | 'I want to go to look for a house." |
| yiʃtu yruuHu ydawwiru 9ala ʃugga. | 'They (m.) want to go to look for an apartment.' |

The meaning expressed by the third verb is "purpose".

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Completion

'ana b-adawwir 9ala ... 'I am looking for ...'

1. a small and clean house
2. a Yemeni landlord
3. a house near the hospital
4. a house in Tahrir Square
5. the electricity bill
6. the Thawra Newspaper
7. the lease
8. new tenants
9. the Republican Hospital
10. an American newspaper
11. the old Jewish Quarter
12. the Grand Mosque
13. the owner of the store
14. a clean apartment

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana b-adawwir 9ala bayt. "I am looking for a house.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. ʃugga
4. 'al-miftaaH
5. 'al-miil
6. hiy
7. 'al-fuluus
8. 'al-9iyaal
9. 'iHna
10. gaat
11. mu'ajjir
12. 'ant
13. 'antu
14. musta'jiriin
15. 'ana

### Drill 3 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'axazzin ma9aakum. 'I like to chew qat with you (m.p.)'

1. huw
2. 'iHna
3. with them
4. 'ant
5. 'antu
6. tuskuni
7. hiy
8. hin
9. 'ana
10. 'aakul
11. 'iHna
12. hum
13. yxazzinu
14. 'ana
15. huw

### Drill 4 Substitution

9indak bayt la-l-'iijaar ? 'Do you have a house for rent ?'

1. ʃugga SaGiira
2. bayt SaGiir
3. taksi
4. Gurfa
5. Gurfa kabiira
6. dukkaan
7. θallaaja
8. baaS
9. sayyaara
10. bustaan
11. mixzaan
12. maktab

### Drill 5 Double Substitution

T : my father -- 70
S : 'abi 9umra sab9iin sana. 'My father is seventy years old.'

1. his father -- 58
2. his brother -- 17
3. his mother -- 35
4. my brother -- 21
5. her sister -- 9
6. their father -- 63
7. their brother -- 14
8. her brother -- 3 1/2
9. your father -- 72
10. their mother -- 40
11. his brother 2 1/2
12. our father -- 61
13. our mother -- 36
14. your brother -- 27

### Drill 6 Composition

Compose sentences with the help of key words.

Example: T : father -- old -- 70
S : 'abi rajjaal kabiir 9umra sab9iin sana.
'My father is an old man; he is seventy years old.'

1. father -- old -- 65
2. brother -- young - 7
3. mother -- old - 58
4. sister -- young --5
5. friend -- young -- 17
6. secretary -- pretty -- 21
7. teacher -- skinny -- 53
8. father -- young -- 28
9. brother -- young -- 2
10. director -- fat -- 37
11. mother -- young -- 19
12. friend -- sane -- 25

## Drill 7 Completion

xalliina nruuH nibsir al-bayt. 'Let's go see the house.'

1. eat chicken
2. eat lamb
3. drink beer
4. drink coffee
5. see the apartment
6. see the bedroom
7. rent an apartment
8. rent a car
9. close the store
10. close the door
11. open the house
12. contact him
13. show them the place
14. take the car

## Drill 8 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aruuH 'adawwir 9ala bayt. 'I want to go to look for a house.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. apartment
4. 'iHna
5. 'ant
6. 'antu
7. landlord
8. 'ana
9. huw
10. hum
11. shop
12. 'iHna

## Drill 9 Translation

1. I would like to rent a five-bedroom house near the mosque.
2. Do you have a house for rent? I want one made up of three floors.
3. The house has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a large kitchen, and a reception hall. It is behind Tahrir Square.
4. The Jewish Quarter is near Tahrir Square but far from Bab Al-Yemen.
5. The bedrooms are upstairs and the storage room is downstairs. The garden is behind the house.
6. The landlord wants to come to collect (take) the rent money.
7. The rent is YR. 3,000 per month. You will pay for water and electricity. There is no telephone in the house.
8. There are many houses for rent, but they are very expensive, and there is a one year lease too.

9. You will pay the rent money now, i.e., as soon as we write the lease.
10. Fine. I just would like to go to see the house. Let's go see it.

Drill 10 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. 'ayn yiʃtaGil al-musta'jir ?
2. 'ayn al-bayt la-l-'iijaar ? ba9iid min al-jaami9 ?
3. min kam TarHa yatkawwan al-bayt ?
4. kam Gurfat nawm fi l-bayt ?
5. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ?
6. 'ayn al-mafraj ? 'ayn al-maxaaziin ?
7. kam kiraa' al-bayt fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
8. man yidfa9 fawaatiir al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' ?
9. kam 9a-yidfa9 al-musta'jir ?
10. 9agd al-'iijaar ʃahr 'aw sana ?

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage (on tape) and then summarize it in your own words.

# UNIT 26

## I. TEXT

### fi l-maT9am

'al-mubaaʃir : 'ahlan wa sahlan! tafaḍḍalu!
SaaliH : niʃti maasa Hagg ʃaxSayn.
'al-mubaaʃir : na9am mawjuud. tafaḍḍalu!
SaaliH : 'ayʃ tiʃti ta'kul ya mHammad ?
mHammad : (la-lmubaaʃir) 'ayʃ 9indakum la-l-Gadaa' ?
'al-mubaaʃir : 9indana kull ʃay' : dajaaj w-kabaab w-Tali w-Huut maʃwi 'aw magli w-rizz ba9da.
mHammad : 'aʃti 'atGadda baamya w-nuSS dajaaj w-HummoS. 'iddii-li SaHn salaTa!
'al-mubaaʃir : HummoS maabiʃ. Tiʃti ʃirba ?
mHammad : ʃirba laa ba's.
SaaliH : jiib-li kabaab w-rizz w-ʃirba!
'al-mubaaʃir : Haaḍir. 'ayʃ tiʃtu tiʃrabu ?
mHammad : 'ana 'aʃti 'aʃrab ʃaahi.
SaaliH : baarid δalHiin w-bunn ba9d al-'akl.
mHammad : laa ba's. 'iddii-li gahwat giʃr ba9d al-'akl! Jiib galaS mee' law samaHt!

SalliH : ta9aal ya mubaaʃir! kam al-Hisaab ?
'al-mubaaʃir : θamaaniin ryaal.
mHammad : la waLLa! 'al-Hisaab 9alayy.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Restaurant

Waiter : Welcome! Please come in!
SaliH : We want a table for two people.
Waiter : Yes, there is. Please come in!

SaliH : What would you like to eat, Muhammad?

Muhammad : (To the waiter): What do you have for lunch?

Waiter : We have everything: chicken, kabob, lamb, grilled or fried fish, and rice also.

Muhammad: I want to have okra, half a chicken, and HummoS for lunch. Give me (a plate of) salad!

Waiter : We do not have HummoS. Would you like to have soup?

Muhammad : Soup is O.K.

SaliH : Give me kabob, rice, and soup!

Waiter : At your service! What would you like to drink ?

Muhammad : I would like to have tea.

Salih : Something cold now, and coffee after the food.

Muhammad : Good idea. Give me giʃr coffee after the food. Bring a glass of water, please!

Salih : Waiter! Come! How much is the bill?

Waiter : Eighty riyals.

Muhammad : No, no. The bill is on me.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| maT9am | (maTaa9iim) restaurant |
| mubaaʃir | (-iin) waiter; usher |
| ʃaxS | ('aʃxaaS) person; someone, somebody |
| Gadaa' | (-aat) lunch |
| kabaab | kabob, meat roasted on a skewer |
| maʃwi | (-yyiin) grilled; roasted |
| magli | (-yyiin) fried |
| -tGadda- | to have lunch |
| baamya | coll. okra. s. Habbat baamya |
| HummoS | dish made of crushed chick peas, sesame seed paste, and lemon juice |
| SaHn | (SuHuun) dish; plate |
| salaTa | salad |
| ʃirba | soup |

| | |
|---|---|
| baarid | something cold, beverage |
| galaS | (-aat) glass of s.th., drinking glass (f.) |
| Hisaab | (-aat) bill; (bank) account |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| baSal | coll. green onions. s. buSli |
| buSSaala | coll. (brown) onions. s. ra's buSSaala |
| maGli | (-yyiin) boiled |
| mal9aga | (malaa9ig) spoon |
| ʃaTala | (-aat) fork. syn. ʃawka p. ʃuwak, -aat |
| sikkiin | (sakaakiin) knife |
| gaaruura | (gawaariir) bottle |
| finjaan | (fanaajiin) cup; cup of s.th. |
| tamr | coll. dates. s. tamra |
| zabiib | coll. raisins. s. zabiiba |
| jizar | coll. carrots. s. jizara |
| balas | coll. catcus fruit. s. balasa |
| balas 9arabi | coll. figs. s. balasa |
| 9aʃaa' | dinner, supper |
| SabuuH | breakfast |
| -t9aʃʃa- | to have dinner, supper |
| -STabiH- | to have breakfast |

## V. GRAMMAR

No new grammatical points in this lesson.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Repetition

1. 'iddii-li finjann gahwa!
2. 'iddii-li finjann ʃaahi!
3. 'iddii-li finjann Haliib!
6. 'iddii-li gaaruurat biira!
7. 'iddii-li SaHn dajaaj!
8. 'iddii-li ʃaTala w-sikkiin!

4. 'iddii-li gaLas mee'!
5. 'iddii-li gaLas biira!
9. 'iddii-li SaHn salaTa!
10. 'iddii-li SaHn rizz w-laHm!

### Drill 2 Chain -- Cued

$S_1$ : 'ayʃ tiʃti titGadda ? 'What would you like to have for lunch ?'
T : chicken
$S_2$ : 'aʃti 'atGadda dajaaj. 'I would like to have chicken for lunch.'

1. grilled kabob
2. fried fish
3. grilled fish
4. okra and rice
5. baked chicken
6. soup and lamb
7. lamb and rice
8. kabob and soup
9. beans and mutton
10. fish and salad
11. half a chicken
12. kabob and rice

### Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

Do Drill 2, substituting tit9aʃʃa for titGadda.

### Drill 4 Substitution

jiib ... law samaHt! 'Bring ..., please!'

1. the waiter
2. the lunch
3. the dinner
4. the beverage
5. glass of water
6. green onions
7. bottle of beer
8. the breakfast
9. raisins and carrots
10. figs and prickly pears
11. forks and knives
12. spoons and plates
13. cup of coffee
14. spoons and knives

### Drill 5 Substitution

'al-Hisaab 9alayy. 'The bill is on me.'
T : huw 'He'
S : 'al-Hisaab 9alayh. 'The bill is on him.'

1. hum
2. 'ant
3. 'antu
4. hiy
5. 'ana
6. hin
7. 'anti
8. 'antayn
9. 'iHna
10. 'antu
11. huw
12. 'ant
13. hum
14. 'antu
15. huw

### Drill 6 Variable Substitution

jiib SaHn rizz law samaHt!
'Bring a dish of rice, please!'

1. SaHn dajaaj
2. okra and beans
3. 'anti
4. bread and butter
5. 'antu
6. washing machine
7. refrigerator
8. 'ant
9. salad plate
10. bottle of beer
11. fried fish
12. grilled lamb
13. boiled milk
14. boiled water

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw yiʃti yjiib kabaab. 'He wants to bring kabob.'

1. chicken
2. I
3. have for lunch
4. hiy
5. have for dinner
6. 'iHna
9. boiled eggs
10. have for breakfast
11. cheese and eggs
12. 'ana
13. huw
14. 'ant

7. bring
8. hum
15. 'anti
16. 'iHna

### Drill 8 Double Substitution

'ana aʃti galaS mee'. 'I want a glass of water.'

1. huw - fried fish
2. hiy -- small apartment
3. 'ant -- rent a house
4. hum -- look for a house
5. 'iHna -- chew qat
6. 'ana -- Arabic newspapers
7. hin -- go upstairs
8. 'antu -- go downstairs
9. 'anti -- the shopkeeper
10. huw -- the water bill
11. hum -- the electric bill
12. hiy -- the house key
13. 'iHna -- buy light bulbs
14. hum -- close the store
15. 'ant -- neon lights
16. 'ana -- the house lease

### Drill 9 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. kam ʃaxS yiʃtu yitGaddu fi l-maT9am ?
2. man hum ?
3. 'ayʃ fii fi l-maT9am? fii HummoS?
4. 'ayʃ yiʃti mHammad yitGadda ?
5. 'ayʃ yiʃti SaaliH ya'kul ?
6. 'ayʃ yiʃti mHammad yiʃrab w-SaaliH ?
7. man yiʃti yiʃrab gahwat giʃr ?
8. kam al-Hisaab ?

### Drill 10 Question-- Answer

1. f-ayy Hiin tit9aʃʃa ? 'ayʃ ta'kul ?
2. f-ayy Hiin tiSTabiH ? maa tiSTabiH ?
3. tiSTabiH fi l-bayt 'aw fi l-maT9am ?
4. ti9rif al-balas ? fii balas fi 'amriika ?
5. 'ayn tuskun ? fi bayt 'aw fi ʃugga ? kam al-kiraa' ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. xayriya : kayf al-bayt al-jadiid ya 'amiina ?

'amiina : naahi. gariib min as-suug w-l-madrasa Hagg al-'awlaad.

xayriya : w-l-'iijaar ?

'amiina : 'al-'iijaar Gaali maaʃ ma9guul. θalaaθa 'alf ryaal fi ʃ-ʃahr.

xayriya : fii bustaan ?

'amiina : na9am 'al-bustaan xalf al-bayt w-fii ʃijar (trees) balas 9arabi w-barguug w-9inab.

xayriya : 'ayn 9a-tsiiri ðalHiin ?

'amiina : ʃa-siir as-suug 9ala sibb 'aʃti 'aʃtari SuHuun w-malaa9ig w-ʃaTalaat w-sakaakiin.

2. 'al-mubaaʃir : tafaḍḍala 'ijlisu!

Hasan : maa tiʃti ta'kul ya 'ax 9ali ?

9ali : (la-l-mubaaʃir) 'ayʃ 9indakum ?

'al-mubaaʃir : 9indana dajaaj w-Huut w-Tali w-rizz. 9indana kull ʃay'.

9ali : Tayyib. 'iddii-li SaHn rizz w-baayma.

'al-mubaaʃir : Haaðir! w-l-'ax ?

Hasan : 'aʃti Huut maʃwi w-salaTa. 9indakum buTaaT?

'al-mubaaʃir : 'ii na9am.

Hasan : jiib SaHn buTaaT w-Tali. ʃaahi ba9d al-'akl.

'al-mubaaʃir : w-l-'ax 9ali ?

9ali : gahwa w-jiib galaSeen mee'!

# UNIT 27

## I. TEXT

### 9ala t-talafoon (i)

zayd : haluw! haluw! maabiʃ jawaab! 'al-xaTT Gayr naahi l-yawm!

'ibn 9ali : haluw! man yitkallam ?

zayd : 'ana zayd 9anaan. haaða bayt 9ali 9abd al-gaadir ? man ma9i ?

'ibn 9ali : 'ana 'ibn 9ali. haaða baytana. man tiʃti ?

zayd : 'aʃti 'atkallam ma9 'abuuk. 'abuuk mawjuud ?

'ibn 9ali : 'iSbir! dagiiga! (9ali's son calls) ya yuba! 9ammi zayd 9anaan 9ala t-talafoon. yiʃtiik.

9ali : haluw! marHaba ya zayd! kayf Haalak ?

zayd : 'al-Hamdu lillaah. ba-xayr. min mudda Tuwiila w-ana 'aHaawil 'attaSil biik w-l-xaTT maʃGuul. Gudwa 'al-jum9a. 'aʃti 'a9zimak 'ant w-l-'usra 9ala l-9aʃaa'. nxazzin w-nil9ab baTTa w-ba9da nit9aʃʃa.

9ali : f-ayy Hiin ?

zayd : tagriib 'as-saa9a xams, ba9d Salaat al-9aSr.

9ali : kaθθar aLLaah xayrak! 9a-niji nʃaaLLa.

## II. TRANSLATION

### On the Telephone

Zaid : Hello! Hello! There is no answer! The line is not good today!

Ali's Son : Hello! Who is speaking?

Zaid : I am Zaid Anan. Is this Ali Abd-Alqadir's home? Who is with me?

Ali's Son : I am Ali's son. This is our house. Who do you want?

Zaid : I would like to speak to your father. Is your father there?

Ali's Son : Wait! Just a minute! (Ali's son calls) Dad! Uncle Zaid Anan is on the telephone. He wants you.

Ali : Hello! Hi zayd! How are you?

Zaid : Praise be to God. I am fine. I have been trying to contact you for a long time, and the phone hs been busy. Tomorrow is Friday. I want to invite you. I want to invite you and the family for dinner. We will chew qat, play cards, and have dinner after that.

Ali : At what time?

Zaid : About five o'clock, after the afternoon prayer.

Ali : Thank you. We will come, God willing.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| haluw! | Hello! |
| jawaab | (-aat) answer; response |
| xaTT | (xuTuuT) telephone line; railroad, bus, airline |
| Gayr | neg. part. not, un-; other than |
| 'ibn | ('abnaa') son |
| -Sbir- | to wait; to be patient |
| dagiiga | (dagaa'ig) minute |
| ya yuba! | Dad! Father! |
| 9amm | ('a9maam) paternal uncle; father-in-law |
| mudda | period of time |
| -Haawil- | to try, make an effort to do s.th. |
| -9zim- | to invite s.o. |
| -l9ab- | to play; to play a game |
| baTTa | (-aat) deck of cards, cards |
| tagriib | prep. about, approximately |
| Salaa | (Salawaat) prayer |
| 9aSr | afternoon, as in Salaat al-9aSr 'the afternoon prayer' |
| kaθθar | he increased, made s.th. more |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| -talfin- | to telephone |
| xaal | ('axwaal) maternal uncle |
| 'ibn xaal | cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle |
| bint xaal | cousin (f.), daughter of one's maternal uncle |
| 'ibn 9amm | cousin (m.), son of one's paternal uncle |
| bint 9amm | cousin (f.), daughter of one's paternal uncle |
| xaala | (-aat) maternal aunt; step-mother |
| 9amma | (-aat) paternal aunt; mother-in-law |
| duulaab | (dawaaliib) wardrobe |
| kabat | (-aat) cupboard; wardrobe |
| matfal | (mataafil) spitting container |
| matka | (mataaki) cushion, pad |
| mag9ad | (magaa9id) sofa |
| madaa9a | (madaayi9) hubble-bubble, water-pipe |
| karyuula | (karaayil) bed. syn. *sariir* p. *saraayir* |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. The Negative Particle *Gayr*

Unlike *maaʃ* (UNIT 10), which negates nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases, *Gayr* negatives adjectives:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-xaTT Gayr naahi. | 'The line is not good.' |
| Gayr Tawiil w-Gayr gaSiir | 'neither tall nor short' |

When *Gayr* negates nouns, and other parts of speech, it expresses the meaning of "other than":

| | |
|---|---|
| 'iddii-li Gayr haaδa! | 'Give me some other one (i.e., other than this)!' |
| 'aʃti Gayrahum. | 'I want other than these.' |
| Gayr saa9at xams | 'some other time, other than at five o'clock' |

2. *'ab* 'father' and *'ax* 'brother' change into *'abuu-* and *'axuu-* before a suffixed pronoun, except for *-i* 'my': *'abuuk* 'your (m.s.) father' *'abuuʃ* 'your (f.s.) father', *'abuuhum* 'their (m.) father', etc. When addressing your father, you say, '*ya 'abi!*", or more commonly "*ya yuba!*". My brother is *'axi*.

3. *f-ayy Hiin ?* is short for *fi 'ayy Hiin ?* 'at what time, when'.

4. *tagriib* 'about, approximately' behaves syntactically like a preposition; it precedes the noun or noun phrase it governs:

| | |
|---|---|
| li haana tagriib sanatayn. | 'I have been here for about two years.' |
| min haana la-Hajja tagriib xams saa9aat b-s-sayyaara. | 'It's about five hours from here to Hajja by car.' |
| 9a-yiji tagriib sa9at xams. | 'He will come at about five o'clock.' |

NOTES ON TEXT

1. *9amm* 'paternal uncle' is sometimes used as a title of respect for an older person, as in this lesson.

2. *kaθθar* is a past tense verb, which means, "he increased, augmented s.th." In this lesson it is part of a polite formula, *kaθθar aLLaah* xayrak! 'May God increse your wealth!' It is used when someone offers you something, invites to dinner, etc. Learn it as a polite formula.

3. Muslims pray five times a day: early in the morning before sunrise, at noontime, in the afternoon, at sunset, and after sunset. The names of those prayers are: *Salaat aS-SubH*, *Salaat aδ̣-δ̣uhr*, *Salaat al-9aSr*, *Salaat al-maGrib*, and *Salaat al-9iʃaa'*, respectively.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Double Substitution

'al-xaTT Gayr naahi. 'The line is not good.'

1. telephone -- good
2. line -- busy
3. line -- weak
4. wardrobe -- clean
5. restaurant -- far
6. lunch -- expensive
7. weather -- nice
8. my uncle -- old
9. my cousin (f.) -- tall
10. my aunt -- here
11. tea -- sweet
12. tomatoes -- expensive
13. apartment -- far
14. car -- American

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

huw yHaawil yittaSil biik. 'He is trying to contact you.'

1. hum
2. 'ana
3. hiy
4. hin
5. 'iHna
6. hum
7. 'ana
8. huw
9. hin
10. hiy
11. 'iHna
12. huw
13. hum
14. 'ana
15. 'iHna

### Drill 3 Conjugation

min mudda Tawiila w-ana 'aHaawil attaSil biik.
'I have been trying to contact you for a long time.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. 'iHna
4. hiy
5. 'ana
6. hin

### Drill 4 Double Substitution

huw yiʃti yittaSil biik. 'He wants to contact you.'
hiy -- 'iHna 'she -- we'
hiy tiʃti tittaSil biina. 'She wants to contact us.'

1. 'ana -- 'antu
2. hum -- 'iHna
3. 'anti -- hin
4. 'iHna -- 'antu
5. 'antayn -- hin
6. 'ant -- hiy
7. hin -- 'antayn
8. 'antu -- 'iHna
9. 'iHna -- huw
10. 'anu -- 'anti
11. hum -- 'ant
12. hiy -- hin
13. hin -- 'iHna
14. huw -- huw

### Drill 5 Translation

1. He is trying to see the director.
2. He is trying to buy a new house.
3. We are trying to change the car.
4. I am trying to go tomorrow morning.
5. He has been trying to speak Arabic for a long time.
6. She has been trying to write in Arabic for a long time.
7. They have been trying to contact me for twenty minutes.
8. He is trying to come to work at 6:00 a.m.

### Drill 6 Substitution

'al-xaTT maʃGuul. 'The line is busy.'

1. good
2. very good
3. new
4. busy
5. not busy.
6. excellent
7. not new
8. old
9. not good
10. very busy
11. weak
12. very weak

### Drill 7 Transformation

'ana 'al9ab baTTa. 'I play cards.'

1. huw
2. 'antu
3. sayf
4. hum
5. hiy
6. 'antayn
7. 'al-9iyaal
8. 'ana
9. 'al-banaat
10. hin
11. 'an-nisaa'
12. 'ant
13. 'iHna
14. huda
15. sayda

### Drill 8 Triple Substitution

T : 'ana -- 'ant -- dinner 'I -- you (m.s.) -- dinner'
S : 'ana 'aʃti 'a9zimak 9ala l-9aʃaa'.
'I want to invite you for dinner.'

1. 'ana -- 'antu -- lunch
2. 'ana -- 'anti -- dinner
3. huw -- 'iHna -- dinner
4. huw -- 'anti -- lunch
5. 'iHna -- 'antu -- lunch
6. hum -- 'iHna -- breakfast
7. hum -- 'ant -- breakfast
8. 'ant -- hiy -- breakfast
9. 'iHna -- hum -- lunch
10. hum -- 'ana -- dinner

### Drill 9 Chain -- Cued

T : laazim 9alayh yiSbir. 'He has to wait, be patient.'
S : maa yigdarʃ yiSbir. 'He cannot wait, be patient.'

1. laazim 9alykum tiSbiru.
2. laazim 9alayha tiSbir.
3. laazim 9alayk tiSbir.
4. laazim 9alayʃ tiSbiri.
5. laazim 9alaykin tiSbirayn.
6. laazim 9alayhin yiSbirayn.
7. laazim 9alayh yiSbir.
8. laazim 9alayhum yiSbiru.
9. laazim 9alayna niSbir.
10. laazim 9alayk tiSbir.

### Drill 10 True -- False (based on TEXT)

1. xaTT at-talafoon Gayr naahi l-yawm.
2. 9ali 9abd al-gaadir yiʃti yitkallam ma9 zayd 9anaan.
3. 9ali yiguul, "ya yuba!"
4. zayd 9anaan yiʃti yi9zim 9ali 9abd al-gaadir bass.
5. zayd 9anaan yiʃti yi9zim 9ali 9abd al-gaadir 9ala l-9aʃaa'.
6. 9a-yruuH 9ali 9abd al-gaadir la-bayt zayd 9anaan ba9d Salaat al-9aSr.
7. 'ibn 9ali yaguul, " kaθθar aLLaah xayrak!"

### Drill 11 Translation

1. I would like to buy two wardrobes, one cupboard, a sofa and three cushions.
2. Where can I find a hubble-bubble? I would like to buy one.
3. You will find spitting containers in every Yemeni house; Yemenis chew qat and spit in these containers.
4. My paternal uncle, my maternal uncle, and their families are coming to our house today to eat dinner. Before dinner they will chew qat and play cards.
5. The tenant in Yemen pays the electric and the water bills. Is it the same thing in America?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. mHammad : halaw! ʃukri!
ʃukri : 'ii na9am. man yitkallam ?
mHammad : 'ana mHammad. 'ant bi-ddawwir 9ala bayt ?
ʃukri : min mudda Tawiila. 'aʃti bayt gariib min al-9amal.
mHammad : fii bayt yitkawwan min θalaaθat TarHaat. fii Gurfatayn nawm 9ala T-TarHa θ-θaaniya w-l-mafraj fawg. w-fii maTbax w-Hammaam bass maabiʃ Hammaam 'ifranji.
ʃukri : w-l-'iijaar kam ?

mHammad : 'alfayn ryaal fi ʃ-ʃahr!
ʃukri : maaʃ ma9guul!

2. Haliima : tiʃtu tista'jiru ʃugga ?
'afraaH : niʃti ʃugga kabiira fiiha dawaaliib w-kabataat w-mataaki w-magaa9id w-karaayil.
Haliima : ya9ni tiʃtu ʃugga *mafruuʃa* ("furnished"). bass maabiʃ ʃugag mafruuʃa fi l-yaman.
'afraaH : 9a-ndawwir, yumkin nilga.

# UNIT 28

## I. TEXT

### 9ala t-talafoon (ii)

'as-santraal : wazaarat al-xaarijiyya!
'aHmad : 'aʃti 'atkallam ma9 al-'ax yaHya.
'as-santraal : 9inda xaTT θaani. jarrib ar-ragam 77971!
'aHmad : ʃukran. baarak aLLa fiik!
('aHmad yjarrib ar-ragam 77971)
'aHmad : haluw! 'al-'ax yaHya mawjuud?
'as-santraal : 'ar-ragam GalaT!
'aHmad : 9afwan!
('aHmad yuğ̣rub ar-ragam θaani marra)
'aHmad : 'as-sayyid yaHya mawjuud ?
'as-sikirteer : maaʃi. maaʃ haana. 9a-yirja9 ba9d saa9a. tiʃti tutruk-la risaala ?
'aHmad : maaʃi. 'aʃti 'aHaddid maw9id ma9aa.
'as-sikirteer : dagiiga! Gudwa S-SubH saa9at 9aʃir naahi?
'aHmad : naahi gawi. ʃukran!
'as-sikirteer : 9afwan.

## II. TRANSLATION

### On the Telephone (ii)

Operator : Ministry of Education!
Ahmad : I would like to speak to Brother Yahya.
Operator : He has another line. Try the number 77971!
Ahmad : Thanks! God bless you!
(Ahmad tries the number 77971)
Ahmad : Hello! Is Brother Yahya there?
Operator : Wrong number!
Ahmad : Sorry!

(Ahmad dials the number again)

Ahmad : Is Mr. Yahya there?

Secretary : No, he is not here. He will be back in an hour. Would you like to leave him a message?

Ahmad : No. I would like to make an appointment with him.

Secretary : One moment! Is tomorrow morning at ten O.K.?

Ahmad : Very good. Thank you!

Secretary : You are welcome.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| santraal | telephone operator; central telephone line |
| wazaarat al-xaarijiyya | the ministry of foreign affairs |
| 'al-'ax | (title) Brother |
| -jarrib- | to try s.th.; to test s.th. |
| GalaT | incorrect, wrong |
| -δ̣rub- ragam | to dial a number |
| -truk-(l-) | to leave s.th. (to s.o.) |
| risaala | (rasaa'il) message; letter |
| -Haddid- | to make, e.g., an appointment |
| 'aS-SubH | adv. in the morning; at daybreak |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| -sma9- | to hear |
| -dugg- | tran., intran. to ring |
| daa'ira | (dawaa'ir) department |
| 'ad-daaxiliyya | the ministry of the interior |
| 'al-maaliyya | the ministry of finance |
| 'az-ziraa9a | the ministry of agriculture |
| 'al-muwaaSalaat | the ministry of communications |
| 'al-9adl | the ministry of justice |
| 'al-yawm aS-SubH | adv. this morning, today in the morning |
| 'al-yawm aδ̣-δ̣uhr | adv. today at noon |
| 'al-yawm al-masaa' | adv. this evening, tonight |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 'ams aS-SubH | adv. | yesterday morning |
| Gudwa aδ̣-δ̣uhr | adv. | tomorrow at noon |

## V. GRAMMAR

### Imperatives

The first person masculine singular forms of the imperative of the verbs 'to make (an appointment)', 'to try, test s.th.', and 'to ring' are the same as those of the imperfect stems of those verbs:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yHaddid | 'He makes (an appointment)' | → | Haddid! |
| yjarrib | 'He tries, tests s.th.' | → | jarrib! |
| ydugg | 'It (m.s.) rings.' | → | dugg! |

The imperative forms of -truk- 'to leave' and -sma9- 'to hear' are 'utruk! and 'isma9!, respectively.

### NOTES ON TEXT

1. wazaart al-xaarijiyya 'the ministry of foreign affairs', wazaarat ad-daxiliyya 'the ministry of the interior', waazaarat al-maaliyya 'the ministry of finance', etc. are usually known as 'al-xaarijiyya, 'ad-daaxiliyya, 'al-maaliyya, etc.

2. 'ax 'brother', like 9amm 'uncle', is used as a title of respect, but unlike 9amm, 'ax is used in addressing someone or speaking about someone who is not very old. When used as a title, it is definite: 'al-'ax yaHya 'Brother Yahya'.

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 a. Repetition

1. wazaarat al-maaliyya
2. wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya

6. wazaarat al-xaarijiyya
7. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal

3. wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat
4. wazaarat aS-SiHHa
5. wazaarat al-batrool
8. wazaarat at-tarbiya
9. wazaarat az-ziraa9a
10. wazaarat al-9adl

b. Substitution

'aʃti 'atalfin la-wazaarat al-maaliyya.
'I want to call the Ministry of Finance.'

1. petroleum
2. agriculture
3. interior
4. justice
5. foreign
6. finance
7. health
8. education
9. communications
10. public works
11. foreign
12. petroleum

Drill 2 Transformation: Conjugation

huw: 9inda xaTT θaani. 'He has another line.'

1. hiy
2. hum
3. hin
4. 'ana
5. 'iHna
6. 'ant
7. 'antu
8. 'anti
9. 'antayn
10. huw
11. 'iHna
12. hiy

Drill 3 Substitution

9inda xaTT θaani. 'He has another line.'

1. talafoon
2. ragam
3. risaala
4. sayyaara
5. line
6. jawaab
7. maT9am
8. madaa9a
9. maT9am
10. maw9id
11. ʃamTa
12. kitaab
13. karyuula
14. duulaab
15. bayt

### Drill 4 Transformation: singular → plural

1. 9inda xaTT θaani.
2. yiʃti yisma9 al-jawaab.
3. 'aʃti 'aHaddid maw9id.
4. jarrib ar-ragam!
5. 'aʃti 'atruk-la risaala.
6. haaði daa'irat az-ziraa9a.
7. 'at-talafoon ydugg.
8. 9a-yirja9 ba9d saa9a.
9. 'isma9! ta9aal Gudwa!
10. b-adawwir 9ala ʃugga.
11. ma yigdarʃ yiSbir.
12. yxazzin w-yil9ab baTTa.
13. yHaawil yiji.
14. ʃa-talfin saa9at xams.

### Drill 5 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'atruk-la risaala. 'I want to leave him a message.'

1. he
2. me
3. we
4. she
5. I
6. them (f.)
7. her
8. you (m.s.)
9. you (f.s.)
10. us
11. you (m.p.)
12. you (f.p.)

### Drill 6 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aHaddid maw9id ma9aa. 'I want to make an appointment with him.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. hiy
4. 'iHna
5. 'ana
6. 'ant
7. 'antu
8. 'anti
9. with them
10. with us
11. with me
12. with her

### Drill 7 Double Substitution

xalliini 'aʃuuf! 'Let me see!'

1. me -- go
2. them -- come
3. them -- return
8. him -- contact them
9. us -- make tea
10. me -- try the number

4. us -- listen
5. us -- play
6. her -- speak
7. her -- make coffee
11. me -- try again
12. them -- leave a message
13. us -- make an app't.
14. her -- hear the answer

### Drill 8 Translation

1. I am going to London tomorrow on Yemeniya.
2. Are you going direct by way of Cairo?
3. When you get there, contact my friend by phone.
4. This is very good. I do not know anyone there.
5. He will take you in his car and show you around the city.
6. They live in a large house which has six rooms.
7. We need another store. This store is very old.
8. The refrigerator doesn't work very well. Go buy a new one!
9. How old is your aunt? Is she about sixty years old?
10. Just a minute! I will go to contact him and make an appointment with him.

### Drill 9 Question -- Answer

1. kam wazaara fi l-yaman ?
2. 9indak talafoon fi l-bayt ?
3. 'anti fi 'ayy wazaara ?
4. tiʃti tiʃrab biira ?
5. 'ayn 'ibb mawjuuda ?
6. 'ant kam 9umrak ?
7. kam as-saa9a ðalHiin ?
8. 'ayn wazaarat al-xaarijiyya ?
9. man waziir al-xaarijiyya ?
10. man waziir az-ziraa9a ?
11. 'ayn daa'irat al-kahrabaa' ?
12. 'anti ti9mali fi t-tarbiya ?
13. 'ayʃ tiʃti titGadda ?
14. 'ayn tit9aʃʃa ?
15. 'ant tiSTabiH fi l-bayt ?
16. f-ayy Hiin Salaat að̣-ð̣uhr ?

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the passage on tape and then indicate whether the following statements are true or false. If the statement is false, correct it.

# UNIT 29

## I. TEXT

'ana min ta9izz fi l-yaman. darast fi san9a fi kulliyyat at-tijaara fi jaami9at San9a w-HaSalt 9ala ʃahaadat al-jaami9a fi t-tijaara. min 'awwal darast fi l-madrasa l-'ibtidaa'iyya w- ɜ-θaanawiyya fi ta9izz. tarakt San9a gabl 'arba9at siniin w-ji't la-jadda fi s-su9uudiyya w-δalHiin b-aʃtaGil mudarris fi ma9had al-'idaara l-9aamma fi r-riyaaş.

lamman wuSult haana sakant fi ʃugga b-θalaaθat makaanaat nawm 9ala sibb 'ana mutazawwij w-9indi 'usra kabiira; 'al-'awlaad gadhum jahhaal. 'aʃ-ʃugga gariiba min al-baHr. kull 'usbuu9 yawm al-xamiis w-l-jum9a jahhaali ysiiru al-baHr yil9abu w-yisbaHu.

## II. TRANSLATION

I am from Ta'z in Yemen. I studied in Sanaa; I was at the College of Commerce of Sanaa University and obtained the university degree in commerce. Before I had studied at the elementary school and the secondary school in Ta'z. I left Sanaa four years ago and came to Jadda in Saudi Arabia, and now I am working as an instructor at the Institute of Public Administration in Riyadh.

When I arrived here, I lived in a three-bedroom apartment because I am married and have a large family. The children are still young. The apartment is close to the sea. Every week, on Thursdays and Fridays, my children go to the sea to play and swim.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| daras | (yudrus) he studied |
| kulliyya | (-aat) college |
| tijaara | (-aat) commerce; trade |

| | |
|---|---|
| HaSal 9ala | (yuHSul 9ala) he obtained, got |
| ʃahaada | (-aat) degree, certificate, testimonial |
| min 'awwal | adv. before, previously |
| 'ibtidaa'i | (-yyiin) elementary; primary |
| θaanawi | (-yyiin) secondary |
| tarak | (yutruk) he left, departed |
| jaa' | (yiji) he came |
| mudarris | (-iin) instructor, teacher |
| ma9had | (ma9aahid) institute |
| 'idaara | v.n. administration |
| 9aamm | (-iin) public; common; general |
| wuSul | (yiwSal) he arrived at (a place) |
| sakan | (yuskun) to dwell, live in a place |
| jaahil | (jahhaal) child; adj. very young |
| baHr | (biHaar) sea |
| sabaH | (yisbaH) he swam |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| talfan (l-) | (ytalfin) l- to telephone (s.o.) |
| handasa | engineering; geometry |
| luGa | (-aat) language |
| 'akmal | (yikmil) he finished, completed |
| taxarraj | (yitxarraj) he graduated |
| Saff | (Sufuuf) class; classroom |
| Tabbaa9 | (-iin) typist |
| 9ammaar | (-iin) mason; construction worker |
| sabbaak | (-iin) pipe fitter s. samkari p. samaakira |
| najjaar | (-iin) carpenter |
| jazzaar | (-iin) butcher |

## V. GRAMMAR

### Perfect Tense

In previous lessons we have seen most of the forms and the uses of the imperfect tense. This UNIT introduces the other verb tense in SA, the perfect tense. The perfect tense in SA corresponds to the following English tenses: simple past, e.g., he came; present perfect, e.g., he has come; and past perfect, e.g., he had come.

We have seen that the inflectional forms of verbs in the imperfect tense are characterized by prefixes and in some cases also by suffixes. The inflectional forms of verbs in the perfect ense are characterized only by suffixes. There are ten inflectional forms of a perfect-tense verb, corresponding to the person-gender-number categories of the imperfect tense. Below is the complete conjugation of the verb daras 'to study' and its suffixes, which are the same for all perfect-tense verbs:

| | Pronoun | Verb | Meaning | Suffix |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | huw | daras | 'he studied' | 0 |
| 2. | hum | darasu | 'they (m.) studied' | -u |
| 3. | hiy | darasat | 'she studied' | -at |
| 4. | hin | darasayn | 'they (f.) studied' | -ayn |
| 5. | 'ant | darast | 'you (m.) studied' | -t |
| 6. | 'antu | darastu | 'you (m.p.) studied' | -u |
| 7. | 'anti | darasti | 'you (f.s.) studied' | -ti |
| 8. | 'antayn | darastayn | 'you (f.p.) studied' | -tayn |
| 9. | 'ana | darast | 'I studied' | -t |
| 10. | 'iHna | darasna | 'we studied' | -na |

Note the following comments on the formation of the perfect-tense forms:

a. The forms are built on and derived from the 3rd person masculine singular form of the verb, which is referred to as the stem:

*daras*, 'he studied'. This stem is used to refer to the verb as a whole, in the same way as the infinitive is used in English. Thus when we say the verb *daras*, which literally means 'he studied', we refer to what corresponds to the English infinitive 'to study'.

b. The first syllable of the first three forms and the ninth form is stressed; the second syllable of forms 5, 6, 7 and 10 is stressed; and the last syllable of forms 4 and 8 is stressed.

The verbs *HaSal 9ala* 'to obtain, get', *tarak* 'to leave, depart', *wuSul* 'to arrive at (a place)', *sakan* 'to dwell', *sabaH* 'to swim', *'akmal* 'to complete, finish', and *taxarraj* 'to graduate' are regular, and thus are conjugated like *daras* 'to study'. The verb *jaa'* 'he came' is irregular:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| huw | jaa' | 'antu | ji'tu |
| hum | jaw (or *jaa'u*) | 'anti | ji'ti |
| hiy | jaa'at | 'antayn | ji'tayn |
| hin | jayn (or *jaa'ayn*) | 'ana | ji't |
| 'ant | ji't | 'iHna | ji'na |

The stem of the 3rd person forms is *jaa'-* and that of the other stems is *ji'-*.

From now on only the perfect stems of verbs, with the imperfect forms of the 3rd person masculine singular in parentheses, will be listed in VOCABULARY and ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY of the lessons.

## NOTES ON TEXT

The stages of education in Yemen and in most other parts of the Arab World are four: elementary, preparatory, secondary, and university. They correspond, respectively, to the American stages of education: elementary -- six years; preparatory (Junior High) -- three years; secondary (Senior High) -- three years; and university -- four years.

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1    Transformtion: imperfect → perfect

(Use 'ams 'yesterday' or min 'awwal 'before, previously' in place of Gudwa 'tomorrow', kull yawm 'everyday', δalHiin 'now', etc.)

1. 'adrus 9arabi kull yawm.
2. ʃa-HSal 9ala ʃ-ʃahaada.
3. ʃ-wSal Hajja ba9d saa9a.
4. 'atruk al-9amal saa9at θintayn.
5. 9a-'aji Gudwa.
6. 'askun fi bayt kabiir.
7. 'asbaH fi l-baHr.
8. 'atalfin laha kull yawm.
9. 'akmil ʃuGli saa9at θalaaθ.
10. 'atxarraj ba9d sanatayn.
11. 'adrus fi kulliyyat at-tijaara.
12. 'adrus luGa 9arabiyya.
13. Hiin 'awSal 'atalfin-lak.
14. ʃa-kmil al-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya.

Drill 2    Transformation: imperfect → perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 1, above, to: 'ant 'you (m.s.)', and then to 'anti 'you (f.s.)'.

Drill 3    Transformation: imperfect → perfect

(Use past time expressions, e.g., 'ams 'yesterday', gabl ams 'the day before yesterday; gabl (sana, ʃahr, 'usbuu9, yawmayn, etc.) '(a year, a month, a week, two days) ago', etc.

1. 'ant tudrus kam luGa?
2. ʃa-tiHSal 9ala ziyaada.
3. f-ayy Hiin tiwSal Sa9da?
4. f-ayy Hiin tutruk aʃ-ʃuGl?
5. 9a-tiji la-S-Saff?
6. tuskun gariib min al-baHr?
7. tisbaH fi l-baHr?
8. titalfin la-kulliyyat at-tijaara?
9. tikmil kulliyyat al-handasa?
10. titxarraj haaδi s-sana?
11. tudrus luGa 'ingiliiziyya?
12. 9a-tiwsal b-T-Tayyaara?
13. 9a-tiHSal 9al ʃuGl nʃaLLa.
14. tudrus fi ma9had al-'idaara l-9amma?

### Drill 4 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 3, above, to: 'antayn 'you (f.p.)' and then to 'iHna 'we'.

### Drill 5 Double Substitution

'al-walad aS-SaGiir fi S-Saff al-'awwal w-l-kabiir fi S-Saff ar-raabi9.

'The young(er) boy is in the first grade (class) and the old(er) one is in the fourth grade (class).'

1. second -- third
2. second -- fifth
3. first -- second
4. third -- sixth
5. fourth -- sixth
6. fifth -- ninth
7. third -- fourth
8. sixth -- tenth
9. seventh -- tenth
10. first -- fourth
11. eighth -- ninth
12. eighth -- tenth

### Drill 6 Chain -- Cued

T : 2 -- 3

$S_1$ : 'aS-SaGiir fi S-Saff aθ-θaani fi l-madrasa l-'ibtidaa'iyya.
'The young one is in the second class in the elementary school.'

$S_2$ : w-l-kabiir fi S-Saff aθ-θaaliθ fi l-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya.
'And the old one is in the third class in the secondary school.'

Use cues from Drill 5, above.

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

tarakt San9a w-ji't la-jadda. 'I left Sanaa and came to Jadda.'

1. 'ant
2. 'anti
6. hum
7. hiy
11. 'antu
12. 'antayn

3. 'al-Hodayda
4. 'ana
5. huw
8. hin
9. ta9izz
10. 'iHna
13. 'ana
14. 'ibb
15. 9amraan

Drill 8 Substitution

ysiiru yil9abu w-yisbaHu. 'They go to play and swim.'

1. play cards
2. talk and drink coffee
3. eat and drink
4. work and get money
5. telephone and return
6. work as typists
7. work as pipe fitters
8. swim and play
9. finish their work
10. buy rice and meat
11. work in trade
12. study engineering
13. work as carpenters
14. work as butchers

Drill 9 Double Substitution

haa a ma9had al-'idaara l-9aamma Hagg jaami9at San9a.
'This is the Sanaa University Institute of Public Administration.'

1. Arabic Language Institute -- Sanaa University
2. College of Engineering -- University of Arizona
3. English Language Institute -- Ministry of Education
4. College of Commerce -- Riyadh University
5. Institute of Commerce -- Ministry of Commerce
6. Institute of Languages -- Sanaa University
7. Teachers' Institute -- Ministry of Education
8. Department of Mechanical Engineering -- College of Engineering
9. Department of Electrical Engineering -- College of Engineering
10. Department of French -- College of Languages

### Drill 10 Variable Substitution

sakant fi ʃugga b-θalaaθat makaanaat nawm.
'I lived in a three-bedroom apartment.'

1. ant
2. xamsat
3. Guraf
4. bayt
5. 'anti
6. 'ana
7. imperfect
8. 'iHna
9. Gurfatayn
10. 'antayn
11. perfect
12. hum
13. 'antu
14. hiy
15. 'iHna

### Drill 11 Translation

1. I can't talk on the telephone because the line is busy.
2. He has been trying to reach me for two hours.
3. They go there to play cards, talk, and have a good time.
4. What time do you (f.s.) go to work? About 8:00 a.m.
5. Who is speaking? Just a minute!
6. Wrong number! Dial the number again!
7. I'm sorry he isn't here. Would you like to leave him a message?
8. Give me the line, please! He has another line. There's no answer.
9. Let me see. He is busy all day tomorrow. Is (day) after tomorrow O.K.?
10. The Ministry of Education, the Ministry of Agriculture, and the Ministry of Public Works are big ministries. I work in the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.
11. Where did you (m.s.) live two years ago?
12. When I arrived here, I lived in an apartment by the sea.
13. They (m.) played crds, swam, and left at about 6:00 p.m.
14. We did not study in the university; we studied in the secondary school for three years.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Hasan : 'ayʃ b-ti9mal haana?
9ali : b-aʃtaGil muhandis.
Hasan : fi 'ayy wazaara?
9ali : fi wazaarat al-'aʃGaal.
Hasan : 'ayn darast handasa?
9ali : fi jaami9at al-kuwayt.
Hasan : taxarrajt haaδi s-sana?
9ali : maaʃi. taxarrajt gabl sanatayn.

2. kariima : ji'tu haana min mudda Tawiila?
layla : min muddat xamsat siniin.
kariima : min 'ayn ji'tu?
layla : ji'na min ar-rawδ̣a.
kariima : 'ayn sakantu?
layla : fi gaa9 al-yahuud.
kariima : w-anti bi-tudrusi δalHiin?
layla : 'akmalt al-jaami9a w-taxarrajt min kulliyyat al-mu9allimaat.
kariima : 'ayʃ bi-ti9mali δalHiin?
layla : mudarrisa fi l-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya.

# UNIT 30

## I. TEXT

### fi maT9am balgiis

maT9am balgiis mawjuud fi fundug saba' fi t-taHriir. 'ams al-9aʃi 'ana w-Sadiigi Hasan ruHna la-maT9am balgiis 9alasibb na'kul. 'al-maT9am Gaali gawi bass 'al-'akl hownaak Tayyib. kunna jaawi9iin w-9aaTiʃiin w-'ana kunt taa9ib ba9da. 'al-jaww kaan miGbir. 'akalna marag w-rizz w-laHm. 'ana ʃribt biira w-Sadiigi ʃirib baarid. ba9d al-'akl 'akalna Halaawa. ba9da ʃribna gahwa: Sadiigi ʃirib kaafi w-ana ʃribt bunn. gult la-lmubaaʃir: "'iddii-li l-faatuura!" Sadiigi gaal: "'al-Hisaab 9alayy." gult: "maaʃi." dafa9t Hisaab al-maT9am. ba9d al-9aʃaa' ruHna la-s-siinama. kaan fii film 'amriiki. Sadiigi gaal: "'ant δ̣ayyaftani 9ala l-9aʃaa'. θaman at-taδaakir 9alayy." ba9d as-siinama sirna l-bayt. 'ana kunt taa9ib gawi w-numt fiisa9.

## II. TRANSLATION

### At Bilgis Restaurant

Bilgis Restaurant is in the Sheba Hotel in Tahrir Square. Last night I and my friend Hasan went to Bilgis Restaurant in order to eat. The restaurant is very expensive but the food there is delicious. We were hungry and thirsty, and I was tired too. The weather was dusty. We had meat broth, rice, and meat. I had beer and my friend had a soft drink. After the food, we had dessert. Later on, we had coffee: my friend had coffee and I had Yemeni coffee. I said to the waiter, "Give me the bill!" My friend said, "The bill is on me." I said, "No." I paid the restaurant bill. After dinner, we went to the cinema. There was an American film. My friend said, "You treated me to dinner. The tickets are on me." After the cinema we went home. I was very tired, and fell asleep fast.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 'ams al-9aʃi | adv. last night | kaan fii | there was; there were |
| raaH | (yaruuH) to go | film | ('aflaam) film, movie |
| 'akal | (ya'kul) to eat | ʃirib | (yiʃrab) to drink |
| kaan | (ykuun) to be | biira | beer |
| jaawi9 | (-iin) hungry | Halaawa | dessert |
| 9aaTiʃ | (-iin) thirsty | gaal | (yguul) to say |
| taa9ib | (-iin) tired | dafa9 | (yidfa9) to pay |
| marag | meat broth; gravy | siinama | cinema |
| δ̣ayyaf (9ala) | (yδ̣ayyif) to entertain s.o. (to s.th.); to treat s.o. as a guest | | |
| θaman | ('aθmaan) price, cost; value | | |
| saar | (ysiir) to go; to leave; to walk | | |
| naam | (ynuum) to fall asleep; to sleep | | |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| dars | (duruus) lesson | 'al'usbuu9 al-maaδ̣i | last week |
| ʃaaf | (yʃuuf) to see | 'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaδ̣i | lst month |
| ta9allam | (yit9allam) to learn | 'al-9aam al-maaδ̣i | last year |
| takallam | (yitkallam) to speak | 'as-sana l-maaδ̣iya | last year |
| katab | (yuktub) to write | 'as-sabt al-maaδ̣i | last Saturday |
| li9ib | (yil9ab) to play | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| maaδ̣i | adj. (-yiin) past; last (e.g., last month) |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

The verbs 'akal 'to eat', katab 'to write' and dafa9 'to pay' are conjugated like daras 'to study'.

ʃirib 'to drink' and li9ib 'to play' are irregular. Below is the conjugation of ʃirib.

huw ʃirib
hum ʃirbu
hiy ʃirbat

hin ʃirbayn
'ant ʃribt
'antu ʃribtu
'iHna ʃiribna

'anti ʃiribti
'antayn ʃiribtayn
'ana ʃiribt

There are six more verbs in this lesson: kaan 'to be' gaal 'to say', raaH 'to go', ʃaaf 'to see', naam 'to sleep', and saar 'to go; to walk; to leave'. This class of verbs is known as hollow verbs; they are characterized by the long medial vowel -aa- followed by a final consonant. The first five verbs have two stems: CaaC-, which is used with the third person endings, and CuC-, which is used with the endings of the other persons. Below is the conjugation of kaan 'to be':

huw kaan
hum kaanu
hiy kaanat

hin kaanayn
'ant kunt
'antu kuntu
'iHna kunna

'anti kunti
'antayn kuntayn
'ana kunt

saar 'to go; to walk; to leave' also has two stems: CaaC- and Cic-: saar, saaru, saarat, saarayn, sirt, sirtu, sirti, sirtayn, sirt, and sirna.

2. kaan fii 'there was; there were'

Note that fii with the stressed long vowel ii means "there is; there are". The perfect of fii is kaan fii. kaan in this construction is invariable, i.e., not inflected for gender or number:

| | |
|---|---|
| kaan fii film. | 'There was a movie.' |
| kaan fii 'aflaam. | 'There were movies.' |
| kaan fii TamaaTiis. | 'There were tomatoes.' |

The negatives of fii and kaan fii are maabiʃ and ma kaanʃ fii, respectively.

| | |
|---|---|
| maabiʃ film. | 'There's no movie.' |
| makaanʃ fii film. | 'There was no movie.' |
| ma kaanʃ fii naas. | 'There were no people.' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

Use past time expressions, e.g., 'al-'usbuu9, 'aʃ-ʃahr, 'al-9aam, 'as-sabt (al-maaδ̣i) '(last) week, month, year, Saturday' in place of the present or future time expressions.

1. 9a-yʃuuf al-film Gudwa.
2. ynuum saa9at Hda9ʃ.
3. yitkallam 9arabi naahi.
4. yit9allam handasa.
5. 9a-yidfa9 al-fuluus Gudwa.
6. yidfa9 al-Hisaab.
7. ysiir al-bayt δalHiin.
8. huw jaawi9 δalHiin.
9. yudrus 'idaara fi l-ma9hud.
10. 9a-yutruk w-ysiir.
11. yiwSal Sa9da l-yawm.
12. yuktub 'isma b-l-9arabi.
13. yguul ma9 inda 9amal.
14. yiʃrab kaafi fi l-fundug.
15. 9a-yδ̣ayyifni 9ala l-9aʃaa'.
16. huw 9aaTiʃ δalHiin.

### Drill 2 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 1, above, to hiy, then to huw.

### Drill 3 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

1. 'iHna nidfa9 al-Hisaab.
2. 'aT-TamaaTis raxiiS.
3. hum taa9ibiin kaθiir.
4. maabiʃ film naahi l-yawm.
5. ʃa-ruuH al-kulliyya Gudwa.
6. hin yiʃrabayn w-ya'kulayn.
7. 9a-yruuHu l-baHr al-yawm.
8. 9indahum 9amal Gudwa.
9. 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm.
10. huw yguul 9inda fuluus.
11. 'ant tuskun haana?
12. 'anuum as-saa9a θna9ʃ.
13. 9a-ytalfin w-yiji.
14. fii xamsat Tabbaa9iin.
15. 9a-yiwSalu Gudwa S-SubH.
16. 9a-yiHSal 9ala ʃ-ʃahaada.

### Drill 4 Chain -- Cued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | raaH al-madrasa ? | 'Did he go to school?' |
| $S_1$ : | raaH al-madrasa ? | 'Did he go to school?' |
| $S_2$ : | la. ma raaHʃ. | 'No, he didn't go.' |

1. kaan haana 'ams ?
2. ʃribt biira ?
3. dafa9t θaman al-kutub ?
4. ruHt as-siinama ?
5. kuntu jaawi9iin ?
6. sakantu fi ʃugga ?
7. darasti 9arabi ?
8. katabti 9inwaaniʃ ?
9. talfant la-'ahlak ?
10. numt kull al-layl ?
11. sabaHt fi l-baHr ?
12. kunt taa9ib ?
13. taxarrajt al-9aam al-maaδ̣i ?
14. ji't al-xamiis al-maaδ̣i ?

### Drill 5 Transformation: negative command → negative statement

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T: | laa truuH as-siinama! | 'Don't go to the cinema!' |
| S: | ma raaHʃ as-siinama. | 'He didn't go to the cinema.' |

1. laa tnuum haana!
2. laa tutruk al-ma9had!
3. laa tʃuufi l-film!
4. laa tuktub haana!
5. laa tudrus haaδi l-luGa!
6. laa tsiiri ma9aahum!
7. laa truuH hownaak!
8. laa tkuun majnuun!
9. laa titxarraj fi S-Sayf!
10. laa ta'kul kaθiir!
11. laa tiji Gudwa!
12. laa tguul haaδa Sa9b!
13. laa tguulu maabiʃ!
14. laa tidfa9 al-Hisaab!

### Drill 6 Chain -- Cued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | institute | |
| $S_1$ : | man kaan fi l-ma9had ? | 'Who was at the Institute?' |
| T : | director | |
| $S_2$ : | 'al-mudiir kaan fi l-ma9had. | 'The director was at the Institute.' |

1. apartment -- pipe fitter
2. Hudaida -- mason
3. class -- students
4. sea -- boys
5. cinema -- they (m.)
6. college -- teachers (f.)
7. office -- typists
8. work -- workman
9. department -- secretary (f.)
10. house -- carpenters
11. shop -- butcher
12. home -- my father
13. kitchen -- my mother
14. living room -- my friends

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw kaan hownaak yawm as-sabt. 'He was there on Saturday.'

1. 'ana
2. 'as-sabbaak
3. on Friday
4. at 1:30 p.m.
5. 'al-banaat
6. on Thursday
7. at 5:15 p.m.
8. 'ant
9. 'iHna
10. negative
11. on Tuesday
12. 'ant
13. hum
14. hin

Drill 8 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. maa 9inwaan dars θalaaθiin ?
2. 'ayn mawjuud maT9am balgiis ?
3. f-ayy Hiin ruHna la-maT9am balgiis ?
4. maT9am balgiis raxiiS ? kayf al-'akl hownaak ?
5. man kaan jaawi9 w-9aaTiʃ ? man kaan taa9ib ?
6. kayf kaan al-jaww ?
7. 'ayʃ 'akalna ? 'akalna dajaaj w-Huut ?
8. man ʃirib biira gabl al-'akl ?
9. Hasan ʃirib baarid gabl al-'akl 'aw ba9d al-'akl ?
10. man ʃirib bunn ba9d al-'akl ?
11. man gaal, "'al-Hisaab 9alayy." ?
12. man dafa9 Hisaab al-maT9am ?
13. 'ayn sirna ba9d al-9aʃaa' ?

14. man dafa9 θaman at-taδaakir ?
15. man naam fiisa9 ?

Drill 9 Transformation: singular → plural

1. kunt jaawi9 kaθiir.
2. huw daras 9arabi.
3. δ̣ayyafta 9ala l-9aʃaa'.
4. hiy ʃaafat al-film.
5. numt fi l-fundug.
6. f-ayy Hiin wuSult ?
7. talfant-la 'ams al-9aʃi.
8. ta9allamat luGatayn.
9. 'ana sakant fi ʃugga.
10. hiy ma kaanatʃ fi S-Saff.
11. ma kaan fii film naahi.
12. ma kuntʃ jaawi9 ?
13. Hiin 'awSal 'atalfin-lak
14. daras handasa fi 'amriika.

Drill 10 Translation

1. When I get a job, I will buy a new car.
2. When he went there, he had a beer.
3. I have to see that film when it comes to Sanaa.
4. We went to the movies to see "Lawrence of Arabia".
5. Last year I went to Cairo in the summer.
6. When he got here, he went to eat because he was very hungry and thirsty.
7. Give me the line, please! I can't because he has another line.
8. I have been trying to reach you for two hours, and the phone was busy.
9. This is the Ministry of Public Works. You have the wrong number.
10. I am sorry! What's his number? I don't know. Call the operator.

Drill 11 Translation

1. We went to see the movie.
2. They went to the restaurant last night in order to eat kabob.
3. She came here in order to see the school.
4. I went to Bilgis Restaurant to have a beer because I was very thirsty.

5. Last week we went to Taiz in order to see our folks.
6. Last year I traveled to Kuwait to see my brother.
7. She goes to the fish market every day to buy fish.
8. He does all of this for the sake of his country.
9. They are studying Arabic so that they might be able to speak Arabic well.
10. He is a very good man. I know that he would like to help you.

Drill 12 Transformation

Change the text of UNIT 30 into the imperfect tense.

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the passage on tape and then summarize it in approximately 100 words.

# UNIT 31

## REVIEW

## DRILLS

### Drill 1 Aural Comprehension

Listen twice to the following passage on tape, and then give complete answers to the questions below.

9indi Sadiig 'isma SaaliH min δamaar fi l-yaman. Sadiigi SaaliH mutazawwij w-9inda θalaaθat jahhaal: walad waaHid w-bintayn. SaaliH 9umra 'iθnayn w-θalaaθiin sana walaakin zawjata tagiyya 9umraha 9iʃriin sana bass. tagiyya rabbat bayt ("housewife"). SaaliH yiʃtaGil ʃaagi fi wazaarat al-'aʃGaal. ya'xuδ 'alfayn ryaal fi ʃ-ʃahr bass.

'abu SaaliH w-'umma yuskunu ma9 SaaliH w-'usrata. 'al-bayt maaʃ kabiir kaθiir; yitkawwan min θalaaθat Guraf nawm bass: Gurfa Hagg SaaliH w-zawjata w-θ-θaaniya Hagg al-9iyaal w-θ-θaaliθa Hagg 'abu SaaliH w-'umma. maabiʃ diiwaan w-maabiʃ Gassaala fi l-bayt. fii θallaaja w-Hammaam waaHid bass.

1. ma 'ism Sadiigi ?
2. min 'ayn SaaliH ?
3. kam walad 9inda ?
4. kam 9umr SaaliH ?
5. maa 'ism marata ?
6. kam sana 9umraha ?
7. 'ayn ti9mal tagiyya ?
8. 'ayʃ yiʃtaGil SaaliH ?
9. kam ya'xuδ fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
10. kam ta'xuδ fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
11. man yuskun ma9aahum ?
12. bayt SaaliH kabiir ?
13. kam makaan fii ?
14. kam makaan la-l-9iyaal ?
15. fii θallaaja w-Gassaala ?
16. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ?

## Drill 2 Reproduction

Reproduce the aural comprehension passage in Drill 1 with the following key words:

SaaliH -- δamaar -- 9iyaal -- θalaaθiin
9iʃriin -- tagiyya -- bayt -- ʃaagi
ryaal -- bayt -- Guraf -- θallaaja

## Drill 3 Aural Comprehension

Listen twice to the following passage on tape, and then indicate whether the statements below are true or false. If the statement is false, say, "GalaT" and correct it.

'ana baHrayni min al-manaama. darast ingiliizi fi daar al-mu9allimiin sanatayn. HaSalt 9ala ʃ-ʃahaada l-9aam al-maaδ̣i. 'ana mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah. HaSalt 9ala ʃuGl mu9allim fi s-su9uudiyya. 'ana ma ruHtʃ 'abu δ̣abi min mudda Tawiila. sirna 'ana w-9aa'ilati l-maTaar. dafa9t θaman at-taδaakir bass kaan 9indana ʃimiiT kaθiira. dafa9t tagriib 9iʃriin diinaar baHrayni Hagg az-ziyaada w-diinaarayn δ̣ariiba Hagg al-maTaar. tarakna l-maTaar w-wuSulna 'abu δ̣abi ba9d nuSS saa9a 9ala sibb 'abu δ̣abi gariiba min al-baHrayn. 9indi Sadiig fi 'abu δ̣abi. kunna δ̣uyuuf 9inda. sakanna ma9aa w-ma9 9aa'ilata ʃahr w-ba9da HaSalna 9ala bayt min al-Hukuuma. 'al-bayt fii kull ʃay': θallaaja w-Gassaala w-magaa9id w-karaasi w-karaayil. 'al-bayt SaGiir walaakin 'iHna ma niʃti bayt kabiir 9ala sibb ma 9indanaaʃ 9iyaal w-'ahlana ma yuskunu ma9aana.

'al-jum9a l-maaδ̣i sirna 'ana w-zawjati w-Sadiigi w-'usrata l-baHr. li9ibna w-sabaHna w-ba9da sirna na'kul. 'akalna Huut w-ʃiribna biira. Sadiigi dafa9 al-fuluus. ba9d al-'akl ruHna s-siinama 9ala Hisaabi 'ana. kaan fii film 9arabi. yumkin 'ant ma ʃuftʃ 'aflaam 9arabiyya. 'ana min mudda Tawiila ma ʃuftʃ film 9arabi. 'al-film kaan naahi.

'al-9iyaal 'i9jabhum al-film kaθiir. ba9d as-siinama kunna taa9ibiin kaθiir. sirna l-bayt w-numna 9ala sibb kunna taa9ibiin.

1. darast 'ingiliizi fi l-jaami9a fi l-manaama.
2. HaSalt 9ala ʃ-ʃahaada gabl sana.
3. 'ana mutazawwij w-9indi 'usra kabiira.
4. gadli 'aʃtaGil fi 'abu δabi sanatayn.
5. 'ana w-zawjati ruHna la-'abu δabi b-s-sayyaara.
6. min al-manaama la-'abu δ̣abi tagriib nuSS saa9a b-s-sayyaara.
7. dafa9t 9iʃriin diinaar Hagg az-ziyaada w-diinaarayn δ̣ariiba.
8. sakanna ma9 Sadiigi w-'usrata sana waaHida.
9. HaSalt 9ala bayt min al-Hukuuma ba9d ʃahr waaHid.
10. 'ahli w-'ahl zawjai yuskunu ma9aana fi l-bayt.
11. sirna ma9 Sadiigi w-9aa'ilata l-baHr gabl 'usbuu9.
12. li9ibna w-sabHna w-ruHna s-siinama.
13. 'akalna rizz w-laHm w-ʃribna ʃaahi.
14. Sadiigi dafa9 θaman af-taδaakir w-l-'akl kaan 9ala Hisaabi.
15. ʃufna film 9arabi w-kaan al-film naahi.
16. ba9d al-film sirna bayt Sadiigi w-li9ibna baTTa.

### Drill 4 Reproduction

Reproduce the listening comprehension passage in Drill 3, above, with the help of the following key words:

baHrayni -- 'ingiliizi -- ʃahaada -- mu9allim
mutazawwij -- saar -- Tayyaara -- ʃimiiT
δ̣ariiba -- taδaakir -- nuSS saa9a -- Sadiig
δ̣uyuuf -- HaSal 9ala -- SaGiir -- θallaaja
baHr -- Huut -- biira -- siinama
Hisaab -- riji9 -- naam -- taa9ib

## Note to Teacher

Ask individual students to tell short stories or describe events of daily occurrence. Members of the class are encouraged to ask questions or comment on the stories told or the events described.

# UNIT 32

## I. TEXT

### Hayya-LLa man jaa'

'afraaH : Hayya-LLa man jaa'! 'al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama!
huda : 'aLLaah ysallimʃ. w-y9aafiiʃ.
'afraaH : kayf 'anti ?
huda : Tayyiba l-Hamdu lillaah.
'afraaH : 'ayn kunti ? ma 'absartiʃ amin sab9 sanawaat.
huda : gad tammayt al-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya gabl sittat sanawaat w-ba9da HaSSalt munHa 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma w-sirt 'amriika.
'afraaH : 'ayʃ ta9allamti hownaak ?
huda : ta9allamt 'ingiliizi w-tarbiya. ba9dima taxarrajt w-'axaδt aʃ-ʃahaada riji9t la-l-yaman w-darrast fi daar al-mu9allimaat muddat sanatayn.
'afraaH : w-ba9da jiiti haana ?
huda : na9am. gad-li haana sanatayn.
'afraaH : 'ayn ti9maliin δalHiin ?
huda : δalHiin b-aʃtaGil fi l-'iδaa9a fi gism al-'ingiliizi.
'afraaH : Hayya-LLa biiʃ.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Welcome Back

Afrah : Welcome back! Praise be to God for a safe return!
Huda : God protect you.
Afrah : How are you?
Huda : I'm fine. Thank you.
Afrah : Were have you been? I haven't seen you for seven years.
Huda : I finished the secondary school six years ago, and then I got a government scholarship and went to America.

Afrah : What did you learn there?

Huda : I learned English and education. After I had graduated and obtained a degree, I returned to Yemen and taught at the Women's Teacher Training Colege for two years.

Afrah : And you returned here later on?

Huda : Yes. I have been here for two years.

Afrah : Where are you working now?

Huda : I am working now at the Broadcasting Station in the English section.

Afrah : Welcome!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| Hayya | (yHayyi) to welcome s.o.; to greet s.o. |
| man | rel. pron. who; he who |
| salaama | v.n. safety; security |
| sallam | (ysallim) to protect, keep s.o. safe |
| 9aafa | (y9aafi) to keep s.o. safe; to restore good health to s.o. |
| 'absar | (yibsir) to see |
| tamm | (ytimm) to finish, complete |
| HaSSal | (yHaSSil) to get, obtain |
| munHa | (munaH) scholarship, fellowship |
| riji9 | (yirja9) to return, come back |
| darras | (ydarris) to teach |
| daar | (duur) house, home; building |
| daar al-mu9allimaat | (duur -) the women's teacher training college |
| ʃtaGal | (yiʃtaGil) to work |
| 'iδaa9a | v.n. broadcasting |
| 'al-'iδaa9a | (-aat) the broadcasting station |
| gism | ('agsaam) section; part |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| tfaagad | (yitfaagad) to check, inspect |
| tasallaf | (yitsallaf) to borrow |
| Gallag | (yGalliG) to shut, close |
| tazawwaj | (yitzawwaj) to get married; to marry s.o. |
| 'i9jab | (yi9jib) to please s.o. |
| 9imil | (yi9mal) to do; to make |
| HaTT | (yHuTT) to put |
| ba9dima | conj. after |
| 9indima | conj. when, at the time when |
| gablima | conj. before |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

The verbs rIji9 'to return' and 9imil 'to make; to do' are conjugated like ʃirib 'to drink'.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| huw riji9 | hin rij9ayn | 'anti riji9ti |
| hum rij9u | 'ant riji9t | 'antayn riji9tayn |
| hiy rij9at | 'antu riji9tu | 'ana riji9t |
| | 'iHna riji9na | |

Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' and 9aafa 'to keep s.o. safe; to restore (s.o.) to good health' are defective verbs because of the final weak -a. However, their conjugation is regular in SA, except that 9aafa is normally used with reference to God only:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9aafaani LLaah | 'God kept me safe; God restored good health to me.' |
| 'aLLaah y9aafiik! | 'God keep you safe! God restore good health to you.' |

Below is the conjugation of Hayya:

huw Hayya
hum Hayyu
hiy Hayyat

hin Hayyayn
'ant Hayyayt
'antu Hayyaytu
iHna Hayyayna

'anti Hayyayti
'antayn Hayyaytayn
'ana Hayyayt

The phrase Hayyaak aLLa! or 'aLLaah yHayyiik means 'God preserve your life!' Similarly 9aafaak aLLaah! or 'aLLaah y9aafiik! 'God keep you safe! God restore good health to you!'

tamm 'to complete, finish, and HaTT 'to put' are doubled verbs because of the final identical consonants -mm and -TT. Below is the conjugation of tamm.

huw tamm
hum tammu
hiy tammat

hin tammayn
'ant tammayt
'antu tammaytu
'iHna tammayna

'anti tammayti
'antayn tammaytayn
'ana tammayt

## 2. Perfect Tense with Suffixed Pronouns

When a suffixed pronoun is added to a perfect-tense or imperfect-tense verb, it functions as the object of that verb. The verb suffixed pronouns and the noun suffixed pronouns are identical (see UNIT 7, GRAMMAR 1), except for the suffixed pronoun -ni that corresponds to 'I'.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| darrasa | 'He taught him.' | -a |
| darrashum | 'He taught them (m.).' | -hum/ahum |
| darrasha | 'He taught her.' | -ha/-aha |
| darrashin | 'He taught them (f.).' | -hin/-ahin |
| darrasak | 'He taught you (m.s.).' | -ak |
| darraskum | 'He taught you (m.p.).' | -kum/-akum |
| darrasiʃ | 'He taught you (f.s.).' | -iʃ |
| darraskin | 'He taught you (f.p.).' | -kin/-akin |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| darrasni | 'He taught me.' | -ni |
| darrasna | 'He taught us.' | -na/-ana |

If the verb form ends with a vowel, e.g., Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.', darasti 'you (f.s.) studied', darastu 'you (m.p.) studied', darasna 'we studied', etc., the vowel is lengthened before adding the suffixed pronoun. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| darastii | 'You (f.s.) studied it.' |
| darastuu | 'You (m.p.) studied it.' |
| darasnaa | 'We studied it.' |

Note that darasti + -a → darastii 'You (f.s.) studied it.'
drastu + -a → darastuu 'You (m.p.) studied it.'

Other examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'absarnaahum | 'We saw them (m.p.)' |
| 'absartuuna | 'You (m.p.) saw us.' |
| 'i9jabuuʃ | 'They (m.p.) plesed you (f.s.), i.e., you (f.s.) liked them.' |

### 3. The Verb *'i9jab*

For the meaning and use of the verb 'i9jab 'to please s.o.' see UNIT 14, 3. Special Constructions.

### NOTES ON TEXT

daar usually means 'house, home' and is synonymous with bayt, though bayt is more commonly used. daar, however, is used in a construct phrase to mean 'the building of, the home of (e.g., orphans, books, broadcasting, etc.). Thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| daar al-mu9allimaat | 'the women's teacher training college' |
| daar al-kutub | 'the public library' |
| daar al-Hamd | lit., "the house of praise" -- name of a hotel in Sanaa |
| daar al-'iδaa9a | 'the broadcasting station' |
| daar al-'aytaam | 'the home of orphans, i.e., the orphanage' |

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

$S_1$ : Hayya-LLa man jaa'! 'al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama.
'Welcome back! Praise be to God for a safe return!'
$S_2$ : 'aLLaah ysallimk w-y9aafiik! 'God protect you!'

Drill 2 Chain

$S_1$ : kayf ant ? 'How are you ?'
$S_2$ : Tayyib al-Hamdu lillaah. 'I am fine. Thank you.'

Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

$S_1$ : 'ayn kunti ? 'Where were you (f.s.)?
T : at home
$S_2$ : kunt fi l-bayt. 'I was at home.'

1. at the training college
2. at the broadcasting station
3. at the college
4. at the engineering college
5. at the language institute
6. at the health department
7. in the apartment
8. on the telephone
9. at the garage
10. in class
11. with my family
12. at the market
13. at work
14. with the pipe fitter

### Drill 4 Repetition

tamm al-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya w-HaSSal munHa.
'He finished high school and got a scholarship.'

1. tammayt -- HaSSalt
2. tammayti -- HaSSalti
3. tammaytu -- HaSSaltu
4. tammaytayn -- HaSSaltayn
5. tammu -- HaSSalu
6. tammayn -- HaSSalayn
7. tammayna -- HaSSalna
8. tammat -- HaSSalat
9. tamm -- HaSSal
10. tammayt -- HaSSalt

### Drill 5 Variable Substitution

tasallaf fuluus w-tazawwaj. 'He borrowed money and got married.'

1. 'ant
2. bought a house
3. 'ana
4. bought a car
5. hum
6. married
7. left
8. travelled
9. 'antu
10. married
11. huw
12. came
13. 'iHna
14. 'antu
15. hum

### Drill 6 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

1. huw yHuTT fuluus fi l-bank kull ʃahr.
2. 'ana 'axalliS al-9amal ba9d saa9a.
3. hiy tHaSSil munHa ba9dima tirja9.
4. 'iHna nitimm al-madrasa gablima nitazawwaj.
5. hum yHaSSilu fuluus ba9dima yiʃtaGilu.
6. huw ydarris fi daar al-mu9allimiin.
7. hiy tdarris fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
8. yi9jibhum al-jaww al-baarid fi S-Sayf.
9. y9mal ʃaahi ba9dima yirja9 min al-9amal.
10. 'ayʃ ti9malu ? man yiji l-yawm ?
11. 9a-yirja9 ba9dima ytimm 9amala.
12. huw fi l-'iδaa9a w-t-talavizyoon.

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

faaTima darrasat fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
'Fatima taught at the Women's Teacher Training College.'

1. 9aa'iʃa
2. Zaid
3. Hasan
4. negative
5. 'ana
6. 'iHna
7. learned
8. worked
9. positive
10. 'inti
11. hum
12. hin

### Drill 8 Completion

huw jaa' 9ala sibb ... 'He came in order to ...'

1. take money from the bank.
2. finish his work before noon.
3. see the film before he returns home.
4. obtain a degree in English and education.
5. borrow money and get married.
6. check the tires and the battery.
7. close the store and go home.
8. close the door.
9. study commerce and obtain a degree.
10. eat dinner with us.
11. get his car after the mechanic checks it.
12. work at the Yemeni Broadcasting Station.
13. play and swim in the sea.
14. teach engineering at Sanaa University.
15. work as a typist in the Ministry of Agriculture.
16. deposit YR. 1,000 in the bank.

### Drill 9 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

1. 'ant tuskun fi ʃugga ?
2. huw fi l-9amal al-yawm.

7. maabiʃ 9amal al-yawm.
8. 9indima yiji yiHaSSil 9amal.

3. 'ant jaawi9 δalHiin ?
4. hiy 9aaTiʃa δalHiin ?
5. hum yitsallafu fuluus.
6. maabiʃ jawaab.

9. 'ana 'adrus fi daar al-mu9allimiin.
10. hiy fi l-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya.
11. yi9jibak haaδa l-9amal ?
12. 'al-bank yGallig saa9at θintayn.

Drill 10 Questions (Based on Text)

1. gabl kam sana tammat huda l-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya ?
2. man HaSSal munHa 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma ?
3. 'ayn saarat huda ?
4. 'ayʃ ta9allamat huda fi 'amriika ?
5. 'ayn darrasat huda ba9dima taxarrajat ?
6. kam sana darrast fi daar al-mu9allimaat ?
7. 'ayn tiʃtaGil huda δalHiin ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. jamiila : 'ayn ti9maliin δalHiin ya 'amiina ?
'amiina : fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
jamiila : kam sana gad-liʃ hownaak ?
'amiina : sanatayn.
jamiila : kam ta'xuδiin fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
'amiina : 'alfayn ryaal.
jamiila : 'anti mirtaaHa hownaak ?
'amiina : mirtaaHa kaθiir al-Hamdu lillaah.

2. 9ali : 'ayn kunt ya Hasan ? ma 'absarnaakʃ min mudda Tawiila. Hayya-LLa man jaa'!
Hasan : 'aLLaah ysallimk w-y9aafiik. kunt fi s-su9uudiyya xams sanawaat.
9ali : 'ayʃ kunt tiʃtaGil ?
Hasan : 9ammaar.
9ali : tazawwajt ?
Hasan : tazawwajt gablima riji9t.

9ali : 9indak 'awlaad ?
Hasan : bintayn w-walad.

# UNIT 33

## I. TEXT

### SaaliH mariiδ̣

9ali : maa lak ya SaaliH ? mariiδ̣ ?

SaaliH : maaʃi. maaʃ mariiδ̣ gawi bass gad 'ana taa9ib, ma ragadtʃ Taayib Tuul al-layl.

9ali : haaδa ma ySuHHʃ! ruH la-l-Hakiim! 'aLLaah yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik!

SaaliH : gad ruHt 'ams. tfaagadni l-Hakiim w-gaal fiini Humma. 'addaa-li dawaa' w-gaal, "sta9mil haaδa d-dawaa' w-'ibga fi l-bayt yawmayn!"

9ali : naahi. xuδ 'ijaaza w-saafir la-l-gaahira 'aw landan.

SaaliH : gad gaddamt Talab Hagg 'ijaaza w-l-mudiir laazim 9alayh ywaafig.

9ali : 'al-mudiir rajjaal Tayyib. yiʃti ysaa9id kull waaHid. huw saa9adni l-9aam al-maaδ̣i: HaSSalt ziyaada fi ma9aaʃi.

SaaliH : gaal 'inna maabiʃ 9inda 'ayy maani9.

9ali : 'ayn tiʃti tsaafir ?

SaaliH : 'al-gaahira nʃaaLLa.

9ali : waHdak 'aw ma9 jamaa9a ?

SaaliH : waHdi. haakaδa 'aHsan. 'ana ba-saafir waHdi yawmiya.

## II. TRANSLATION

### SaliH Is Ill

Ali : What's the matter with you, SaliH? Are you ill?

SaliH : No. I am not very ill, but I am tired. I did not sleep well throughout the whole night.

Ali : This is not all right. Go see the doctor! God cure you and give you good health!

SaliH : I went yesterday. The doctor examined me and said that I had fever. He prescribed medicine for me and said, "Use this medicine and stay at home for two days."

Ali : Good! Take leave and travel to Cairo or London!

SaliH : I submitted an application for leave and the director had to approve (it).

Ali : The director is a good man. He likes to help everyone. He helped me last year: I got an increase in my salary.

SaliH : He said that he did not have any objection.

Ali : Where would you like to travel?

SaliH : Cairo, God willing.

Ali : Alone or with a group of people?

SaliH : Alone. It's better this way. I always travel alone.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| maa l-? | What's the matter with ...? |
| ragad | (yurgud) to sleep |
| Tayyib | adv. well |
| Tuul | v.n. length; tallness |
| Tuul al-layl | adv. throughout the whole night, all night long |
| SaHH | (ySuHH) to be all right; to be allowed, permissible |
| Hakiim | (Hukamaa') medical doctor. syn. Tabiib |
| ʃafa | (yiʃfi) to cure, heal s.o., restore s.o. to health |
| tfaagad | (yitfaagad) to examine s.o. (medically) |
| Humma | fever, high temperature |
| 'adda (l-) | (y'addi) to give s.o. (s.th.) |
| dawaa' | ('adwiya) medicine |
| sta9mal | (yista9mil) to use, utilize |
| bigi | (yibga) to stay, remain |
| xuδ | imper. Take (m.s.)! |
| 'ijaaza | (-aat) leave, vacation |
| saafar | (ysaafir) to travel |
| gaddam | (ygaddim) to present, submit, e.g., an application |
| Talab | (-aat) application; request. |

| | |
|---|---|
| gaddam Talab | to submit an application, apply |
| waafag (9ala) | (ywaafig) to approve (s.th.) |
| saa9ad | (ysaa9id) to help, assist |
| ma9aaʃ | (-aat) salary; stipend |
| 'inna | conj. that |
| maani9 | (mawaani9) objection |
| waHd- | alone, by oneself |
| haakaδa | adv. in this manner, this way |
| 'aHsan | elat. adj. better; best |
| yawmiya | adv. always |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| gaabal | (ygaabil) to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o. |
| jaawab | (yjaawib) to answer (e.g., a letter, a question, the phone, etc.) |
| xaabar | (yxaabir) to telephone |
| xaraj | (yuxruj) to go out, come out, get out |
| daxal | (yudxul) to enter |
| manzuul | (-iin) having a cold. syn. mazkuum |
| GaaliT | (-iin) mistaken, having made a mistake |
| nuzuul | v.n. cold., state of having a cold. syn. zukaam |

## V. GRAMMAR

1. maa l-, with a suffixed pronoun or a noun after it, means, "What's the matter with ...?" Thus:

| | |
|---|---|
| maa l-ak ? | 'What's the matter with you (m.s.)?' |
| maa l-akum ? | 'What's the matter with you (m.p.)?' |
| maa l-iʃ | 'What's the matter with you (f.s.)?' |
| maa l-9ali ? | 'What's the matter with Ali?' |
| maa l-al-jaami9a ? | 'What's the matter with the university?' |

2. SaHH imperfect ySuHH, is usually used in the negative to mean, "It's not all right; it shouldn't happen; it cannot be": ma ySuHHʃ. The imperfect may introduce a sentence or a phrase with the meaning of, "It is possible, permissible to ..."

ma ySuHHʃ truuH. 'It is not possible for you to leave.'
'You shouldn't leave.'
ma ySuHHʃ aL-xuruuj min haana. 'Exit is not permitted from here.'
ySuHH 'agaddim Talab la-l-mudiir ?
'Is it possible for me to apply to the director?
ySuHH ad-duxuul min haana ? 'Is it permitted to enter from here ?'

3. 'inna is a particle which may be used without a suffixed pronoun, in which case it corresponds in meaning to "that" in such constructions as "He said that; he saw tht; he informed me that," etc. With a suffixed pronoun it means "that he, I, they", etc.

gaal 'inniʃ saafarti. 'He said that you (f.s.) travelled.'
gaal 'inna d-dawaa' Gaali. 'He said that the medicine was expensive.'

### 4. Perfect Tense

a. The verbs saafar 'to travel', waafag 'to approve s.th.', saa9ad 'to help, assist', gaabal 'to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o.' jaawab 'to answer', and xaabar 'to telephone' are regular verbs. The full conjugation of saatar 'to travel' is:

huw saafar
hum ______u
hiy ______at

hin ______an
'ant ______t
'antu ______tu
'iHna ______na

'anti ______ti
'antayn ______tayn
'ana ______t

#### b. The verb *'adda*

The verb 'adda l-, imperfect y'addi l-, 'to give s.th. to s.o.' is a defective verb and is conjugated like Hayya. Like 9aafa, 'adda is also used with reference God only:

'aLLaah yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik! 'May God cure you and restore good health to you!'

d. The Verb *bigi*

The verb bigi, imperfect yibga, is also a defective verb, but it is different from Hayya. It is irregular:

huw bigi
hum bigu
hiy bigyat
hin bigiyayn
'ant bigiit
'antu bigiitu
'iHna bigiina
'anti bigiiti
'antayn bigiytayn
'ana bigiit

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain -- Cued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | mariiδ̣ | 'sick' |
| $S_1$ : | maa lak ya ...? marriδ̣ ? | 'What's the matter with you,...? Sick? |
| $S_2$ : | 'ii na9am. mariiδ̣. | 'Yes, I am sick.' |

1. jaawi9
2. 9aaTiʃ
3. taa9ib
4. mariiδ̣
5. manzuul
6. mazkuum
7. majnuun
8. maaʃ Tayyib
9. fiik Humma
10. jaawi9
11. mariiδ̣
12. taa9ib

Drill 2 Repetition

huw jaa' w-bigi yawmayn. 'He came here and stayed two days.'

1. hum jaw w-bigyu yawmayn.
2. hiy jaa'at w-bigyat yawmayn.
3. hin jayn w-bigiyayn yawmayn.
6. 'anti ji'ti w-bigiiti yawmayn.
7. 'antayn ji'tayn w-bigiitayn yawmayn.

4. 'ant ji't w-bigiit yawmayn.
5. 'antu ji'tu w-bigiitu yawmayn.
8. 'ana ji't w-bigiit yawmayn.
9. 'iHna ji'na w-bigiina yawmayn.
10. huw jaa' w-bigi yawmayn.

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

bigi fi l-bayt. 'He stayed at home.'

1. hum
2. mustaʃfa
3. hiy
4. madrasa
5. hin
6. ma9aana
7. 'ant
8. haana
9. 'antu
10. 'usbuu9
11. 'anti
12. 'antayn
13. 'ana
14. 'iHna
15. bayt

Drill 4 Chain -- Cued

$S_1$ : ruH la-l-Hakiim! 'Go to the doctor!'
$S_2$ : tamaam. laazim 9alayy 'aruuH la-l-Hakiim.
'Right! I have to go to the doctor.'

1. ruH tazawwaj!
2. ruuHu tazawwaju!
3. ruuHi saa9idi 'ummiʃ!
4. ruH sta9mil as-sayyaara!
5. ruuHi 'iʃrabi d-dawaa'!
6. ruH 'urgud!
7. ruH waHdak!
8. ruuHi waHdiʃ!
9. ruH 'addii-la l-ma9aaʃ!
10. ruH HuTT fuluus fi l-bank!
11. ruuHayn 'udrusayn!
12. ruuHa naamu!

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

gaddamt Talab w-l-mudiir waafag 9alayh.
'I submitted an application and the director approved it.'

1. huw
2. hum
5. 'iHna
6. hin
9. 'ana
10. 'antayn

3. hiy
4. 'ant
7. 'antu
8. 'anti
11. 'iHna
12. huw

### Drill 6 Substitution

haaδa rajjaal Tayyib. 'This is a good man.'

1. Hakiim
2. mu9allim
3. rijaal
4. banaat
5. 'akl
6. Tabbaa9
7. 9ammaar
8. sabbaak
9. najjaar
10. muhandis
11. Tabiib
12. Ta9aam

### Drill 7 Substitution

huw saa9adni l-9aam al-maaδ̣i'. 'He helped me last year.'

Example: T : 'ant -- me 'you -- I'
S : 'ant saa9adtani l-9aam al-maaδ̣i.
'You helped me last year.'

1. 'ana -- huw
2. 'ant -- huw
3. huw -- 'ana
4. huw -- hiy
5. huw -- 'ant
6. hiy -- 'anti
7. hiy -- hin
8. hum -- 'ana
9. hum -- 'iHna
10. 'iHna -- 'antayn
11. 'iHna -- 'antu
12. 'ant -- 'ana
13. 'antu -- 'ana
14. 'antu -- hum

### Drill 8 Variable Substitution

huw yiʃti ysaa9id. 'He likes to help.'

1. ysaafir
2. yurgud
3. yibga
4. hiy
5. tuxruj
6. tudxul
7. ta'kul
8. 'ana
9. 'asaa9id
10. hum
11. 'iHna
12. hin

1. huw
2. hum
5. 'iHna
6. hin
9. 'ana
10. 'antayn

### Drill 9 Double Substitution

huw gaal-li 'inna maabiʃ 9inda 'ayy maani9.
'He told me that he did not have any objection.'

Example: T : hiy -- hiy 'she -- they (m.)'
S : hiy gaalat-li 'inna maabiʃ 9indaha 'ayya maani9.
'She told me that she did not have any objection.'

1. huw -- hum
2. huw -- hiy
3. hiy -- 'iHna
4. hiy -- huw
5. hiy -- 'antu
6. hum -- hum
7. 'ant -- huw
8. 'antu -- 'antu
9. hin -- hin
10. hin -- huw
11. 'antayn -- hiy
12. 'ant -- huw

### Drill 10 Chain -- Cued

T : hiy 'she'
$S_1$ : 9a-tsaafir ma9 jamaa9a ?
'Is she going to travel with (some) people?'

$S_2$ : maaʃi. waHdaha. haakaδa 'aHsan.
No, by herself. It's better this way.'

1. huw
2. hum
3. hin
4. 'ant
5. 'anti
6. 'antu
7. 'antayn
8. hiy
9. hin
10. huw
11. hiy
12. 'anti

Drill 11 Translation

1. He used the medicine and slept throughout the whole night.
2. The doctor examined me and said that I had fever.
3. What's wrong with you? This is not right! Go see the doctor!
4. He prescribed medicine for me and said, "Stay in bed for two days!'
5. I submitted an application for leave; the minister approved it and I travelled to Cairo.
6. How much is your salary? Can you buy a house?
7. I am a workman in the Ministry of Public Works. My salary is insufficient. I cannot buy a new house.
8. I always have Yemeni coffee after dinner.
9. Can you chew qat every day? I know that your salary does not go far.
10. He said that he did not have any objection. I can take my leave after the director returns from London.

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then summarize it in your own words.

# UNIT 34

## I. TEXT

### 'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya ?

Hasan : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

9ali : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.

Hasan : mumkin 'as'alkum su'aal?

9ali : tafaδ̣δ̣al!

Hasan : gul-li law samaHt 'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya.

9ali : 'al-masaafa tagriib xams dagaa'ig b-s-sayyaara. 'ant tiʃti tuxTi 'aw truuH b-s-sayyaara ?

Hasan : 'aʃti 'aruuH b-s-sayyaara. 9indi sayyaara.

9ali : naahi. haaδa ʃaari9 az-zubayri. 'irja9 ware haana w-ba9da ruH saani w-9ind ad-daa'ira l-'awwala liff 9ala l-yamiin w-'udxul ʃaari9 9ali 9abd al-muGni tlaagi fundug saba' 9ala l-yasaar w-ba9da maktab al-bariid fi t-taHriir. haanak liff ʃimaal w-ba9da 'udxul fi ʃaari9 sitta w-9iʃriin sabtambir. sir galiil tlaagi binaayatayn: binaaya 9ala yasaarak w-l-binaaya θ-θaaniya 9ala yamiinak hiy as-safaara l-'amriikiyya. 'is'al hownaak ywarruuk as-safaara. kull waaHid y9rifha. 'aLLa ma9ak!

Hasan : nawwar aLLaah galbak.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Where Is the American Embassy?

Ali: Peace be upon you!

Hasan : May I ask you a question?

Ali : Go ahead!

Hasan : Tell me, please, where the American Embassy is!

Ali : The distance takes about five minutes by car. Do you want to walk or go by car?

Hasan : I want to go by car. I have a car.

Ali : Fine. This is Zubairi Street. Back up here and then go straight. At the first circle (roundabout) turn right and enter Ali Abdul Mughni Street. You will find the Sheba Hotel on the left and, farther down, the Post Office in Tahrir Square. Turn left there and then enter September 26 Street. Go a little farther and you will find two buildings: one on your left and the other building, on your right, is the American Embassy. Ask there and they will show you the Embassy. Everyone knows it. God be with you!

Hasan : Thank you!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| mumkin | (with foll. imperf.) May ...? Is it possible that ...? |
| sa'al | (yis'al) to ask |
| su'aal | ('as'ila, -aat) question |
| gul! | say (m.s.)! Speak up! |
| gul-li | tell (m.s.) me! |
| safaara | (-aat) embassy |
| dagiiga | (dagga'ig) minute |
| xuTi | (yuxTu) to walk, go on foot |
| ware | adv. behind; backwards syn. xalf |
| riji9 ware | He backed up, went in reverse |
| saani | adv. straight, straight ahead |
| daa'ira | (dawaa'ir) circle, roundabout |
| laff | (yliff) to turn (left, right, etc.) |
| yamiin | adv. right; n. right hand |
| laaga | (ylaagi) to find s.th.; to encounter |
| yasaar | adv. left; n. left hand |
| bariid | mail, letters |
| maktab al-bariid | the post office |
| ʃimaal | adv. left; n. left hand. syn. yasaar |
| saar | (ysiir) to walk; to go to a place |

| | |
|---|---|
| binaaya | (-aat) building |
| warra | (ywarri) to show s.o. or s.th. |
| 9irif | (yi9rif) to know |
| nawwar | (ynawwir) to enlighten, fill with light |
| galb | (guluub) heart |

## IV. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

a. The verb laff 'to turn, e.g., right, left, etc.' is conjugated like tamm (UNIT 32, GRAMMAR 1):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| huw laff | hin ____ayn | 'anti ____ayti |
| hum ____u | 'ant ____ayt | 'antayn ____aytayn |
| hiy ____at | 'antu ____aytu | 'ana ____ayt |
| | 'iHna ____ayna | |

b. warra 'to show s.o. s.th.' is conjugated like Hayya (UNIT 32, GRAMMAR 1).

### 2. Imperatives

The second person masculine singular form of the imperative of kaan 'to be', gaal 'to say' and ʃaaf 'to see' are kun, gul, and ʃuf, respectively. For the other forms the short vowel -u- is lengthened, i.e., -uu-. Below are the imperative forms of gaal:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| gul! | guuli! | guulu! | guulayn! |

saar 'to walk; to go to a place' has the following forms:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sir! | siiri! | siiru! | siirayn! |

naam 'to sleep':

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| nam! | naami! | naamu! | naamayn! |

3. Note that the following sentences are possible for 'to turn left, right, etc.':

| | |
|---|---|
| laff yasaar. | laff ʃimaal. |
| laff 9ala l-yasaar. | laff 9ala ʃ-ʃimaal. |
| laff 9ala yasaara. | laff 9ala ʃimaala. |

NOTE ON TEXT

nawwar aLLa galbak! literally means "May God fill your heart with light" and the implication is that so you might see the correct path. It is a polite formula and is best learned as a set phrase.

## V. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

$S_1$ : mumkin 'as'alak su'aal ? 'May I ask you (m.s.) a question?'
$S_2$ : tafaδ̣δ̣al! 'Go ahead!'

Drill 2 Substitution

gul-li law samaHt 'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya!
'Tell me, if you please, where the American Embassy is!'

1. post office
2. agriculture department
3. college of commerce
4. engineering college
5. teacher training college
6. broadcasting station
7. passports office
8. ministry of the interior
9. French Embassy
10. Zubairi Street
11. Tahrir Square
12. electric department
13. Sanaa University
14. electricity building

### Drill 3 Substitution

haaδi binaaya kabiira. 'This is a big building.'

1. new
2. old
3. good
4. big
5. clean
6. dirty
7. excellent
8. not good
9. not old
10. very clean
11. big
12. small
13. very old
14. not big
15. not small

### Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'irja9 ware haana w-ba9da ruH saani!
'Back up here and then go straight!'

1. hownaak
2. 9ala l-yamiin
3. 'anti
4. haana
5. 9ala l-yasaar
6. liffi
7. hownaak
8. 'ant
9. 9ala yamiinak
10. 9ala yisaarak
11. 'antu
12. haana

### Drill 5 Variable Substitution

liff 9ala l-yamiin! 'Turn (m.s.) right!'

1. left
2. your left
3. you (f.s.)
4. your right
5. left
6. right
7. you (m.p.)
8. left
9. neg. command
10. you (m.s.)
11. your right
12. you (m.p.)

Drill 6 Chain -- Cued

$S_1$ : 'ayy daa'ira haaδi ?
T : θalaaθa 'three'
$S_2$ : haaδi d-daa'ira θ-θaaliθa. 'This is the third circle.'

1. 'iθnayn
2. waaHid
3. xamsa
4. sitta
5. sab9a
6. θalaaθa
7. waaHid
8. θamaaniya
9. 'iθnayn
10. xamsa
11. 'arba9a
12. waaHid

Drill 7 Double Substitution

'al-masaafa tagriib xams dagaa'ig b-s-sayyaara.
'The distance takes about five minutes by car.'

1. 10 minutes -- car
2. 15 minutes -- car
3. 20 minutes -- bus
4. 30 minutes -- bus
5. two hours -- plane
6. four hours -- plane
7. 50 minutes -- taxi
8. 20 minutes -- taxi
9. 17 minutes -- car
10. 1 1/2 hours -- plane
11. 2 hours -- car
12. 25 minutes -- plane

Drill 8 Substitution

'as-safaara l-'amriikiyya 9ala l-yamiin.
'The American Embassy is on the right.'

1. on your (m.s.) right
2. on your (f.s.) right
3. on your (m.p.) left
4. on the left
5. behind the post office
6. on the right
7. on the fourth floor
8. on the second street
9. over there
10. by the sea
11. in front of you
12. far from here

## Drill 9    Transformation: perfect → imperfect

1. huw sa'al su'aal.
2. sa'alu 'as'ila kaθiira.
3. gaal maabiʃ 9inda maani9.
4. xuTi masaafat kiilomitr.
5. riji9 ware.
6. laffu 9ala l-yamiin.
7. laaga binaaya kabiira.
8. saarat masaafa Tawiila.
9. warraani maktab al-bariid.
10. 9irif al-miʃkila.
11. HaTT aʃ-ʃamTa 9ala l-miizaan.
12. saafaru waHdahum.
13. daxalat aS-Saff.
14. xaraju min haana.

## Drill 10    Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. mumkin 'as'alak su'aal ?
2. tafaδ̣δ̣al 'is'al!
3. nawwar aLLaah galbak!
4. gul-li 'ayn as-safaara!
5. HaTT al-kitaab haana.
6. 'irja9 ware!
7. liff 9ala l-yamiin!
8. laaga miʃkila kabiira.
9. 'is'alu min haana.
10. xaraj gabl saa9a.
11. warraani s-safaara.
12. huw yi9rif kayf yruuH.
13. 'udxulu min haana!
14. kam ma9aaʃak ?
15. SabbaHak aLLaah b-l-xayr!
16. 'al-mudiir waafag.

## VI. CONVERSATIONS

1. yaHya : ta9rif bayt 9ali 9abd al-gaadir?
   zayd : 'ii na9am. 'al-bayt Hagga ware t-taHriir, bayn ("between") at-taHriir w-gaa9 al-yahuud.
   yaHya : gariib min as-safaara l-miSriyya ?
   zayd : tamaam.
   yaHya : ʃukran ya 'ax!
   zayd : ma9 as-salaama.

2. tagwa : maa liʃ ya maryam ? mariiδ̣a ?
   maryam : mazkuuma ya tagwa. fiini zukaam gawi.
   tagwa : fiiʃ Humma ? sirti l-Hakiim ?
   maryam : Humma ʃwayya bass. ruHt aT-Tabiib gabl 'usbuu9 w-'addaa-li dawaa'.

tagwa : sta9malti d-dawaa' ?
maryam : sta9malta bass ma 'anaam Tuul al-layl.
ʃa-siir aT-Tabiib marra θaaniya Gudwa nʃaaLLa.
maryam : 'aLLaah yiʃfiiʃ w-y9aafiiʃ!
tagwa : baarak aLLa fiiʃ!

# UNIT 35

## I. TEXT

### 'ayn maktab al-bariid ?

'aHmad : gul-li law samaHt 'ayn maktab al-bariid! ba9iid min haana ?

9abd ar-raHmaan : la maaʃ ba9iid baθiir. 'iδa 'ant mista9jil xuδ taksi.

'aHmad : la maaʃ mista9jil. 'agdar 'aruuH b-r-rijl, SaHiiH ?

9abd ar-raHmaan : ma tigdarʃ b-r-rijl. b-l-baaS mumkin. 'ant δalHiin fi januub al-madiina. maktab al-bariid fi ʃamaal al-mdiina, ya9ni guddaamak.

'aHmad : 'iδan laazim 9alayy 'asiir saani, SaHiiH ?

9abd ar-raHmaan : tamaam! sir saani tagriib masaafat kiilomitrayn tlaagi al-gunSuliyya r-ruusiyya w-ba9da liff 9ala yaddak aʃ-ʃimaal 9ind ad-daa'ira θ-θaaniya. maktab al-bariid 9ind ar-rukn fi t-taHriir w-ykuun 9ala l-yasaar. la tinsa tliff yasaar!

'aHmad : Tab9an. ʃukran ya 'ax!

9abd ar-raHmaan : 9afwan.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Where Is the Post Office?

Ahmad : Tell me please where the post office is! Is it far from here?

Abd Al-Rahman : No, not very far. If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.

Ahmad : No, I am not in a hurry. I can go on foot, can't I?

Abd Al-Rahman : You can't (go) on foot. It's possible by bus. You are now in the south(ern)(part) of the city. The post office is in the north(ern)(part) of the city, i.e., ahead of you.

Ahmad : Then, I have to go straight, don't I?

Abd Al-Rahman : Exactly! Go straight for a distance of approximately two kilometers. You will find the Russian Consulate, and then turn left at the second circle. The post office is at the corner in Tahrir Square, and it will be on the left. Don't forget to turn left!

Ahmad : Of course! Thank you, brother!

Abd Al-Rahman : You are welcome.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'iδa | if |
| mista9jil | adj. (-iin) in a hurry |
| 'axaδ | (ya'xuδ) to take |
| rijl | ('arjil) foot, one's foot (f.) |
| b-r-rijl | adv. on foot |
| januub | south (of), southern part (of) |
| ʃamaal | north (of), northern part (of) |
| ya9ni | that is to say, namely |
| guddaam | prep. in front of; adv. in front, forward. var. 'amaam |
| 'iδan | then, therefore |
| kiilomitr | kilometer |
| ruusi | (ruus) Russian |
| hindi | (hunuud) Indian; of India |
| rukn | ('arkaan) corner |
| nisi | (yinsa) to forget |
| Tab9an | of course, certainly |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃarg | east, eastern part (of) |
| Garb | west, western part (of) |
| ʃamaal ʃarg | northeast (of) |
| januub Garb | southwest (of) |
| maydaan | (mayaadiin) square |

| | |
|---|---|
| daaxil | prep.; adv. inside |
| xaarij | prep.; adv. outside |
| b-jamb | prep. beside, next to |
| Haara | (-aat) neighborhood, quarter, section (of a city) |
| safiir | (sufaraa') ambassador |
| gunSul | (ganaaSil) consul |
| ruusya | Russia |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

'axaδ 'to take' is conjugated like 'akal 'to eat' or daras 'to study' (UNIT 30). The imperative forms (first person masculine singular) of 'axaδ and 'akal are xuδ! and kul!, respectively.

2. ya9ni literally means 'it means' and it is equivalent in meaning and usage to English 'that is to say, namely, I mean, etc.'

3. in SA SaHiiH ? 'Isn't it so?' is added to a statement to signal what is known in grammar as a "tail question":

| | |
|---|---|
| huw haana, SaHiiH ? | 'He is here, isn't he?' |
| 'ant ruHt, SaHiiH ? | 'You went, didn't you?' |
| 'agdar 'aruuH b-r-rijl, SaHiiH ? | 'I can go on foot, can't I?' |
| 'ant ma ruHtʃ, SaHiiH ? | 'You didn't go, did you?' |
| 9a-tiji Gudwa, SaHiiH ? | 'She will come tomorrow, won't she?' |

4. In UNIT 8 we had 9ind- as a verb-like expression meaning approximately 'to have'. 9ind, as a preposition, means 'at' and is followed by a non-human noun:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9ind ad-daa'ira l-'awwala | 'at the first circle, roundabout' |
| 9ind ar-rukn fi t-taHriir | 'at the corner in Tahrir Square' |

*9ind* followed by a human noun expresses the general meaning of 'with' or 'to have with s.o.', not necessarily 'to own' -- or 'at s.o.'s place', similar to French *chez* --:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9ali 9ind 'ibraaHiim. | 'Ali is at Ibrahim's' |
| 9ind 'ibraaHiim kitaab. | 'Ibrahim has a book.' |
| | 'Ibrahim has a book (with him).' |

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Completion

T : 'iδa 'ant mista9jil ...

S : 'iδa 'ant mista9jil xuδ taksi. 'If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.'

1. 'iδa 'ant jaawi9 ...
2. 'iδa 'ant 9aaTiʃ ...
3. 'iδa maabiʃ gahwa ...
4. 'iδa 'ant mista9jil ...
5. 'iδa huw nisi ...
6. 'iδa tuskin fi haaδi l-Haara ...
7. 'iδa l-gunSuliyya ba9iida ...
8. 'iδa hiy mariiδ̣a ...
9. 'iδa tsiir saani ...
10. 'iδa truuH b-r-rijl ...
11. 'iδa 9indak fuluus ...
12. 'iδa 'ant Gaalit ...
13. 'iδa tibga haana ...
14. 'iδa fiik Humma ...

### Drill 2 Completion

'ana ma 'a9rif ... 'I do not know ..."

1. in which street the American Embassy is
2. where the post office is
3. where Tahrir Square is
4. how far Sanaa University is from here
5. where he got this car from
6. why he always travels alone
7. why she doesn't help her mother

8. what the problem is
9. what the name of the ambassador is
10. whether he is outside or inside
11. whether she is a teacher of a typist
12. whether Dar Al-Hamd Hotel is beside the Broadcasting Station

### Drill 3 Substitution

maktab al-bariid fi januub al-madiina.
'The post office is south of the city.'

1. north of the city
2. next to the Saudi Embassy
3. at the corner in Tahrir Square
4. on your (m.s.) right
5. on the left
6. about 2 kms. from here
7. about 15 minutes from here
8. northeast of the city
9. at the first circle
10. in Zubairi Street
11. near the Sheba Hotel
12. next to the Ministry of Comm.

### Drill 4 Transformation

T : 9indi su'aal. 'I have a question.'
S : 9indi su'aal ya9ni "I have a question" b-l-'ingiliizi.'

1. 'ii na9am.
2. masaafat miyat mitr
3. januub Garb
4. ʃamaal ʃarg
5. maabiʃ 9amal
6. liff 9ala l-yamiin!
7. 'aLLaah yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik!
8. maabiʃ 9indi 'ayy maani9.
9. 'irja9 ware w-sir saani!
10. fiini Humma w-mazkuum.
11. nawwar aLLa galbak!
12. Hayya LLa man jaa'!

### Drill 5 Completion

Deduce from the statement the teacher gives what fits the meaning.

Example: T : huw ma 'akalʃ al-yawm. 'He did not eat today.'
S : 'iδan huw jaawi9. 'Therefore, he is not hungry.'

1. maryam jaawi9a kaθiir.
2. Saadiig mariiδ̣.
3. hum mista9jiliin.
4. hiy ma tigdarʃ timʃi.
5. 'ana ma STabaHtʃ.
6. huw yiʃti yisaa9idni.
7. li haana xams siniin.
8. 9inda 'usra kabiira.
9. 'amiina fi -l-mustaʃfa.
10. 'al-jaaw Haami l-yawm.
11. ma HaSaltʃ 9ala ziyaada.
12. 'aT-TamaaTiis raxiiS al-yawm.
13. maabiʃ tuffaH fi s-suug.
14. 'al-masaafa ba9iida.

### Drill 6 Question -- Answer

T : 'as-safaara r-ruusiyya ba9iida min haana, SaHiiH ?
'The Russian Embassy is very far from here, isn't it?'
S : Tab9an. ba9iida kaθiir. 'Of course. It's very far.'

1. 'ant axaδt taksi, SaHiiH ?
2. fii safaara ruusiyya haana, SaHiiH ?
3. 'al-jaww baarid gawi l-yawm, SaHiiH ?
4. 'as-su9uudiyya ʃamaal al-yaman, SaHiiH ?
5. 'al-'as9aar Gaaliya fi l-yaman, SaHiiH ?
6. huw yiʃrab biira, SaHiiH ?
7. maktab al-bariid 9ind ar-rukn fi t-taHriir, SaHiiH ?
8. 'ant 'akalt gablima ji't, SaHiiH ?
9. huw gaddam Talab Hagg 'ijaaza, SaHiiH ?
10. 'al-maT9am b-jamb al-fundug, SaHiiH ?

### Drill 7 Substitution

ruH siida tagriib masaafat miyat mitr!
'Go straight for a distance of about 100 meters!'

1. 100 meters
2. 300 meters
6. 400 meters
7. 500 meters
11. 200 meters
12. 350 meters

3. 700 meters
4. 600 meters
5. 900 meters
8. 150 meters
9. 2 kilometers
10. 10 kilometers
13. 7 kilometers
14. 10 kilometers

### Drill 8 Double Substitution

'as-safaara 9ind ad-daa'ira al-'awwala.
'The Embassy is at the first circle.'

1. 2nd Circle
2. 3rd Circle
3. 4th Circle
4. 5th Circle
5. Institute of Administration
6. Dept. of Water & Electricity
7. Foreign Ministry
8. corner in Tahrir Square
9. Teacher Training College
10. French School
11. Government Hospital
12. Blood Bank
13. Ministry of Agriculture
14. Ministry of the Interior

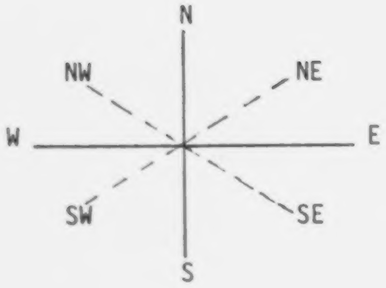
### Drill 9 Variable Substitution

mumkin tguul-li 'ayn ? 'Will you (m.s.) please tell me where ?'

1. how
2. you (m.p.)
3. from where
4. you (f.s.)
5. how much
6. which square
7. why
8. where
9. who
10. how many
11. how much
12. you (m.s.)
13. how
14. which hotel
15. which one

### Drill 10 Directions

T. puts the following drawing on the board and asks individual students to give the directions indicated in Arabic.



Drill 11 Directions

Bring a map to class. Ask individual students to give the location of the Yemen Arab Republic in relation to each neighboring country.

Drill 12 Question -- Answer

1. 'ant ruusi 'aw 'aLmaani ?
2. kam lak fi l-yaman ?
3. 'ayn ta9mal ? 'ant muhandis ?
4. kam ma9aaʃak fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
5. 'i9jabatak al-yaman nʃaaLLa ?
6. 'ant mutazawwij ?
7. 9indak 'awlaad ?
8. 'ayn taskun ?
9. taskun fi ʃugga 'aw bayt ?
10. 'al-bayt ba9iid min al-9amal ?
11. kam tadfa9 'iijaar ?
12. kayf al-'as9aar fi l-yaman ?
13. 'axaδt 'ijaaza ?
14. 'ayn saafart ?

# U N I T 3 6

## I. TEXT

### 9iid al-fiTr

gabl ams 'abu 9ali kaan yiʃti ysiir la-s-suug. 'as-sayyaara Hagga kaanat mu9aTTala. 'axaδ taksi w-raaH la-s-suug w-ʃtara rizz w-laHm la-l-bayt w-ba9da ʃtara Halawiyyaat w-malaabis w-ganaadir Hagg marata w-'awlaada 9ala sibb Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr. n-naas fi 9iid al-fiTr yilbasu 'aHsan ʃay' 9indahum min al-malaabis w-yruuHu ysallimu 9ala 'ahlahum w-jamaa9athum w-yiʃrabu gahwa. 'abu 9ali 9indima riji9 min as-suug marata gaalat-la : "lilma ʃtaraytʃ Haliib ya 'abu 9ali ?" 'abu 9ali gaal : "waLLa nisiit." gaalat-la : "maaʃ δ̣aruuri. 9a-truuH Gudwa. 9indana Haliib baagi min 'ams."

## II. TRANSLATION

### The Ramadhan Feast

The day before yesterday Abu Ali wanted to go to the market. His car was out of order. He took a cab and went to the market and bought rice and meat for the house, and later on he bought sweets and shoes for his wife and children because tomorrow is the Ramadhan Feast. People during the Ramadhan Feast wear the best clothes they have and go to greet their folks and relatives and drink coffee. When Abu Ali returned from the market, his wife said to him, "Why didn't you buy milk, Abu Ali?" Abu Ali said, "By gosh! I forgot!" She said to him, "It's not necessary. You will go tomorrow. We have milk left from yesterday.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| kaan yiʃti | (with foll. imperf.) he wanted to ... |
| mu9aTTal | (-iin) out of order; shut-down, stopped |

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃtara | (yiʃtari) to buy |
| Halawiyyaat | sweets; sweet pastry; candies |
| malaabis | clothes; clothing. syn. θiyaab |
| gundaṛa | (ganaadir) pair of shoes |
| mara | (nisaa') woman; wife |
| 9iid | ('a9yaad) feast, festival; holiday |
| ramaḍaan | Ramadhan, the holy month of fasting |
| 9iid al-fiTr | the Ramadhan Feast |
| libis | (yilbas) to wear; to put on |
| sallam 9ala | (ysallim) to greet s.o.; to shake hands with s.o. |
| lilma ? | interrog. part. Why? |
| baagi | act. part. remaining, left-over |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| ʃamiiz | (ʃumzaan, ʃummaz) shirt |
| faaniila | (-aat) undershirt, T-shirt |
| banTaloon | (-aat) trousers, pants |
| kuut | ('akwaat) jacket |
| dajla | (-aat) overcoat |
| fustaan | (fasaatiin) dress, woman's dress |
| bluuz | (-aat) blouse |
| gubba9a | (-aat) hat, western hat. syn. Tarbuuʃ p. Taraabiiʃ |
| SummaaTa | (SummaT) head dress |
| 9imaama | (9amaa'im) turban |
| Sandal | (Sanaadil) pair of sandals |
| Hiδa | ('aHδi) pair of slippers. syn. ʃibʃib p. ʃabaaʃib |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

a. In Sa there is no perfect-tense verb corresponding to yiʃti 'he wants, likes'. The perfect-tense is usually expressed by using kaan 'to be' before yiʃti. Both verbs have to agree with the same subject:

UNIT 36.

| | |
|---|---|
| kaan yiʃti yruuH. | 'He wanted to go.' |
| kunt 'atʃti 'aji. | 'I liked to come.' |
| kaanayn yiʃtayn ysiirayn. | 'They (f.) liked to walk.' |

Invariable *kaan* is used before such pseudo-verbs as *9ind-* 'to have', *fii* 'there is; there are', etc. to express past time:

| | |
|---|---|
| kaan 9indi sayyaara. | 'I had a car.' |
| kaan 9indahum Haliib. | 'They had milk.' |
| kaan fii 9iid. | 'There was a holiday.' |
| kaan fii nisaa'. | 'There were women.' |
| kaan ma9aa Halawiyyaat. | 'He had sweets.' |

b. The verb *ʃtara* 'to buy' is a defective verb and is conjugated like *Hayya* 'to greet s.o.'

c. The verb *libis* 'to wear; to put on' is conjugated like the verb *ʃirib* 'to drink' (UNIT 30).

2. The negative particle *ma* and *-ʃ* suffixed to the verb are used to negate a past-tense verb:

| | |
|---|---|
| ma ʃtaraytʃ gundara. | 'I did not buy a pair of shoes.' |
| ma kuntʃ hownaak. | 'I was not there.' |

NOTE ON TEXT

Ramadhan is the Muslim holy month of fasting. During this month Muslims fast every day from early morning to sunset. After Ramadhan Muslims celebrate a holiday known as The Ramadhan Feast, which usually lasts three or four days. During this holiday, especially on the first day, Muslims wear their best clothes, go to the mosque for the early morning Ramadhan Feast prayer, visit relatives and friends, and exchange gifts.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

yiʃti yiʃtari Haliib. 'He wants to buy milk.'

1. sweets
2. clothes
3. shoes
4. shirts
5. pants
6. shirt
7. undershirts
8. jackets
9. overcoat
10. hat
11. turban
12. head dress
13. blouses
14. dresses
15. sandals

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

kaan yiʃti ysiir as-suug. 'He wanted to go to the market.'

1. 'abu 9ali
2. 'abu yaHya
3. 'umm 9ali
4. 'iHna
5. 'ant
6. 'ana
7. 'al-maTaar
8. negative
9. 'al-bayt
10. hum
11. positive
12. 'antu
13. hin
14. 'antayn
15. huw

### Drill 3 Variable Substitution

ʃtara ʃumzaan. 'He bought shirt.'

1. hiy
2. coats
3. shoes
4. hum
5. hin
6. dresses
7. clothes
8. sandals
9. hat
10. 'iHna
11. blouse
12. turban
13. overcoats
14. 'ana
15. hubble-bubble

### Drill 4 Variable Substitution

libis ʃamiiza. 'He put on his shirt.'

1. hiy
2. dress
3. jaket
4. 'ana
5. undershirt
6. 'ant
7. huw
8. pants
9. turban
10. shoes
11. 'anti
12. slippers

## Drill 5 a. Substitution

huw sallam 9alayna. 'He greeted us.'

1. 'ant
2. 'anti
3. 'antu
4. 'ana
5. 'iHna
6. 'antayn
7. hin
8. huw
9. hum
10. hiy
11. 'iHna
12. 'ant

### b. Double Substitution

huw sallam 9alayna. 'He greeted us.'

1. 'ana -- huw
2. 'ana -- hiy
3. 'ana -- 'ant
4. hum -- hiy
5. hiy -- 'iHna
6. 'iHna -- 'antu
7. huw -- 'ana
8. 'ana -- hum
9. huw -- hin
10. hum - 'ana
11. 'ant -- 'ana
12. 'anti -- hiy
13. 'antu -- 'ana
14. 'antayn -- hin

## Drill 6 Double Substitution

huw ʃtara gundara. 'He bought (a pair of) shoes.'

1. hum -- malaabis
2. hiy -- fustaan
3. hin -- fasaatiin
4. 'ant -- kuut
5. 'antu -- ʃumzaan
6. 'antayn -- 'aHði
7. huw -- banTaloon
8. huw -- gubba9a
9. hum -- Halawiyyaat
10. 'ana -- SummaaTa
11. 'ana -- faaniilaat
12. 'iHna -- ganaadir
13. hin -- bluuzaat
14. hiy -- Sandal

Drill 7 Chain -- Cued

T : huw -- Halawiyyaat 'he -- sweets'

$S_1$ : lilma ma ʃtaraaʃ Halawiyyaat ?
'Why didn't he buy me sweets?'

$S_2$ : nisi. 'He forgot.'

1. huw -- gundara
2. hum -- malaabis
3. hiy -- fustaan
4. hin -- fasaatiin
5. 'ant -- ʃamiiz
6. 'anti -- kuut
7. hiy -- faaniilaat
8. 'antayn -- Halawiyyaat
9. 'antayn -- 'aHδ̣i
10. hum -- 9amaa'im
11. huw -- dajla
12. hiy -- gundara
13. 'ant -- SummaaTa
14. 'antu -- banTaloonaat

Drill 8 Substitution

marata gaalat : "maaʃ δ̣aruuri." 'His wife said, "Never mind!"'

1. his father
2. her father
3. my mother
4. my brother
5. my sister
6. his wife
7. her husband
8. my paternal uncle
9. his maternal uncle
10. her paternal aunt
11. his maternal aunt
12. my niece
13. her nephew
14. my cousin

Drill 9 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. 'axuuha gaal : "maaʃ δ̣aruuri."
2. 'abu Husayn kaan yiʃti ysiir as-suug.
3. daxal w-sallam 9alayna.
4. libis malaabisa w-xaraj.
5. 'ant ʃtarayt ʃimiiz ?
6. 'antu ʃtaraytu banTaloonaat ?

7. hum ʃtaru Halawiyyaat.
8. jaa' w-tkallam ma9aana 'ams.
9. 'ant nⁱsiit tiʃtari laHm ?
10. huw nisi l-miftaaH fi l-bayt.
11. haaδa 'aHsan ʃay' 9indak ?
12. yista9mil as-sayyaara yawmiya.
13. huw 'addaa-li fuluus w-saafar.
14. maa ti9mal fi 9iid al-fiTr ?

Drill 10 Questions (Based on TEXT)

1. man saar la-s-suug 'ams ?
2. lilma 'abu 9ali raaH la-s-suug ?
3. kayf raaH la-s-suug ?
4. lilma ma raaHʃ b-sayyaarata ?
5. 'ayʃ ʃtara la-l-bayt ?
6. 'ayʃ ʃtara Hagg 'usrata ?
7. maa yi9malu n-naas fi l-9iid ?
8. Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr ?
9. 'abu 9ali ʃtara Haliib ?
10. man gaal : "maaʃ δ̣aruuri" ?

Drill 11 Question -- Answer

1. sirt as-suug al-yawm ?
2. kayf sirt la-s-suug ?
3. 'ayʃ ʃtarayt ?
4. ʃtarayt Halawiyyaat ?
5. f-ayy Hiin 9iid al-fiTr ?
6. maa ti9mal fi l-9iid ?
7. kaan fii naas kaθiir fi s-suug ?
8. sayyaaratak mu9aTTala ?
9. 'at-talafoon mu9aTTal ?
10. 'ayn al-gunSuliyya ar-ruusiyya ?
11. ba9iida min haana ?
12. 'al-yaman ʃarg as-su9uudiyya ?
13. 9amraan Garb San9a ?
14. 'ayn al-Hodayda ?

## VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSIONS

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then summarize it in your own words.

# U N I T 3 7

## I. TEXT

### 'al-'a9yaad

joorj : fii 9uTla Gudwa ya Hasan ?
Hasan : 'aywa. Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr. kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr!
joorj : fii 'a9yaad θaaniya Gayr haaδa l-9iid ?
Hasan : na9am. fii 9iid al-'aδ̣Ha w-9iid mawlid an-nabi w-9iid aθ-θawra, θawrat sitta w-9iʃriin September, w-9iid al-9ummaal w-9iid al-'umm w-9iid aʃ-ʃijara. w-antu fi 'amriika ma 9indakum min 'a9yaad ?
joorj : 9indana 9iidayn kibaar : 9iid al-miilaad ya9ni "Christmas" w-9iid ra's as-sana ya9ni "New Year's". kayf yiHtafilu n-naas fi l-'a9yaad 9indakum ?
Hasan : 'aS-SubH ysiiru la-l-masjid w-ySallu Salaat al-9iid w-ba9da yruuHu y9ayyidu 9ala 'ahlahum w-'aSdigaa'ahum w-'agaaribhum w-ysiiru la-l-muntazahaat w-l-Hadaa'ig al-9amma miθl muntazah at-taHriir w-muntazah baab al-gaa9 w-Hadiigat al-'aTfaal w-Hadiigat mustaʃfa θ-θawra.
joorj : kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr ya 'ax Hasan!
Hasan : w-antu b-xayr. 'aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alayna b-l-xayr w-l-masarraat.

## II. TRANSLATION

### Feasts and Holidays

George : Is there a holiday tomorrow, Hasan?
Hasan : Yes. Tomorrow is the Ramadhan Feast. Happy Feast!
George : Are there other holidays (that) you have here, other than this holiday?
Hasan : Yes. There are the Sacrifice Feast, the Prophet's Birthday, Revolution Day, the Revolution of September 26, May Day,

Mother's Day, and Arbor Day. And you in America, what holidays do you have ?

George : We have two big holidays: the holiday of the birth, i.e., Christmas and the holiday of the beginning of the year, i.e., New Year's. How do people celebrate holidays in your country?

Hasan : In the morning they go to mosque and pray the Feast Prayer, and later on they go to celebrate the holiday with their folks, friends, and relatives, and they go to parks and public gardens, such as the Independence Park, Bab Al-qaa' Park, the Children's Garden, and the Revolution Hospital Garden.

George : Happy Holiday, brother Hasan!

Hasan : Happy Holiday to you! I hope we will celebrate it again in prosperity and happiness!

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'aywa | yes. syn. na9am, 'ii |
| 9aam | ('a9waam) year. syn. sana p. -waat |
| Gayr | (with foll. n.) other than, different from; (with foll. adj.) not, un-, etc. |
| 9iid al'aδ̣Ha | the Sacrifice Feast, also known as the Pilgrimage Feast |
| mawlid | (mawaalid) birthday of a prophet or a saint |
| nabi | ('anbiyaa') prophet |
| mawlid an-nabi | the Prophet's (Muhammad's) Birthday |
| 9aamil | (9ummaal) laborer, workman. syn. ʃaagi p. ʃugaa |
| 9iid al-9ummaal | May Day |
| 9iid al-'umm | Mother's Day |
| ʃijar | coll. trees. s. ʃijara |
| miilaad | v.n. birth; nativity; birthday |
| 9iid al-miilaad | Christmas |
| ra's | (ru'uus) head; beginning |
| ra's as-sana | New Year; the beginning of the year |
| 9iid ra's as-sana | New Year's Day |

| | |
|---|---|
| Htafal b- | (yiHtafil) to celebrate s.th. |
| masjid | (masaajid) mosque |
| Salla | (ySalli) to pray |
| 9ayyad 9ala | (y9ayyid) to celebrate a feast with s.o. |
| gariib | ('agaarib) relative, relation |
| muntazah | (-aat) park |
| Hadiiga | (Hadaa'ig) garden |
| Hadiiga 9aamma | public garden |
| miθl | prep. like, similar to |
| Tifl | ('aTfaal) infant; child |
| 9aad (9ala) | (y9iid) to repeat, do again (to s.o.) |
| masarra | (-aat) joy, happiness |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 9iid miilaad | ('a9yaad ___) birthday |
| Hafla | (-aat) party; ceremony; celebration |
| Haflat 9iid miilaad | birthday party |
| zaar | (yzuur) to visit |
| jaami9 | (jawaami9) great, central mosque, such as<br>'al-jaami9 al-kabiir the Grand Mosque in Sanaa |
| kaniisa | (kanaa'is) church |
| kaniis | (no known plural) synagogue; temple |
| gara' | (yigra') to read |
| 'al-gur'aan | the Quran |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Perfect Tense

a. Salla 'to pray' is a defective verb and it is conjugated like Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' (UNIT 32).

b. 9aad 'to repeat s.th.' is a hollow verb and it is conjugated like saar 'to go; to walk' (UNIT 30).

## 2.. Adjective Agreement with Dual Nouns

It was pointed out in previous lessons that if the noun is singular the adjective agrees with it in gender and definiteness. If the noun is plural the adjective is either singular or plural if the noun modified is nonhuman; if the noun is human, the adjective is plural. Examples:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 'al-bayt al-kabiir | 'the big house' |
| | 'al-buyuut al-kabiira | 'the big houses' |
| or: | 'al-buyuut al-kibaar | |
| | 'al-banaat al-Haaliyaat | 'the beautiful girls' |
| | 'ar-rijaal al-Haaliyiin | 'the handsome men' |

In this lesson we have a dual noun modified by a plural adjective. We may state the rule in this way: in SA a dual noun (masculine or feminine) is modified by a masculine plural adjective:

| | |
|---|---|
| 9iidayn kibaar | 'two big feasts' |
| bintayn kibaar | 'two big, old girls' |

Note that in SA a dual may be expressed by 'iθnayn (m.) or θintayn (f.) followed by the plural; the modifying adjective remains masculine plural:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'iθnayn 'a9yaad kibaar | 'two big feasts' |
| θintayn banaat kibaar | 'two big, old girls' |

NOTE ON TEXT

kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr! literally means '(I hope) every year you are fine!' and it corresponds to English 'Happy Holiday!'. It is used during the Ramadhan and the Sacrifice Feasts. It would also be used for 'Merry Christmas!' or 'Happy New Year!'. It is invariable, regardless of who you are talking to. The response is the short w-antu b-xayr, or you may add to it 'aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alyna b-l-xayr w-l-masarraat, etc.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

ba9d Gudwa 9iid al-'aδ̣Ha. 'After tomorrow is the Sacrifice Feast.'

1. two days
2. five days
3. twenty days
4. one week
5. two weeks
6. one month
7. two months
8. three months
9. twelve days
10. forty days
11. 2 1/2 weeks
12. 1 1/2 weeks
13. 1 1/2 months
14. tomorrow

### Drill 2 Substitution

9iid al-'aδ̣Ha ba9d Gudwa. 'The Sacrifice Feast is after tomorrow.'

1. Ramadhan Feast
2. Christmas
3. New Year's
4. Prophet's Birthday
5. May Day
6. Mother's Day
7. Arbor Day
8. Revolution Day
9. Christmas
10. Sacrifice Feast
11. Ramadhan Feast
12. New Year's
13. May Day
14. Prophet's Birthday

### Drill 3 Repetition

kull 9aam w-ant b-xayr!
kull 9aam w-anti b-xayr!
kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr!
kull 9aam w-antayn b-xayr!

### Drill 4 Repetition

1. huw Salla fi l-jaami9.
2. hiy Sallat fi l-jaami9.
3. hum Sallu fi l-jaami9.
4. hin Sallayn fi l-jaami9.
5. 'ana Sallayt fi l-jaami9.
6. 'ant Sallayt fi l-jaami9.
7. 'anti Sallayti fi l-jaami9.
8. 'antu Sallaytu fi l-jaami9.
9. 'antayn Sallaytayn fi l-jaami9.
10. 'iHna Sallayna fi l-jaami9.

### Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw gara' gur'aan fi l-masjid. 'He read Quran in the mosque.'

1. hiy
2. hum
3. 'iHna
4. 'antu
5. 'ant
6. 'anti
7. huw
8. Salla
9. 'iHna
10. 'ana
11. fi l-bayt
12. negative
13. 'antu
14. 'ana
15. hum

### Drill 6 Double Substitution

huw 9ayyad 9alayna. 'He celebrated a merry feast with us.'

1. hum -- hum
2. huw -- 'antu
3. hiy -- hin
4. hiy -- 'antayn
5. 'ant -- huw
6. 'antu -- 'iHna
7. 'iHna -- 'antu
8. hum -- 'ant
9. hum -- 'anti
10. 'anti -- hiy
11. 'ant -- 'iHna
12. 'iHna -- 'antu
13. hin -- 'antayn
14. 'antayn -- 'iHna

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw zaar mHammad fi l-mustaʃfa.
'He visited Mohammad in the hospital.'

1. hiy
2. hum
3. hin
4. 'ana
5. 'absart
6. 'anti
7. 'antu
8. 'iHna
9. zurna
10. gariibana
11. 'agribaa'ana
12. 'ummana
13. 'ana
14. negative
15. 'iHna

Drill 8 Chain -- Cued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| T : | 'ant | 'you (m.s.)' |
| $S_1$ : | 'ayn Sallayt ? | 'Where did you pray?' |
| T : | masjid | 'mosque' |
| $S_2$ : | Sallayt fi l-masjid. | 'I prayed in the mosque.' |

1. 'anti -- jaami9
2. huw -- masjid
3. hiy -- bayt
4. 'antu -- madrasa
5. hum -- muntazah
6. hum -- kaniisa
7. maryam -- bayt
8. 9aa'iʃa -- masjid
9. Husayn -- diiwaan
10. 'al-mara -- bayt
11. 'aT-Tullaab -- jaami9
12. 'ant -- suug
13. 'antu -- daaxil
14. huw -- neighborhood

Drill 9 Transformation: singular → plural

1. kull 9aam w-ant b-xayr!
2. Salla fi l-Hadiiga.
3. 9imil Haflat zawaaj.
4. gad huw Tifl SaGiir.
5. Htafal b-l-9iid ma9aana.
6. maabiʃ Gayr haaδa l-9iid.
7. ʃtarat gundara.
8. ʃtarayt ʃamiiz w-bluuz.
9. 'as-sayyaara mu9aTTalu.
10. saafart xaarij al-yaman.
11. zaarat gariibaha.
12. li9ibt fi l-muntazah.
13. miθl haaδa ma tlaagiiʃ.
14. 'aʃti 'azuur gariibi.
15. 9ayyad 9alayh.
16. 9ayyadat 9alayha.

## Drill 10 Transformation: perfect → imperfect

1. Htafalt b-l-9iid ?
2. ʃtarat malaabis w-'aHδi.
3. Sallu fi l-masjid 'ams.
4. 'al-'aTfaal li9bu fi l-Hadiiga.
5. huw Salla fi l-kaniis.
6. 9ayyad 9alayna kull 9aam.
7. libist malaabisi w-xarajt.
8. 'ana kunt mazkuum.
9. maa kaan fii gahwa.
10. HaTṪ al-malaabis fi l-kabat.
11. raaH la-s-suug b-r-rijl.
12. libis gubba9a w-ʃamiiz.
13. nisi yiji l-yawm.
14. maa ʃribtʃ biira.

## Drill 11 Translation

1. I hope you will celebrate the feast again in prosperity and happiness!
2. Are there any other holidays that you celebrate here in Yemen?
3. We would like to invite you to a birthday party next week. We hope you will be able to come.
4. He entered the building and found many people there.
5. Will you please tell me where the Post Office is?
6. Do you have a car or do you want to go on foot?
7. His car was out of order yesterday. He took it to the garage to have it checked.
8. Go (m.s.) straight to Al-Zubairi Street and then turn right at the Second Circle.
9. The Consulate is beside the Embassy. Why do you want to go there? Do you have a passport?
10. I wanted to come to celebrate the feast with you last week. I called you but you were not home.
11. The distance from here to there is very far; so, you will have to go by car.
12. Turn left at the Russian Embassy and the Post Office will be in front of you.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Husayn : kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr ya yuusif!
yuusif : w-antu b-xayr. 'aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alayna b-l-xayr w-l-masarraat!
Husayn : 'ayʃ 9imilt al-yawm ?
yuusif : 'aS-SubH Sallayt Salaat al-9iid fi l-jaami9 al-kabiir w-ba9da ruHt 9ayyadt 9ala 'ahli w-'agaaribi.
Husayn : w-ba9da 'ayʃ ti9mal ?
yuusif : ʃa-ruuH al-Hadiiga l-9aama 'ana w-'ustrati.
Husayn : Tayyib. 'aLLaah ma9aakum!

2. faaTima : ha! 'ayy Hiin riji9ti min as-suug ?
'aamina : gabl nuSS saa9a.
faaTima : kayf al-'as9aar ?
'aamina : kull ʃay' Gaali 9ala sibb al-9iid.
faaTima : maa ʃtaryti ?
'aamina : ma ʃtaraytʃ kaθiir. ʃtarayt fustaan Haggi w-malaabis w-ganaadir Hagg al-'awlaad w-ʃamiiz w-Hiδa Hagg zawji.

# U N I T 3 8

## I. TEXT

### fi maktab al-bariid

muTahhar : 'aʃti 'arsil haaδi r-risaala la-'amriika.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : tiʃtiiha 9aadiyya 'aw musajjala ?
muTahhar : jawwiyya law samaHt.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : Tayyib. haaδa Taabi9 b-'arba9a ryaal.
muTahhar : tafaδ̣δ̣al! 9indi Tard w-Sanduug SaGiir 'aʃti 'arsilhum la-s-su9uudiyya.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : ruH aT-TarHa θ-θaaniya! maktab aT-Turuud hownaak.

muTahhar : 'aʃti 'arsil haaδa T-Tard w-S-Sanduug la-s-su9uudiyya.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : ma fii daaxilhum ?
muTahhar : 'aT-Tarad fii kutub w-'awraag,.... w-S-Sanduug fii θiyaab w-malaabis aTfaal,....
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : 9aadi 'aw jawwi ?
muTahhar : 9aadi bass musajjal. 'uuzinhum law samaHt!
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : HuTTahum 9ala l-miizaan! .... 'iθnayn kiiloGraam w-xamsiin Graam. ykallifuuk xamsa w-sittiin ryaal.
muTahhar : 'al-waSl law samaHt!
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : tafaδ̣δ̣al!
muTahhar : baarak aLLa fiik!

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Post Office

Mutahhar : I want to send this letter to America.
Employee : Do you want it ordinary or registered (mail)?
Mutahhar : Airmail, if you please.
Employee : O.K. This is a four-riyaal stamp.
Mutahhar : Here! I have a parcel and a small box which I want to send to Saudi Arabia.

| | |
|---|---|
| Employee : | Go to the Second Floor! The parcel office is over there. |
| Mutahhar : | I want to send this parcel and this box to Saudi Arabia. |
| Employee : | What is inside them? |
| Mutahhar : | There are books, papers,... etc. in the parcel. There are clothes and children's clothes in the box. |
| Employee : | Ordinary or airmail? |
| Mutahhar : | Ordinary but registered (mail). Weigh them, please! |
| Employee : | Put them on the scales! .... Two kilograms and fifty grams. They cost you sixty-five riyals. |
| Mutahhar : | The receipt, please! |
| Employee : | Here! |
| Mutahhar : | God bless you! |

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| 'arsal | (yirsil) to send |
| risaala | (rasaa'il) letter. syn. maktuub p. makaatiib |
| musajjal | (-iin) registered, certified |
| jawwi | (-yyiin) adj. air; airmail |
| Taabi9 | (Tawaabi9) postage stamp |
| Tard | (Turuud) parcel, package |
| Sanduug | (Sanaadiig) box, crate; trunk |
| maktab aT-Turuud | the parcel (post) office |
| θiyaab | clothes. syn. malaabis |
| wazan | (yuuzin) to weigh |
| kiiloGraam | (-aat) kilogram |
| Graam | (-aat) gram |
| kallaf | (ykallif) to cost |
| waSl | (wuSuul) receipt |
| baarak | (ybaarik) to bless s.o. |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| wuSul | (yiwSal) to arrive in a place |
| ʃaal | (yʃiil) to carry; to lift |
| ʃall | (yʃill) to carry; to lift; to steal |
| b-l-baHr | adv. by sea |
| Sanduug bariid | (Sanaadiig ____) mail box |
| 9inwaan | (9anaawiin) address |
| mursil | (-iin) sender |
| bargiyya | (-aat) telegram, cable. var. bargiya |
| xafiif | (xifaaf) light, not heavy |
| θagiil | (-iin) heavy |
| sajjal | (ysajjil) to register; to record |
| saag | (ysuug) to drive, e.g., a car |

## V. GRAMMAR

### Perfect Tense

1. wazan 'to weigh', imperf. yuuzin, is a regular perfect-tense verb. The imperfect-tense is also regular, except for the first person masculine singular form; it is 'awzin 'I weigh'.

2. wuSul 'to arrive', imperf. yiwSal; the first person masculine singular form is 'awSal.

3. ʃaal 'to carry; to lift' has two perfect stems: ʃaal- and ʃil-, like saar 'to go; to walk'. It is conjugated like saar.

4. ʃall 'to carry; to lift; to steal; is conjugated like tamm 'to complete, finish' (UNIT 32).

5. saag 'to drive', like kaan 'to be' has two perfect stems, i.e., saag- and sug-; it is conjugated like kaan, 'to be'.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

'aʃti 'arsil haaδi r-risaala la-'ingiltara.
'I would like to send this letter to England.'

1. London
2. America
3. Kuwait
4. Saudi Arabia
5. Syria
6. Bahrain
7. Ibb
8. Jordan
9. Hudaida
10. Iraq
11. Amran
12. Hajja
13. Tunisia
14. U.A.E.
15. QaTar

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'arsil haaδi r-risaala la-'ingiltara.

1. Tard
2. bargiyya
3. huw
4. hiy
5. gaTar
6. Tard
7. 'iHna
8. hum
9. 'ana
10. 9ali
11. 'ant ?
12. 'anti ?
13. Sanduug
14. 'antu
15. hin

### Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

T : regular -- air
$S_1$ : tiʃtiiha 9aadiyya 'aw musajjala ?
'Do you want it (f.s.) regular or airmail?'
$S_2$ : 9aadiyya law samaHt! 'Regular, please!'

1. regular -- registered
2. air -- by sea
3. by sea -- air
4. heavy -- light
5. big -- small

8. new -- old
9. black -- white
10. long -- short
11. now -- later
12. hot -- cold

6. expensive -- cheap
7. fried -- baked
13. German -- American
14. here -- there

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'addii-li Tabi9 b-ryaalayn! 'Give (m.s.) me a two-riyal stamp!'

1. 5 riyals
2. 2 dinars
3. give us
4. 10 riyals
5. give her
6. 20 fils
7. give them
8. 1/4 dinar
9. 1/2 dinar
10. 1 riyal
11. 1 1/2 riyals
12. give me
13. $.50
14. 5 cents
15. $3.50

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'arsila jawwi. 'I want to send it airmail.'

1. regular
2. registered
3. huw
4. 'iHna
5. by sea
6. huw
7. 'ant ?
8. airmail
9. 'anti ?
10. regular
11. 'antu ?
12. 'antayn ?
13. airmail
14. hum
15. 'iHna

Drill 6 Repetition

1. HuTTaha 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.s.) it (f.s.) on the scales!'
2. HuTTa 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (f.s.) it (m.) on the scales!'
3. HuTTahum 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.s.) them on the scales!'

4. HuTTiiha 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (f.s.) it (f.) on the scales!'
5. HuTTii 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (f.s.) it (m.) on the scales!'
6. HuTTiihum 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (f.s.) them on the scales!'

7. HuTTuuha 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.p.) it (f.) on the scales!'

8. HuTTuu 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.p.) it (m.) on the scales!'

9. HuTTuuhum 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.p.) them on the scales!'

### Drill 7 Substitution

a. T : 2.50 kgm.
   S : kiilowayn w-xamsmiyat Graam.
   'Two kilos and 500 grams.

1. 1 1/2 kgm.
2. 2 kgm.
3. 5 kgm.
4. 1 1/4 kgm.
5. 1.300 kgm.
6. 2.350 kgm.
7. 2.050 kgm.
8. 2.700 kgm.
9. 3.620 kgm.
10. 3.100 kgm.
11. 4.820 kgm.
12. 12.580 kgm.
13. 15.240 kgm.
14. 14.860 kgm.
15. 1/3 kgm.

b. ykallifak xamsa w-9i∫riin ryaal.
   'It (m.s.) costs you (m.s.) YR. 25.

1. 2 dinars
2. 45 riyals
3. 1 1/2 dinar
4. $2.00
5. $5.00
6. $1 1/2
7. 3 1/2 dinars
8. 1/3 dinar
9. 153 riyals
10. $1,000
11. $2,500
12. 150 fils
13. 200 fils
14. 2 1/2 riyaals
15. 75 riyals

### Drill 8 Question--Answer

$S_1$ : f-ayy Hiin yiwSal ? 'When does he (it) arrive?'
$S_2$ : n∫aaLLa ba9d ∫ahrayn 'aw θalaaθa.
'Hopefully in two or three months.'

1. one or two days
2. one or two hours
3. one or two weeks
4. one or two months
5. six or seven days
8. three or four months
9. five or six days
10. one or two weeks
11. seven or eight months
12. nine or ten days

6. three or four hours
7. two or three minutes
13. five or six minutes
14. 1/4 or 1/3 hour

### Drill 9 Variable Substitution

ruH aT-Taaga θ-θaaniya! 'Go (m.s.) to the second window!'

1. 3rd
2. 4th
3. 1st
4. 6th
5. 'ant
6. 2nd
7. 'antu
8. 'anti
9. 'aT-TarHa
10. 'ant
11. 3rd
12. 'anti
13. 'aT-Taaga
14. 'antu
15. 'antayn

### Drill 10 Transformation

kaan yiʃti yirsila musajjal. → gad 'arsala musajjal.
'He wanted to send it registered.' → 'He did send it registered.'

1. huw kaani yiʃti yiwSal al-yawm.
2. huw kaani yiʃti yʃiil aS-Sanduug.
3. huw kaani yʃill al-fuluus.
4. hiy kaanat tiʃti tsajjil 'ismaha.
5. 'ant kunt tiʃti tsuug as-sayyaara.
6. huw kaan yiʃti ysuug as-sayyaara.
7. huw kaan yiʃti yiHtafil b-l-9iid Gudwa.
8. kaanu yiʃtu yi9malu Haflat Gadaa'.
9. kaan yiʃti yilbis banTaloon w-ʃamiiz.
10. kaanu yiʃtu yruuHu b-r-rijl.
11. kaanu yiʃtu yiju w-ysallimu 9alaykum.
12. 'antu kuntu tiʃtu ta9rifu l-9inwaan ?
13. 'anti kunti tiʃti tsaafiri waHdiʃ ?
14. hum kaanu yiʃtu yirsilu Tard la-'amriika.
15. huw kaan yiʃti yuktub risaala la-l-mudiir.

Drill 11 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. huw 'arsal risaala.
2. hum Sallu fi-l-bayt.
3. huw zaar 'agribaa'a.
4. maabiʃ rijaal haana.
5. al-9aam al-maaδ̣i.
6. jaa' w-sallam 9alayna.
7. Htafal b-l-9iid ma9aana.
8. huw saag as-sayyaara.
9. sajjal 'ibna fi l-madrasa.
10. wuSul aS-SubH.
11. nisi yiʃtari TamaaTiis.
12. yiʃti ysiir la-s-suug.
13. huw mursil al-bargiyya.
14. man al-mursil ?

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. xayriya : 'aʃti 'arsil haaδa T-Tard la-'amriika.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : jawwi 'aw b-l-baHr ?
xayriya : jawwi.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : musajjal 'aw 9aadi ?
xayriya : musajjal law samaHt.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : man al-mursil ?
xayriya : 'ana xayriya bint 9abd al-gaadir.
'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af : 'al-9inwaan ?
xayriya : Sanduug bariid 'arba9a-waaHid-xamsa-θalaaθa.

2. mHammad : fii film naahi fi siinama l-Hamraa'. tiʃti truuH ma9i Gudwa ya faxri ?
faxri : sayyaarati mu9aTTala. ma 'agdarʃ 'aruuH.
mHammad : lilma ? maa laha ?
faxri : 'al-mawtar ma yiʃtaGilʃ. ʃa-xuδha la-l-garaaj ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr.
mHammad : ʃa-ji 'aaxuδak b-sayyaarati.
faxri : maaʃi. ʃukran. 'ana maʃGuul kaiir Gudwa.
mHammad : 'ant maʃGuul yawmiya!

# UNIT 39

## I. TEXT

### fi l-Gassaala

yaHya : haaδawlaa' θiyaabi. 'aʃtiik tiGsilhum w-tkawwiihum law samaHt.

fahmi : Haaδ̣ir. 'iftaH al-kiis w-xalliini 'asajjilhum!
(yaHya yiftaH al-kiis.) 9iddahum w-'ana 'asajjilhum.

yaHya : haaδawlaa' θalaaθat ʃumzaan w-banTaloonayn w-'arba9at faaniilaat w-θalaaθat ʃaraabaat w-fuuTatayn.

fahmi : tiʃtiini 'aSabbinhum w-'akawwiihum kamaan ?

yaHya : 'ii na9am. δ̣aruuri. f-ayy Hiin 'ajii-lhum ? mata 'aji 'aaxuδhum ?

fahmi : raa9i ʃwayya!... ta9aal ba9d Gudwa yawm ar-rabuu9! naahi ?

yaHya : naahi gawi. xaaTirkum!

fahmi : ma9 as-salaama!

## II. TRANSLATION

### At the Laundry

Yahia: These are my clothes. I want you to wash them and iron them, if you please.

Fahmi : At your service! Open the bag and let me record them.
(Yahia opens the bag.) Count them and let me record them.

Yahia: There are three shirts, two pants, four T-shirts, three pairs of socks, and two skirts.

Fahmi : Do you want me to wash them (with soap) and iron them too?

Yahia: Yes, indeed. It's necessary. When shall I come for them? When shall I come to take them?

Fahmi : Wait a minute!... Come after tomorrow, Wednesday? Is it all right?

Yahia: Very good! Goodbye!

Fahmi : Goodbye.

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| Gassaala | (-aat) laundry, laundromat |
| Gasal | (yiGsil) to wash |
| kawwa | (ykawwi) to iron |
| fataH | (yiftaH) to open |
| kiis | ('akyaas) bag; bundle, packet |
| xalla | (yxalli) to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th. |
| 9add | (y9idd) to count, enumerate |
| ʃaraab | (-aat) pair of socks |
| fuuTa | (fuwaT) men's skirt |
| Sabban | (ySabbin) to wash with soap |
| kamaan | also, too |
| jaa' l- | (yiji) to come for s.o. or s.th. |
| mata | interrog. part. when. syn. f-ayy Hiin |
| raa9a (l-) | (yraa9i) to wait (for), await s.o. or s.th. |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| manʃafa | (manaaʃif) towel |
| millaaya | (-aat) bed sheet |
| TarHa | (TuraH) bedspread |
| baTTaaniya | (-aat) blanket |
| Saabuun | coll. soap. s. Saabuuna |
| ʃaraab nisaa'i | (-aat nisaa'iyya) pair of stockings |
| kaawiya | (-aat) an iron |
| maknis | makaanis) broom |
| nað̣ð̣af | (ynað̣ð̣if) to clean |
| kannas | (ykannis) to sweep (with a broom) |
| xalas | (yaxlis) to undress, take off one's clothes |
| taHammam | (yitHammam) to take a bath, bathe |

## V. GRAMMAR

1. kawwa 'to iron' and xalla 'to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.' are conjugated like Hayya (UNIT 32).

2. The verb 9add 'to count' is conjugated like tamm (UNIT 32).

3. The verb raa9a (l-) 'to wait (for), await s.o. or s.th.' is defective because of final -a. It is conjugated like tamm also. Note that the medial -aa- does not change.

## VI. DRILLS

### Drill 1 Substitution

'aʃti aGsil θiyaabi. 'I want to wash my clothes.'

1. my socks
2. four pairs of socks
3. the bed sheet
4. two bedspreads
5. three blankets
6. my pants and shirts
7. my towels
8. my overcoats
9. their dresses and blouses
10. their undershirts
11. our clothes
12. three shirts
13. two pants
14. a head dress

### Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aGsil w-'akawwi l-malaabis.
'I want to wash and iron the clothes.'

1. 'aʃ-ʃamiiz
2. 'aʃ-ʃaraab
3. huw
4. 'al-banTaloon
5. hiy
6. 'al-bluuz
7. 'aθ-θiyaab
8. hum
9. 'iHna
10. 'al-fuwaT
11. hin
12. 'ant ?
13. 'anti ?
14. 'antu ?
15. 'ana

**Drill 3** Conjugation

Gasal w-kawwa l-malaabis. 'He washed and ironed the clothes.'

1. hiy
2. hum
3. 'iHna
4. 'ant
5. 'anti
6. hin
7. 'antayn
8. 'ana
9. huw
10. 'antu
11. hiy
12. 'ana

**Drill 4** Question -- Answer

A. T : 9idd al-fuluus w-sajjilhum! 'Count (m.s.) the money and record it!'

S : 9addayt al-fuluus w-sajjaltahum. 'I counted the money and recorded it.'

1. 9iddi l-fuluus w-sajjiliihum!
2. 9iddu l-fuluus w-sajjiluuhum!
3. 9iddayn al-fuluus w-sajjilaynahum!
4. 9idd al-fuluus w-sajjilhum!

B. T : la t9id al-fuluus! 'Do not count (m.s.) the money!'

S : ma 9addaytʃ al-fuluus. 'I did not count the money.'

1. laa t9iddi l-fuluus!
2. laa t9iddu l-fuluus!
3. laa t9iddayn al-fuluus!
4. laa t9idd al-fuluus!

**Drill 5** Substitution

xalliini 'a9idd al-fuluus! 'Let me count the money!'

1. count the socks
2. count the books
3. open the door
4. wash the clothes
8. wash the blanket
9. wait for the minister
10. come for them tomorrow
11. clean the car

5. iron the socks
6. record the books
7. register the students
12. sweep the house
13. take off my clothes
14. take a bath

### Drill 6 Double Substitution

f-ayy Hiin 'ajii-lhum? 'When do I come for them?

1. 'ana -- you (m.s.)
2. 'ana -- you (m.p.)
3. huw -- us
4. huw -- her
5. hum -- you (f.s.)
6. hum -- us
7. 'ant -- them (m.)
8. 'anti -- her
9. 'anti -- them (f.)
10. hin -- us
11. hin -- you (f.s.)
12. 'antu -- us
13. 'antayn -- us
14. 'iHna -- you (m.p.)

### Drill 7 Variable Substitution

'iftaH al-kiis! 'Open (m.s.) the bag!'

1. 'anti
2. 'antu
3. the parcel
4. 'ant
5. the door
6. the window
7. perfect
8. the box
9. 'iHna
10. imperative
11. the letter
12. 'ant
13. neg. command
14. the window
15. the telegram

### Drill 8 Substitution

ta9aal yawm ar-rabuu9! 'Come (m.s.) on Wednesday.'

1. Thursday
2. Sunday
3. Friday
4. tomorrow
5. after tomorrow
6. today
7. at 10:30
8. at 2:40
9. Monday
10. Tuesday
11. in two days
12. in two hours
13. Wednesday
14. Saturday
15. at 12:15

### Drill 9 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. 'arsal aT-Tard b-l-baHr.
2. sajjal ar-risaala.
3. 9addu al-fuluus.
4. ʃill aS-Sanduug!
5. baarak aLLa fiik!
6. wuSul 'ams aS-SubH.
7. ma yigdar ysuug.
8. ʃtara ganaadir w-Sanaadil.
9. Htafalu b-l-9idd.
10. Salla fi l-bayt.
11. nisi yGallig al-baab.
12. maa lak ? mariið̣ ?
13. wazan aʃ-ʃimiiT.
14. ʃtaru Tawaabi9.

### Drill 10 Translation

1. He went to the Post Office on foot and sent an airmail letter.
2. The car was expensive. It cost me $12,000.
3. What is your address? Do you have a mail box?
4. This telegram arrived yesterday. Take it and open it!
5. I opened it, read it, and sent an answer.
6. Was it heavy or light? Did you register it?
7. Today is a holiday. It is the Ramadhan Feast. The Sacrifice Feast will be in seventy days.
8. Christmas and New Year's are holidays; we celebrate them every year.
9. There are other holidays, such as Mother's Day, May Day, Arbor Day, Revolution Day, and the Prophet's Birthday.
10. People visit their relatives and go to parks and public gardens.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. mHammad : f-ayy Hiin yiftaH as-suug fi ramað̣aan ?
   'ismaa9iil : yiftaH aS-SubH tagriib saa9at tisi9 'aw 9aʃir.
   mHammad : w-mata yGallig ?
   'ismaa9iil : yGallig ba9d að̣-ð̣uhr tagriib as-saa9a xams.
   mHammad : yiftaH fi l-layl ?
   'ismaa9iil : 'ii na9am yiftaH min saa9at tagriib θamaan 'ila saa9at 9aʃir 'aw 'akθar.

mHammad : mata yurgudu n-naas fi ramað̣aan ?
'ismaa9iil : ba9d Salaat að̣-ð̣uhr.

2. 9abdu : fii Gassaala haana fi San9a ?
'aʃ-ʃurTi : 'aywa fii.
9abdu : mumkin tgull-li 'ayn hiy ?
'aʃ-ʃurTi : sir saani fi haaða ʃ-ʃaari9 Hawaali θamaaniin mitr w-ba9da liff yamiin. 'imʃsi saani la-9ind ad-daa'ira l-'awwala w-hownaak liff 9ala l-yasaar. 'imʃi tagriib 9iʃriin mitr tlaagi binaaya kabiira 9ala yaddak al-yamiin. haaði l-binaaya maktab al-bariid. 'al-Gassaala b-jambaha.
9abdu : ʃukran! xaaTrak!
'aʃ-ʃurTi : ma9 as-salaama.
9abdu : sallamak aLLaah.

# UNIT 40

## I. TEXT

### 'amθaal w-'agwaal

1. laa traajim an-naas w-baytak min zujaaj!
2. ma fi l-mudun Gayr San9a w-fi l-bawaadi ruSaaba.
3. bidaayat al-miil xaTwa.
4. 'ana 'amiir w-ant 'amiir; man yasuug al-Hamiir ?
5. 'al-yahwada fi l-guluub ma hiy b-Tuul az-zanaaniir.
6. 'al-jaar gabl ad-daar.
7. laa yinfa9ak ma ma9 'axuuk wala siraaja yð̣ii'-lak.
8. 'iða kaθurat al-'adyaak taxarrab al-layl.
9. 'az-zalaT txarrij al-jinn mrabbaTTiin.
10. 'ibn 'arba9iin nahaar ma yi9wir 9ayna.
11. laa titzawwaj w-9aad garguuʃ 'ummak fi T-Taaga.
12. man taGadda b-kiðba ma ta9aʃʃa b-ha.
13. 'as-sirr miθl al-Hamaami laa falat min yaddi Taar.
14. 'aL-Hajj aHmad 'aw 'aHmad al-Hajj.
15. 'aS-Sadiig wagt að̣-ð̣iig.
16. jaarak al-gariib wala 'axuuk al-ba9iid.

## II. TRANSLATION

Note: An equivalent or a similar proverb, saying, or proverbial phrase is given in English, followed by a literal translation of the Sanaani proverb or saying between quotes.

1. Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones.
   "Do not throw rocks at people if your house is made of glass."
2. Sanaa is the best of cities and Rusaba is the best of farm lands.
   "There is no (other) city except Sanaa, and there is no (other) farm land except Rusaba."
3. The first step is always the hardest. "The beginning of a mile is a step."

4. Each one has their own responsibility. "If I am a prince and you are a prince, who is going to drive the donkeys?"
5. Fair without and foul within. Beauty is only skin-deep. "Piety is in the heart; it is not (measured) by the length of side curls."
6. A man is known by the company he keeps. "(Inquire about) the neighbor before (inquiring about) the house!"
7. Depend on yourself! "What your brother has is of no avail to you; neither will his lantern give you light."
8. Too many cooks spoil the broth. "If there are too many roosters, the night will be spoiled."
9. Money talks. "Money drives away jinnis in shackels."
10. No one does harm to oneself. "A forty-day old will not blind himself in the eye."
11. Haste makes waste. "Do not get married and your mother's cap is still in the window!" *garguuɾ* is a cap that covers the whole head except for the eyes and the mouth; it is worn by children in winter. If your mother's *garguuɾ* is still in the window, your mother is still very young.
12. The truth will out. "He who has a lie for lunch, will not have it for dinner."
13. Keep the secret! Do not reveal it! "Secret is like a pigeon which, if released, will fly away."
14. Half a hundred is fifty. It's the same. "Pilgrim Ahmad or Ahmad, the Pilgrim."
15. A friend in need is the friend indeed. A friend is proved in distress. "A friend is for difficult times."
16. Out of sight out of mind. "Your close neighbor and not your distant brother."

## III. VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| maθal | ('amθaal) proverb |
| gawl | ('agwaal) saying |
| raajam | (yraajim) to stone, throw rocks at s.o. |
| baadiya | (bawaadi) farm land; planation |

| | |
|---|---|
| ruSaaba | Rusaba, village near Dhamar |
| bidaaya | v.n. beginning, start |
| miil | ('amyaal) mile |
| xaTwa | (-aat) step, stride; pace |
| 'amiir | ('umaraa') Emir, prince |
| Himaar | (Hamiir) donkey, ass |
| 'al-yahwada | v.n. belief in Judaism; piety, religiousness |
| zinnaar | (zanaaniir) side curl |
| jaar | (jiiraan) neighbor |
| wala | conj. nor |
| nafa9 | (yinfa9) to benefit s.o. |
| δ̣aa' (l-) | (yiδ̣ii') to light, illumine (s.th. or s.o.) |
| kaθur | (yukθur) to be abundant, abound |
| diik | ('adyaak) rooster |
| taxarrab | (yitxarrab) to be or become ruined, spoiled |
| zalaT | money. syn. fuluus |
| xarraj | (yxarrij) to send out, move out; to expel |
| jinn | coll. jinn, demons. s. jinni. f. jinniyya |
| mrabbaT | (-iin) tied up, bound, shackled |
| 9awar | (yi9wir) to make s.o. blind in one eye |
| 9ayn | (9uyuun) eye |
| garguuʃ | (garaagiiʃ) cap worn by children in winter |
| kiδba | (-aat) n. of instance, a lie |
| sirr | ('asraar) secret; v.n. secrecy |
| Hamaam | coll. pigeons; doves. s. Hammami |
| laa | conj. if. syn. 'iδa |
| falat | (yiflit) to escape, get away |
| Taar | (yTiir) intra. to fly, fly away |
| Hajj | (Hujjaaj) pilgrim; title of respect |
| wagt | ('awgaat) period of time, time |
| δ̣iig | v.n. distress, hardship |

## IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---|---|
| nihaaya | v.n. end; finis, conclusion |
| fi n-nihaaya | adv. at the end |
| fi l-bidaaya | adv. at the beinning |
| HiSaan | ('aHSuna) horse. f. faras |
| kalb | (kilaab) dog |
| dimm | (dimam) cat |
| Tayr | (Tuyuur) bird |
| la ... wala | conj. neither ... nor. syn. maaʃ w-maaʃ |

## V. GRAMMAR

### 1. Conditionals

A conditional sentence in SA is one which has an if-clause and a result or main clause. The if-clause is introduced by 'iδa or laa. An if-clause introduced by 'iδa expresses an open or a possible condition. The verb can be either perfect or imperfect in the if-clause, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it can be perfect, imperfect or imperative:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'iδa 'absarta gult-la. | 'If I see him, I will tell him.' |
| 'iδa 'absarta 'aguula-la. | 'If I see him, I will tell him.' |
| 'iδa 'absarta guul-la. | 'If you see him, tell him.' |
| laa falat min yaaddi Taar. | 'If it is released from my hand, it will fly away.' |
| laa yaflit min yaddi yaTiir. | 'If it is released from my hand it will fly away.' |

### Unlikely Conditionals

The clause introduced by laa usually expresses a condition which is unlikely or unreal. The verb in the laa-clause is either perfect or imperfect, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it is either perfect or imperfect, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it is either perfect or imperfect:

| | |
|---|---|
| laa ʃufta gult-la. | 'If I saw him, I would tell him.' |
| laa 'aʃuufa 'aguula-la. | 'If I saw him, I would tell him.' |

### Unreal Conditionals

The verb in the if-clause in unreal conditions is introduced by laa or law followed by a perfect-tense verb; the verb in the main clause is made up of kaan (invariable) and a verb in the perfect tense:

| | |
|---|---|
| laa 'absarta kaan gult-la. | 'If I had seen him, I would have told him.' |

### 2. Perfect Tense

The verbs taGadda 'to have lunch' and ta9aʃʃa 'to have dinner' are weak verbs and are conjugated like Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' and 'adda 'to give' (UNIT 32):

huw taGadda
hum ______u
hiy ______at

hin ______ayn
'ant ______ayt
'antu ______aytu
'iHna ______ayna

'anti ______ayti
'antayn ______aytayn
'ana ______ayt

### 3. Relative Clauses

In SA 'allaδi, var. 'ali, 'alli, introduces a relative clause which modifies a definite noun. 'allaδi is more commonly used. Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-binaaya llaδi 9ala l-yamiin | 'the building (which is) on the right' |
| 'aT-Tayr allaδi Taar | 'the bird which has flown' |
| 'aT-Tuyuur allaδi Taaru | 'the birds which have flown' |
| 'al-banaat allaδi jaa'ayn | 'the girls who came' |

If the noun modified by the relative clause is indefinite, the relative 'allaδi is not used:

| | |
|---|---|
| 'absart Tayr Taar. | 'I saw a bird that flew.' |
| haaδa Hajj yuskun ma9aana. | 'This is a pilgrim who lives with us. |

## VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

9indana Hamaam. 'We have pigeons.'

1. rooster
2. chickens
3. horse
4. donkey
5. two cats
6. dog
7. neighbors
8. money
9. birds
10. donkeys
11. dogs
12. pigeons

Drill 2 Transformation: singular → plural

1. ʃtara HiSaan.
2. 'al-Hamaami Taar.
3. 'aT-Tayyaara Taarat.
4. 9inda kalb w-dimm.
5. saag al-Hamiir.
6. sugt as-sayyaara.
7. 'al-jaar gabl ad-daar.
8. taxarrab at-talafoon.
9. libsat garguuʃaha
10. falat al-HiSaan.
11. falat al-Hamaami.
12. tazawwaj fi wagt aδ̣-δ̣iig.
13. xarrajni min al-bayt.
14. ma yinfa9akʃ ma ma9 'axuuk.
15. 'al-garguuʃ fi T-Taaga.
16. taGadda dajaaj w-ta9aʃʃa Huut.

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

huw 'absar al-kalb. 'He saw the dog.'

1. 'iHna
2. 'al-kilaab
3. 'ad-dimm
4. 'al-HiSaan
5. hum
6. hiy
7. 'al-'amiir
8. 'al-'umaraa'
9. huw
10. hin
11. 'antu
12. 'ana
13. 'ad-dimam
14. 'al-kilaab
15. 'antayn
16. 'al-'aHSuna
17. hum
18. 'al-Hamiir

**Drill 4** Transformation: imperative → negative command

1. sug as-sayyaara!
2. xarrijhum min al-bayt!
3. tazawwaji 'ibn 9ammiʃ!
4. taGadda ma9aahum!
5. ta9aʃʃa fi l-maT9am!
6. 'iGsil aθ-θiyaab!
7. kawwi ʃ-ʃamiiz!
8. 'iftaH al-baab!
9. xalliiha tiji waHdaha!
10. 9idd al-fuluus!
11. taHammam ba9 al-'akl!
12. 'ixlis θiyaabak!
13. 'ilbisi banTaloon w-ʃamiiz!
14. 'arsil haaδi r-risaala!
15. ʃillu ʃ-ʃimiiT!
16. 'uuzin aT-Tard!

**Drill 5** Double Substitution

1. I -- his sister
2. she -- her cousin
3. you (m.s.) -- your friend
4. they (m.) -- their cousins
5. he -- his friend
6. they (f.) their cousins
7. I -- her sister
8. you (m.p.) -- those girls
9. you (f.) -- his brother
10. they (m.) -- our daughters
11. he -- my daughter
12. you (m.s.) -- my niece
13. you (f.s.) -- my nephew
14. we -- your nieces

**Drill 6** Completion

'iδa 'absarta .... 'If I, you (m.s.) see him, ....

1. I will tell him
2. I will tell you (f.s.)
3. greet him
4. give him the letter
5. I will ask him
6. send him my regards
7. talk to him
8. walk with him
9. show him the letter
10. take the money from him
11. don't forget to tell him
12. shake hands with him
13. I will return with him
14. I will give him money
15. stay with him
16. invite him to dinner

### Drill 7 Completion

law 'asbarta kaan .... 'If I had seen him, I would have ....'

Use substitutions from Drill 6 above.

### Drill 8 Combination

haaδa Tayr. 'aT-Tayr Taar. → haaδa T-Tayr allaδi Taar.
'This is a bird. The bird flew away. →
This is the bird that flew away.'

haaδi sayyaara. 'as-sayyaara ma9 'axi. →
haaδi s-sayyaara llaδi ma9 'axi.
'This is a car. The car is with my brother. →
This is the car which is with my brother.'

1. haaδa ʃaari9. 'aʃ-ʃaari9 9ala l-yamiin.
2. haaδi binaaya. 'al-binaaya 9ala l-yasaar.
3. haaδa maktab. 'al-maktab 9ala T-TarHa θ-θaaniya.
4. haaδi mara. 'al-mara jaa'at 'ams.
5. haaδi Taaliba. 'aT-Taaliba sa'alat su'aal.
6. haaδa mudiir. 'al-mudiir yisaa9id kull waaHid.
7. haaδi sikirteera. 'as-sikirteera ti9mal fi l-bank.
8. haaδawla 'awlaad. 'al-'awlaad daxalu l-madrasa.
9. haaδawla banaat. 'al-banaat yudrusayn fi l-jaami9a.
10. haaδa muwaδ̣δ̣af. 'al-muwaδ̣δ̣af gaddam Talab 'ijaaza.
11. haaδawla 'awlaad. 'al-'awlaad raajamu n-naas.
12. haaδa 'amiir. 'al-'amiir 'adda lana fuluus.
13. haaδa dimm. 'ad-dimm 'akal al-laHm.
14. haaδi mu9allima. 'al-mu9allima HaSalat 9ala munHa.

### Drill 9 Combination

haaδa l-fundug allaδi fi San9a. → haaδa fundug fi San9a.
'This is the hotel which is in Sanaa. → This is a hotel in Sanaa.'

Use examples from Drill 8 above.

### Drill 10 Translation

1. There are proverbs and sayings in every language.
2. Rawda is a city which is not very far from Sanaa.
3. This is our neighbor who works for the Ministry of Communications.
4. The students who travelled to America returned last week.
5. You can read this book from start to finish in three hours.
6. There is no one who can help you in times of distress except your folks.
7. He lives alone. He cooks his food, does the dishes, cleans his apartment, washes and irons his clothes.
8. I want you to go to the market and buy soap, a broom and an iron.
9. He always takes a bath before he goes to work. There are some people who bathe only once every week.
10. We want someone who can drive a bus every day from Sanaa to Hajja.
11. If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.
12. If I see him, I will ask him about the money.
13. If I had seen him, I would have told him.
14. If he studied hard, he would graduate this year.

## VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : ta9rif 'amθaal w-'agwaal b-l-9arabi ya Jim ?
   Jim : 'a9rif galiil, maaʃ kaθiir.
   9ali : 'ayʃ ta9rif.
   Jim : laa traajim an-naas w-baytak min zujaaj.
   9ali : 'aa waLLa haaδa maθal naahi. 9indakum maθal miθl haaδa b-l-'ingiliizi ?

Jim : na9am. nguul: "Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones."

9ali : naahi. 'ayʃ ta9rif kamaan ?

Jim : bidaayat al-miil xaTwa.

9ali : tamaam! haaða miθlima tguulu b-l'ingiliizi "The first step is always the hardest."

Jim : maaʃ miya fi l-miya ("one hundred percent"). haaða huw al-ma9na ("meaning").

2. Jim : ya 9ali! fii maθal b-l-'ingiliizi yguul : "Fair without and foul within". 9indakum ʃay' miθl haaða b-l-9arabi ?

9ali : ma 'a9rifʃ. 'iSbir! dagiiga! nisiit.

Jim : nguul kamaan : "Beauty is only skin-deep."

9ali : 'aa! ðalHiin 9irift. nguul : "'al-yahwada fi l-guluub ma hiy b-Tuul az-zanaaniir."

Jim : ya9ni "Belief in Judaism is in the heart, not by the length of side curls. tamaam! Tab9an.

# GLOSSARY

The vocabulary items in the Yemeni Arabic-English glossary are arranged alphabetically, according to the letters and special symbols used in the text: ' b d f g G h H j k l L m n q r s S ʃ t T w x y z θ δ δ̣ 9 . Nouns and adjectives are entered in the masculine singular form in parentheses in the meaning section. Feminine color adjectives are also included with their plural parenthesized and the masculine singular form in the meaning section. Verbs are entered in their third person masculine singular form of the perfect tense, followed by the imperfect tense in parentheses in the meaning part.

In the English-Yemeni Arabic glossary the equivalent of an English word is given followed by the plural. Verbs are entered in the infinitive - without "to" form followed by the perfect and the imperfect tenses in the meaning section. Items in parentheses are explanatory.

# YEMENI ARABIC-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

'

'ab/'abu- ('aabaa') father
'absar (yibsir) to see, watch
'abu δ̣abi Abu Dhabi
'abyaδ̣ (biiδ̣) white. f. *bayδ̣aa'*
'adda (l-) (y'addi) to give s.o. (s.th.)
'ad-dawHa Doha, capital city of Qatar
'ahl folks; family (m.p.). *'ahlan wa sahlan!* Welcome!
'aHad someone; anyone. *maabiʃ 'aHad.* There isn't anyone.
'aHmar (Humr) red. f. *Hamraa'*
'aHsan elat. adj. better; best
'akal (ya'kul) to eat
'akl food. syn. *Ta9aam*
'akmal (yikmil) to complete, finish
'al-'aHad Sunday
'al-'aLmaaniyya The German Airline, Lufthansa
'al-'aʃGaal The Ministry of Public Works
'al-'ax-- (title) Brother--
'al-'imaaraat The Emirates, the U.A.E.
'al-'iθnayn Monday
'al-'urdun Jordan
'al-'iδaa9a (-aat) the broadcasting station
'al-baakistaan Pakistan
'al-baHrayn Bahrain
'alf ('aalaaf) one thousand
'al-faransiyya the French (plane, airplane, company), Air France
'alfayn two thousand
'al-gaahira Cairo
'al-hind India
'al-Hodayda Hudaida
'al-jawaazaat the passports department
'al-jazaa'ir Algeria
'al-jum9a Friday

| | |
|---|---|
| 'al-kuwayt | Kuwait |
| 'allaδi | rel. pron. who, which, that. var. 'ali, 'alli |
| 'al-maaliyya | the ministry of finance |
| 'al-maGrib | Morocco |
| 'al-maxa | Mocha, city in the Y.A.R. |
| 'al-xamiis | Thursday |
| 'al-xariif | autumn, fall |
| 'al-xarTuum | Khartoum |
| 'al-yahwada | v.n. Judaism; piety, religiousness |
| 'al-yaman | Yemen |
| 'al-yamaniyya | Yamaniya (Airline) |
| 'al-yawm | today. 'al-yawm al-masaa' tonight. 'al-yawm aS-SubH this morning. 'al-yawm aδ̣-δ̣uhr today at noon |
| 'alla | God. var. 'aLLaah |
| 'aLmaanya | Germany |
| 'al-9iraag | Iraq |
| 'amaam | adv.; prep. in front; in front of. var. guddaam |
| 'amaan | v.n. safety; security |
| 'amiir ('umaraa') | Emir, prince |
| 'amriiki (-yyiin) | American; characteristic of America |
| 'ams | yesterday. 'ams al 9aʃi last night. 'ams aS-SubH yesterday morning |
| 'ana ('iHna) | I |
| 'ant ('antu) | you (m.s.) |
| 'antayn | you (f.p.) |
| 'anti ('antayn) | you (f.s.) |
| 'antu | you (m.p.) |
| 'arba9a | four. 'arba9at rijaal four men. 'arba9a 'alf four thousand |
| 'arba9iin | forty |
| 'arba9miya | four hundred |
| 'arba9Ta9ʃ/-ar | fourteen |
| 'ar-rabaaT | Rabat |
| 'ar-rabii9 | spring (season) |
| 'ar-rabuu9 | Wednesday |
| 'ar-rawδ̣a | Rawda, city in the Y.A.R. |
| 'ar-riyaaδ̣ | Riyadh |

'arsal (yirsil) to send

'arδ̣ ('araaδ̣i) floor of a room; dirt, earth

'as-saa9a It is ... o'clock; at (the time of)

'as-sabt Saturday. 'as-sabt al-maaδ̣i last Saturday

'as-suudaan The Sudan

'as-su9uudiyya Saudi (Airline); Saudi Arabia

'aswad (suud) black. f. sawdaa'

'aSfar (Sufr) yellow. f. Safraa'

'aS-Sayf summer. 'aS-Sayf al-maaδ̣i last summer

'aS-SubH in the morning. var. 'aS-SabaaH

'aʃ-ʃaariga Sharja

'aʃ-ʃitaa' winter (m.). faSl aʃ-ʃitaa' the winter season

'aʃti I want, would like to

'at-taHriir Tahrir (Independence) Square, also known as maydaan at-taHriir

'aw conj. or. tiʃti haaδa 'aw δaak? Do you want this or that one?

'awwal (with foll. def. n.) the first part of. (with foll. indef. n.) the first. 'awwal ʃay' at first; the first thing

'ax/'axu- ('ixwa) brother

'axaδ (ya'xuδ) to take

'axδ̣ar (xuδ̣r) green. f. xaδ̣raa'

'ayn? where?

'ayʃ? what? syn. maa?

'aywa yes. syn. na9am, 'ii

'ayy which? what? any. 'ayy waaHid? Which one? ma 'aʃtiiʃ 'ayy ʃay'. I do do not want anything.

'azrag (zurg) blue. f. zargaa'

'aθ-θaluuθ Tuesday. 'al-yawm aθ-θaluuθ. Today is Tuesday.

'ibb Ibb, city in the Y.A.R.

'ibn ('abnaa') son; son of

'ibn xaal cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' xaal

'ibn 9amm cousin (m.), son of one's paternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' 9amm

'ibtidaa'i (-yyiin) elementary, primary

'idaara v.n. administration

'ifranji (-yyiin) Western, European

'iglaa9 v.n. departure (of a plane), taking off

'iHna we

| | |
|---|---|
| 'ii | yes. syn. na9am |
| 'iijaar | rent; rent money. la l-'iijaar for rent |
| 'iiraan | Persia, Iran |
| 'iiTaalya | Italy |
| 'ijaaza (-aat) | leave, vacation |
| 'ila | prep. to. var. la- |
| 'illa | to (e.g. quarter to five); except |
| 'ingiliizi | adj. English; Englishman |
| 'ingiltara | England |
| 'inna | conj. that |
| 'ism ('asmaa') | name |
| 'iθnayn | two. f. θintayn |
| 'iθna9ʃ/-ar | twelve |
| 'iδa | conj. if |
| 'iδaa9a | v.n. broadcasting. 'al-'iδaa9a the broadcasting station |
| 'iδan | conj. then, therefore |
| 'i9jab (yi9jib) | to please s.o. 'i9jabni l-jaww. I liked the weather. |
| 'umm ('ummahaat) | mother |
| 'usbuu9 ('asaabii9) | week. 'al-'usbuu9 al maaδi last week |
| 'usra ('usar) | family; household |
| 'uxt ('axawaat) | sister |
| b- | prep. by; with; for. b-jamb beside, next to. b-kam? For how much? b-l-baaS by bus. b-l-baHr by sea. b-r-rijl on foot. b-s-sayyaara by car. b-T-Tayyaara by plane |
| baab ('abwaab) | door |
| baadiya (bawaadi) | farm (land;plantation) |
| baagi | n. remainder; change. act. part. remaining, leftover |
| baamya | coll. okra. un. Habbat baamya |
| baarak fi (ybaarik) | to bless s.o. |
| baarid | n. something cold, beverage. adj. cold. elat. 'abrad |
| baariis | Paris |
| baaS (-aat) | bus. b-l-baaS by bus |
| baaδinjaan | coll. eggplant. un. baaδinjaana |
| baddal (ybaddil) | to change, alter; to exchange |
| bagari | coll. beef |

baGdaad  Baghdad

baHr (biHaar)  sea

balad (bilaad)  country; town, city (m. or f.)

balas  coll. cactus fruit. un. balasa. balas 9arabi coll. figs. un. Habbat balas 9arabi

bank (bunuuk)  bank. bank ad-damm the blood bank

banTaloon (-aat)  trousers, pants

bard  v.n. cold weather

bargiyya (-aat)  telegram, cable

barguug  coll. apricots. un. barguuga

bariid  mail, letters (m.s.)

bass  but; only

baSal  coll. green onions. un. buSli

batrool  gasoline; petroleum

baTaarya (-aat)  battery

baTTa (-aat)  deck of playing cards

baTTaaniya (-aat)  blanket

baTTiix  coll. cantaloupes, muskmelons. un. baTTiixa

bayruut  Beirut

bayt (buyuut)  house, home

bayyaa9 (-iin)  seller, vendor

bayδ̣  coll. eggs. un. bayδ̣a

bayδ̣aa' (biiδ̣)  white (f.). m. 'abyaδ̣

ba9d  prep. after. ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr in the afternoon

ba9da  later on; also, too

ba9dima  conj. after

ba9iid (-iin)  far; far away

bidaaya  v.n. beginning, start. fi l-bidaaya at the beginning

bigi (yibga)  to stay, remain

biibar  coll. bell peppers. un. biibari

biira  beer. gaaruurat biira bottle of beer

bilaad (buldaan)  country

bin  the son of; son

binaaya (-aat)  building

bint (banaat)  daughter; girl

bint xaal cousin (f.), daughter of one's maternal uncle. p. banaat xaal

bint 9amm cousin (f.), daughter of one's paternal uncle. p. banaat 9amm

bisbaas coll. hot peppers. un. bisbaasi

biTaaga (-aat) card; ticket. biTaagat xuruuj boarding pass

b-jamb prep. beside, next to

b-kam? For how much?

b-l-baaS by bus

b-l-baHr by sea

bluuz (-aat) blouse

b-r-rijl on foot

b-s-sayyaara by car

b-T-Tayyaara by plane

bunn Yemeni coffee

bunni (-yyiin) brown. f. bunniyya

burtagaal coll. oranges. un. burtagaala

burtagaali (-yyiin) adj. orange. f. burtagaaliyya

bustaan (basaatiin) backyard; garden; orchard

buSSaala coll. (brown) onions. un. ra's buSSaala

buTaaT coll. potatoes. un. buTaaTa

b-xayr adv. fine, in good health

b-9iʃriin for twenty

daa'ira (dawaa'ir) department; circle, roundabout

daar (duur) house, home; building. daar al-mu9allimaat the women's teacher training college

daaxil adv.; prep. inside

dafa9 (yidfa9) to pay

daftar (dafaatir) notebook, copybook

dagg (ydugg) tran., intran. to ring

dagiiga (dagaa'ig) minute; moment

dajaaj coll. chickens; chicken. un. dajaaja

dajla (-aat) overcoat

daktoor (dakaatira) doctor. daktoor 9uyuun eye doctor

dala dala adv. slowly. syn. ʃwayya ʃwayya. opp. fiisa9

damm coll. blood. bank ad-damm the blood bank

dara b- (yidri) to know, be aware of something daras (yudrus) to study

darras (ydarris) to teach

dars (duruus) lesson

darzan (daraazin) dozen. darzan bayδ̣ dozen eggs

dawaa' ('adwiya) medicine. syn. 9ilaaj

dawwar 9ala (ydawwir) to look for s.o. or s.th.

daxal (yudxul) to enter

dayma (diyam) kitchen, old Yemeni kitchen

dihn coll. shortening

diik ('adyaak) rooster

diinaar (danaaniir) dinar

diiwaan (dawaawiin) living room

dikkaan (dakaakiin) shop, store. syn. Haanuut p.Hawaaniit

dimaʃg Damascus

dimm (dimam) cat

dubayy Dubai

dubbe coll. zucchini. un. dubbaayi

duulaab (dawaaliib) wardrobe; cupboard

duulaar (-aat) dollar

duxuul v.n. entrance; admission. biTaagat duxuul admission card

faaniila (-aat) undershirt, T-shirt

faaSuulya coll. beans. un. Habbat faaSuulya

faatuura (fawaatiir) bill, invoice

fagiir (-iin, fugaraa') poor. elat. 'afgar

fagr damm anaemia

falat (yiflit) be released; to get away

faransa France

faSl (fuSuul) season

fataH (yiftaH) to open

fawg adv. upstairs; prep. above; over

fi prep. in, inside

fii there is; there are. opp. maabiʃ

fiisa9 adv. fast, quickly

film ('aflaam) film, movie

finjaan (fanaajiin) cup; cup of s.th.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| fuluus | | money (f.s.). syn. zalaT |
| fundug | (fanaadig) | hotel. syn. 'uteel p. -aat |
| furn | ('afraan) | oven; stove |
| fustaan | (fasaatiin) | dress, woman's dress |
| fuuTa | (fuwaT) | towel |
| gaabal | (ygaabil) | to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o. |
| gaal | (yguul) | to say. gaal l- to tell, inform s.o. |
| gaaruura | (gawaariir) | bottle; bottle of s.th. |
| gaat | | coll. qat. un. 9irg gaat or 9uudi gaat |
| gaa9 | (gii9aan) | quarter, section of a city. gaa9 al-yahuud the Jewish Quarter |
| gabl | | prep. before |
| gablima | | conj. before |
| gaddam | (ygaddim) | to present, submit, e.g. an application. gaddam Talab He submitted an application. |
| gadiim | (gidaam) | old, not new. elat. 'agdam |
| gafaS | (gifaaS) | package, e.g., gafaS igaayir package of cigarettes |
| gahwa | | coffee |
| galam | ('aglaam) | pen, pencil |
| galaS | (-aat) | glass of s.th.; drinking glass (f.) |
| galb | (guluub) | heart |
| galoon | (-aat) | gallon |
| gandiil | (ganaadiil) | light bulb |
| gara' | (yigra') | to read |
| garguuʃ | (garaagiiʃ) | cap worn by children in winter |
| gariib | ('agaarib) | relatives, relations |
| gariib | | adj. close, nearby. elat. 'agrab. gariib min near, close to |
| gaSiir | (giSaar) | short, not long. elat. 'agSar |
| gaS9a | (giSa9) | small can (e.g., of tomato sauce, cheese, etc.)<br>gaS9at TamaaTiis tomato can |
| gaTar | | Qatar |
| gawi | (-yyiin) | strong, powerful. elat. 'agwa |
| gawl | ('agwaal) | saying; proverb |
| gidir | (yigdar) | to be able to do s.th. |
| gism | ('agsaam) | section; part |
| giʃr | | skin (e.g., of coffee beans). gahwat giʃr Yemeni coffee |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| gubba9a | (-aat) | hat, Western hat. syn. Tarbuuʃ p. Taraabiiʃ |
| guddaam | | prep. in front of; adv. in front, toward. var. 'amaam |
| gumgumi | (gamaagim) | can, e.g., can of motor oil |
| gundara | (ganaadir) | pair of shoes |
| gunSuliyya | (-aat) | consulate |

### G

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gaali | (-yiin) | expensive. elat. 'aGla |
| GaaliT | (-iin) | mistaken, having made a mistake |
| Gadaa' | (-aat) | lunch |
| GalaT | | incorrect, wrong |
| Gallag | (yGallig) | to shut, close |
| Gani | (-yyiin), 'aGniyaa') | rich. elat. 'aGna |
| Garb | | west, western part (of) |
| Gasal | (yiGsil) | to wash |
| Gassaala | (-aat) | washing machine; laundromat |
| Gayr | | neg. part. (with foll. n.) other than; different from. (with foll. adj.) not, un- |
| Graam | (-aat) | gram |
| Gudwa | | tomorrow. Gudwa S-SubH tomorrow morning. Gudwa l-9aʃi tomorrow night |
| Gurfa | (Guraf) | room. syn. makaan p. -aat |

### h

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ha! | | interj. - used to draw someone's attention |
| haakaδa | | adv. in this manner, this way |
| haana | | adv. here |
| haat! | | Give! Bring! (m.s.) |
| haaδa | | this (m.). p. haaδawla (m. or f.) |
| haaδawla | | these (m. or f.) |
| haaδawlaak | | those (m. or f.) s. haδaak (m.), haδiik (f.) |
| haaδi | | this (f.) p. haaδawla |
| haluw! | | Hello! |
| handasa | | engineering; geometry |
| haδaak | | that; that one (m.) p. haaδawlaak |
| haδiik | | that; that one (f.) p. haaδawlaak |
| hindi | (hunuud) | Indian; characteristic of India |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| hiy | | she. p. hin |
| hownaak | | there, over there |
| hum | | they (m.). s. huw |
| huw | | he. p. hum |

H

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Haal | ('aHwaal) | condition. kayf Haalak? How are you? |
| Haali | (-yiin) | beautiful;nice. f. Haaliya. elat. 'aHla |
| Haami | | adj. hot (weather). elat. 'aHma |
| Haanuut | (Hawaaniit) | shop, store. syn. dikkaan p. dakaakiin |
| Haara | (-aat) | neighborhood, quarter, section of a city |
| Haawal | (yHaawil) | to try, to make an effort to do s.th. |
| Habba | (-aat) | grain; seed, one unit of. Habbat rizz grain of rice<br>Habbat buTaaT a potato |
| HabHab | | coll. watermelons. un. HabHaba |
| Haddaad | (-iin) | blacksmith |
| Haddad | (yHaddid) | to set, schedule; to define |
| Hadiiga | (Hadaa'ig) | garden. Hadiiga 9aamma public garden |
| Hafla | (-aat) | party; ceremony; celebration. Haflat 9aʃaa' dinner party |
| Hagg | | prep. belonging to; for. 'as-sayyaara Haggi. The car belongs to me. |
| Hajj | (Hujjaaj) | pilgrim; title of respect |
| Hakiim | (Hukamaa') | medical doctor. syn. Tabiib p. 'aTibbaa' |
| Halaawa | | dessert, s.th. sweet |
| Halawiyyaat | | sweets; sweet pastry; candies |
| Haliib | | milk. galaS Haliib glass of milk |
| Hama | | v.n. hot weather. 'al-yawm Hama. It's hot today. |
| Hamaam | | coll. pigeons; doves. un. Hamaami |
| Hamd | | v.n. praise (m.). 'al-Hamdu lillaah! Praise be to God! |
| Hammaal | (-iin) | porter, carrier |
| Hammaam | (-aat) | bath; bathroom |
| Hamraa' | (Humr) | red (f.). m. 'aHmar |
| Haraara | | v.n. temperature; heat |
| HaSal 9ala | (yuHSul) | to obtain, get |
| HaSSal | (yHaSSil) | to get, obtain |
| HaTT | (yHuTT) | to put, place s.th. |
| Hayya | (yHayyi) | to welcome s.o.; to greet s.o. |

Hda9ʃ/-ar eleven

Hiin ('aHyaan) time. f-ayy Hiin? When? At what time? zaraatHiin sometimes

Hiin conj. when, at the time when. syn. lamman, 9indima

Hilw (-iin) beautiful. elat. 'aHla

Himaar (Hamiir) donkey, ass

Hisaab (-aat) bill; (bank) account. 9ala Hisaab at the expense of

HiSaan ('aHSuna) horse. f. faras

Hiδa ('aHδi) pair of slippers. syn. ʃibʃib p. ʃabaaʃib

Hodayda Hudaida

Htafal b- (yiHtafil) to celebrate s.th.

Hukuuma (-aat) government

Humma fever, high temperature

HummoS dish made from crushed chick peas, sesame seed paste, and lemon juice

Huut coll. fish un. Huuti

j

jaa' (yiji) to come. jaa' l- to come for s.th.

jaab (yjiib) to bring

jaahil (jahhaal) child; adj. very young; ignorant. elat. 'ajhal

jaami9 (jawaami9) mosque; big, central mosque, such as 'al-jaami9 al-kabiir the Grand Mosque in Sanaa

jaami9a (-aat) university

jaar (jiiraan) neighbor

jaawab (yjaawib) to answer (e.g., a letter, a question, the phone, etc.)

jaawi9 (-iin) hungry

jadda Jadda

jadiid (jidaad) new. elat. 'ajdad

jamaa9a (-aat) relatives, kinsfolk; group of people (m.p.)

jamiil (-iin) beautiful; handsome. elat. 'ajmal

januub south (of), southern part (of). januub Garb southwest (of). januub ʃarg southeast (of)

jariida (jaraa'id) newspaper

jarr (yjurr) to withdraw, e.g., money

jarrab (yjarrib) to try s.th.; to test s.th.

jawaab (-aat) answer; response

jawaaz (-aat) passport. *'al-jawaazaat* the passports department

jaww weather. *'al-jaww miGbir al-yawm.* The weather is dusty today.

jayʃ (juyuuʃ) army; (the) military (m.s.)

jazzaar (-iin) butcher

jinn coll. jinn, demons. s. *jinni.* f. *jinniyya*

jinsiyya (-aat) nationality; citizenship

jizar coll. carrots. un. *jizara*

jubn coll. cheese. un. *jubna*

jumhuuri (-yyiin) adj. republican

jumruk (jamaarik) customs, duty

### k

kaafi coffee, Western coffee

kaan (ykuun) to be. *kaan fii* there was; there were. *kaan yiʃti* (with foll. imperf.) he wanted to...

kaatib (kuttaab) clerk; writer, author

kaawiya (-aat) an iron

kabaab kabob, meat roasted on a skewer

kabat (-aat) cupboard; wardrobe

kahrabaa' electricity. *daa'irat al-kahrabaa'* the electricity department

kalb (kilaab) dog

kallaf (ykallif) to cost

kam? (with foll. s.n.) How many? (with foll. p.n. or v.) How much? *kam lak...?* How long have you (m.s.) been...? *kam as-saa9a?* What time is it?

kamaan also, too

kanada Canada

kanadi (-yyiin) Canadian; characteristic of Canada

kaniis (no known plural) synagogue; temple

kaniisa (kanaa'is) church

kannas (ykannis) to sweep (with a broom)

karyuula (karaayil) bed. syn. *sariir* p. *saraayir*

katab (yuktub) to write

kawwa (ykawwi) to iron

kayf? How? *kayf ant?* How are you (m.s.)?

kaθiir  adv. very; adj. a lot; many.  elat. 'akθar
kaθur  (yukθur)  to be abundant, abound
kaθθar  (ykaθθir)  to increase, make s.th. more
kiilo  (-waat)  kilogram
kiilomitr  (-aat)  kilometer
kiis  ('akyaas)  bundle, packet; bag
kiraa'  (-aat)  rent money; wage; fare
kitaab  (kutub)  book
kiδb  v.n. lying; lies.  s. kiδba a lie
kull  (with foll. def. n.) all of, the whole of.  (with foll. indef. n.) each, every
kulliyya  (-aat)  college.  daar al-mu9allimaat the women's teacher training college
kursi  (karaasi)  chair.  'al-kursi Haggi my chair
kuut  ('akwaat)  jacket

l

la  prep. to, toward; for.  var. 'ila
laa  no.  syn. maaʃi.  laa ba's not bad.  laa ... wala = maaʃ ... w-maaʃ neither ... nor
laaga  (ylaagi)  to find, encounter
laazim 9ala-  (with foll. imperf.) must; have to; ought to
laff  (yliff)  to turn (left, right, etc.)
laHm  coll. meat.  un. laHma
lamman  conj. when, at the time when.  syn. Hiin, 9indima
landan  London
law  conj. if
lawn  ('alwaan)  color
layl  coll. night; nighttime.  un. layla
libis  (yilbas)  to wear; to put on
liibya  Libya
liibi  (-yyiin)  Libyan; of Libya
lilma?  inter. part. why?  syn. layʃ?
li9ib  (yil9ab)  to play; to play a game
lubnaan  Lebanon

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| luGa | (-aat) | language |

## m

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ma | | (with foll. v.) not. (with foll. gad) not; not yet, have not ... yet |
| maa? | | what? maa l-? What's the matter with...? |
| maabiʃ | | there isn't; there aren't |
| maani9 | (mawaani9) | objection |
| maasa | (-aat) | table; desk |
| maaʃ | | neg. part. not. maaʃ ... w-maaʃ neither ... nor |
| maaʃi | | no. syn. laa. opp. 'ii, na9am |
| maaδ̣i | (-yiin) | adj. past; last, e.g., 'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaδ̣i last month |
| madaa9a | (madaayi9) | hubble-bubble, water-pipe |
| madiina | (mudun) | city, town |
| madrasa | (madaaris) | school |
| mafraj | (mafaarij) | reception room, reception hall |
| magli | (-yyiin) | fried. Huut magli fried fish |
| mag9ad | (magaa9id) | sofa, couch |
| maGli | (-yyiin) | boiled. bayδ̣ maGli boiled eggs |
| maGrib | | sunset. Salaat al-maGrib the sunset prayer |
| maHaTTa | (-aat) | station, e.g., gas station, bus station |
| maHHad | | no one, nobody. maHHad jaa'. No one came. |
| majnuun | (majaaniin) | crazy, insane |
| makaan | ('amaakin) | place, location. makaan al-wilaada birthplace.<br>(-aat) room |
| maknis | (makaanis) | broom |
| maktab | (makaatib) | office. maktab bariid post office. maktab Turuud parcel (post) office |
| maktuub | (makaatiib) | letter; mail item. syn. risaala p. rasaa'il |
| malaabis | | clothes, clothing |
| malla | (ymalli) | to fill, fill up; to fill out |
| mal9aga | (malaa9ig) | spoon |
| man? | | inter. pron. Who? |
| man | | rel. pron. who; he who |
| manaaxa | | Manakha, city in the Y.A.R. |
| manʃafa | (manaaʃif) | towel |

manzuul (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. *mazkuum*
mara (nisaa') woman; wife
marag coll. meat broth; gravy
mariiδ̣ (-iin) ill, sick
marra (-aat) time; once. *xamsat marraat* five times. *marratayn* twice
masaa' (-aat) evening, night (m.)
masaafa (-aat) distance. *masaafat miilayn* distance of two miles
masarra (-aat) joy, happiness
masjid (masaajid) mosque
massa (ymassi) to bid s.o. good evening
maʃa (yamʃi) to walk. syn. *xuTi*
maʃGuul (-iin) busy
maʃwi (-yyiin) grilled; roasted. *Huut maʃwi* grilled fish
mata? inter. adv. When? syn. *f-ayy Hiin?*
matfal (mataafil) spitting container
matka (mataaki) cushion, pad
maTaar (-aat) airport
maTar ('amTaar) rain
maTbax (maTaabix) kitchen. old Yemeni kitchen *dayma* p. *diyam*
maT9am (maTaa9im) restaurant
mawjuud (-iin) adj. found; available, on hand
mawlid (mawaalid) birthday of a prophet or a saint. *mawlid an-nabi* Prophet Muhammad's Birthday
mawz coll. bananas. un. *mawza*
maw9id (mawaa9iid) appointment, appointed time
maydaan (mayaadiin) square. *maydaan at-taHriir* Tahrir Square
mazkuum (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. *manzuul*
maθal ('amθaal) proverb, saying
ma9 prep. with. ma9 as-salaama! Goodbye!
ma9aaʃ (-aat) salary; stipend
ma9guul (-iin) reasonable, sensible. *Gayr ma9guul* unreasonable
ma9had (ma9aahid) institute
mee' water. var. *maa'*
mGallig (-iin) adj. closed, shut
miftaaH (mafaatiiH) key

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| miGbir | (-iin) | dusty. 'al-jaww miGbir. The weather is dusty. |
| miil | (-aat) | neon light. p. 'amyaal mile |
| miilaad | | v.n. birth; nativity; birthday. 9iid al-miilaad Christmas |
| miizaan | (mawaaziin) | scales, balance |
| mikaaniiki | (-yyiin) | mechanic; mechanical |
| millaaya | (-aat) | bed sheet |
| min | | prep. from. min ayn? from where? min 'awwal adv. before, previously |
| mirtaaH | (-iin) | comfortable, at ease |
| mista9jil | (-iin) | adj. in a hurry, hurried |
| miSr | | Egypt |
| miSri | (-yyiin) | Egyptian; of Egypt |
| miʃkila | (maʃaakil) | problem |
| mixzaan | (maxaaziin) | storage room, storehouse |
| miya | | one hundred. miyatayn two hundred |
| miθl | | prep. like, similar to |
| mrabbaT | (-iin) | p.p. tied up, bound, shackled |
| mu'ajjir | (-iin) | landlord, lessor; manager (of an apartment building) |
| mubaaʃir | (-iin) | waiter; usher |
| mudarris | (-iin) | instructor, teacher |
| mudda | (mudad) | period of time. muddat sana period of one year |
| mudiir | (-iin) | director, manager |
| muhandis | (-iin) | engineer |
| mumarrið̣ | (-iin) | male nurse |
| mumkin | | possible. (with foll. verb) May...? Is it possible that...? |
| mumtaaz | (-iin) | super; excellent |
| munHa | (munaH) | scholarship, fellowship |
| muntazah | (-aat) | park, public garden |
| mursil | (-iin) | sender |
| musaafir | (-iin) | traveller; passenger. act. part. travelling |
| musajjal | (-iin) | registered, certified |
| musta'jir | (-iin) | tenant, lessee |
| mustaʃfa | (-yaat) | hospital (m.) |
| mutazawwij | (-iin) | married |
| muwað̣ð̣af | (-iin) | employee |
| mu9allim | (-iin) | teacher, instructor. syn. mudarris |
| mu9aTTal | (-iin) | out of order; shut down, stopped |

## n

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| naahi | (-yiin) | fine, good. elat. 'aHsan, 'aHla. f. naahiya |
| naam | (ynuum) | to fall asleep; to sleep |
| naas | | people (m.p.) |
| naaʃif | (-iin) | dry. elat. 'anʃaf |
| nabi | ('anbiyaa') | prophet |
| nafa9 | (yinfa9) | to benefit s.o. |
| nafs | | (with foll. n.) the same. nafs aʃ-ʃay' the same thing |
| naHiif | (-iin) | skinny, thin. elat. 'anHaf |
| najjaar | (-iin) | carpenter |
| nawm | | v.n. sleep; sleeping |
| nawwar | (ynawwir) | to enlighten, fill with light |
| nað̣iif | (nið̣aaf, -iin) | clean. elat. 'anð̣af |
| nað̣ð̣af | (ynað̣ð̣if) | to clean |
| na9am | | yes. syn. 'ii, tamaam. opp. maaʃi |
| nihaaya | | v.n. end; finis, conclusion. min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya from start to finish. fi n-nihaaya at the end, finally |
| nisi | (yinsa) | to forget |
| nʃaaLLa | | hopefully (lit. "If God wills") |
| nuSS | ('anSaaf) | half. var. nuSf |
| nuzuul | | v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. zukaam |

## r

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| raabi9 | | fourth |
| raaH | (yruuH) | to go; to leave |
| raajam | (yraajim) | to stone, throw rocks at s.o. |
| raa9a (l-) | (yraa9i) | to wait (for), await s.o. |
| ra's | (ru'uus) | head. ra's as-sana beginning of the year, New Year. ra's guʃmi a radish |
| ragad | (yurgud) | to sleep, fall asleep |
| ragam | ('argaam) | number, No.; numeral |
| rajjaal | (rijaal) | man |
| ramaadi | (-yyiin) | adj. grey. f. ramaadiyya |
| ramað̣aan | | Ramadhan, the holy month of fasting |
| raxiiS | (-iin) | cheap, inexpensive. elat. 'arxaS |
| riji9 | (yirja9) | to return, come back. riji9 waraa' to back up, go in reverse |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| rijl | ('arjul) | foot, one's foot (f.) |
| risaala | (rasaa'il) | letter, mail item. syn. maktuub p. makaatiib |
| rizz | | coll. rice un. Habbat rizz |
| rub9 | ('arbaa9) | one-fourth. xamsa 'illa rub9 quarter to five |
| rukn | ('arkaan) | corner |
| ruSaaba | | Rusaba, village near Dhamar in the Y.A.R. |
| ruTuuba | | v.n. humidity |
| ruusi | (ruus) | Russian; characteristic of Russia. f. ruusiyya |
| ruusiya | | Russia |
| ryaal | (-aat) | riyaal. var. riyaal |

s

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| sa'al | (yis'al) | to ask, inquire |
| saabi9 | | seventh |
| saadis | | sixth |
| saafar | (ysaafir) | to travel |
| saag | (ysuug) | to drive |
| saani | | adv. straight, straight ahead. ruH saani! Go straight! |
| saar | (ysiir) | to go; to leave; to walk |
| saa9a | (-aat) | hour; watch; clock. saa9at xams at five o'clock |
| saa9ad | (ysaa9id) | to help, assist |
| saba' | | Sheba, city in the Y.A.R. |
| sabaH | (yisbaH) | to swim |
| saba9miya | | seven hundred |
| saba9Ta9ʃ/-ar | | seventeen |
| sabbaak | (-iin) | pipe fitter. syn. samkari p. samaakira |
| sabtambir | | September |
| sab9a | | seven. sab9at rijaal seven men |
| sab9a 'alf | | seven thousand |
| sab9iin | | seventy |
| safaara | (-aat) | embassy |
| sagf | (suguuf) | ceiling; roof |
| sahl | (-iin) | easy, not difficult. elat. 'ashal |
| sajjal | (ysajjil) | to register; to record |
| sakan | (yuskun) | to dwell, live in a place |
| salaam | | v.n. peace. 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! Peace be upon you! |

salaama v.n. safety. ma9 as-salaama! Goodbye!

salaTa coll. lettuce; salad. ra's salaTa head of lettuce

saliiT motor oil

sallam (ysallim) to protect, keep s.o. safe. sallam 9ala to greet s.o.; to shake hands with s.o.

samaH (yismaH) to allow, permit s.o. to do s.th.

samiin (simaan) fat. elat. 'asman

samkari (samaakira) pipe fitter. syn. sabbaak p. -iin

sana (siniin, -waat) year. 'as-sana l-maaδ̣iya last year

santraal (-aat) central telephone line, telephone operator

sariir (saraayir) bed. syn. karyuula p. karaayil

sawdaa' (suud) black (f.). m. 'aswad

sawwaag (-iin) cab driver

saxxaan (-aat) heater. saxxaan al-mee' the hot water heater

sayyaara (-aat) car. b-s-sayyaara by car

siinama (-aat) cinema (f.)

sikirteer (-iin) secretary

sikkiin (sakaakiin) knife

simi9 (yisma9) to hear

siraaj (-aat) light of a car; (electricity) light

sirr ('asraar) secret; v.n. secrecy

sitmiya six hundred

sitta six. sittat rijaal six men

sitta 'alf six thousand

sittiin sixty

siTTa9ʃ/-ar sixteen

si9r ('as9aar) price; tariff

sta'jar (yista'jir) to rent s.th.

sta9mal (yista9mil) to use, utilize

su'aal ('as'ila, -aat) question

sukkar coll. sugar

suug ('aswaag) marketplace, market

suuri (-yyiin) Syrian; of Syria

suuriyya Syria

## S

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Saabuun | | coll. soap. un. Saabuuna |
| SaaHib | | (with foll. n.) owner, proprietor of. p. 'aSHaab |
| SabaaH | | morning. fi S-SabaaH in the morning. syn. 'aS-SubH. SabaaH al-xayr! Good morning! |
| Sabar | (yaSbir) | to be patient; to wait |
| Sabban | (ySabbin) | to wash with soap |
| SabuuH | | breakfast |
| Sadiig | ('aSdigaa') | |
| Saff | (Sufuuf) | class; classroom |
| Safraa' | (Sufr) | yellow (f.). m. 'aSfar |
| SaGiir | (SiGaar, -iin) | young; small. elat. 'aSGar |
| SaHH | (ySuHH) | to be all right; to be allowed, permissible<br>ma ySuHHʃ. It cannot be. |
| SaHn | (SuHuun) | dish; plate |
| Salaa | (Salawaat) | prayer (f.). Salaat aS-SubH the morning prayer |
| Salla | (ySalli) | to pray |
| Sandal | (Sanaadil) | pair of sandals |
| Sanduug | (Sanaadiig) | box, crate; trunk. Sanduug bariid mail box |
| San9a | | Sanaa |
| Sa9b | (-iin) | difficult. elat. 'aS9ab |
| SiHHa | | v.n. health. wazaarat aS-SiHHa the minisrty of health |
| STabaH | (yiSTabiH) | to have breakfast |
| SummaaTa | (SummaT) | head dress |

## ʃ

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ʃaaf | (yʃuuf) | to see |
| ʃaagi | (ʃugaa) | workman, laborer |
| ʃaahi | | tea. kuup ʃaahi cup of tea; tea cup |
| ʃaal | (yʃiil) | to carry; to lift |
| ʃaari9 | (ʃawaari9) | street |
| ʃafa | (yiʃfi) | to cure, heal s.o., restore so.o. to health |
| ʃahaada | (-aat) | degree, certificate |
| ʃahr | ('aʃhir) | month. 'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaδ̣i last month |
| ʃall | (yʃill) | to carry; to lift; to steal |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ʃamaal | | north (of), northern part (of). ʃamaal ʃarg northeast. ʃamaal Garb northwest |
| ʃamiiz | (ʃumzaan, ʃummaz) | shirt |
| ʃamTa | (ʃimiiT) | bag, suitcase |
| ʃaraab | (-aat) | pair of socks. ʃaraab nisaa'i pair of stockings |
| ʃarg | | east, eastern part (of). ʃamaal ʃarg northeast. ʃamaal Garb northwest |
| ʃarika | (-aat) | company, firm |
| ʃaTala | (-aat) | fork. syn. ʃawka p. ʃuwak, -aat |
| ʃawka | (ʃuwak, -aat) | fork. syn. ʃaTala p. -aat |
| ʃaxS | ('aʃxaaS) | person, someone; somebody |
| ʃay' | ('aʃyaa') | something; anything. var. ʃee' |
| ʃigaara | (ʃigaayir) | cigarette |
| ʃijar | | coll. trees. un. ʃijara |
| ʃimaal | | adv. left; n. left hand. syn. yasaar |
| ʃirba | | soup |
| ʃirib | (yiʃrab) | to drink |
| ʃtaGal | (yiʃtaGil) | to work |
| ʃtara | (yiʃtari) | to buy |
| ʃugga | (ʃugag) | apartment |
| ʃuGl | ('aʃGaal) | work, job. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal the ministry of public works |
| ʃukran! | | Thanks! |
| ʃurTi | (ʃurTa) | policeman |
| ʃwayya | | a little; some. maʃGuul ʃwayya a little busy. ʃwayyat gahwa some coffee. ʃwayya ʃwayya slowly. syn. dala dala |

## t

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ta'ʃiira | (-aat) | visa |
| taabi9iyya | (-aat) | nationality; citizenship |
| taaniki | (tawaaniki) | tank, e.g., gasoline tank, water tank, etc. taaniki l-mee' the water tank |
| taariix | (tawaariix) | date; history. taariix al-wilaada birthdate |
| taasi9 | | ninth |
| taayir | (-aat) | car tire. syn. 9ajala p. -aat |
| taa9ib | (-iin) | tired |

tafaagad (yitfaagad) to check, inspect; to examine so.o. medically

tafaδ̣δ̣al! Go ahead! Please! (m.s.)

tagriib prep. about, approximately

taGadda (yitGadda) to have lunch

taHammam (yitHammam) to bathe, take a bath

taHt adv. downstairs; below. prep. beneath, under

takallam (yitkallam) to speak, talk

takawwan min (yitkawwan) to be made up of, consist of

taksi (takaasi) taxi, cab

talafoon (-aat) telephone

talfan l- (ytalfin) to telephone s.o.

tamaam right! correct!

tamm (ytimm) to finish, complete s.th.

tamr coll. dates. un. tamra

tannuur (tanaaniir) bread-baking oven

tarak (yutruk) to leave, depart

tarbiya v.n. education. wazaarat at-tarbiya the ministry of education

tasallaf (yitsallaf) to borrow

taxarrab (yitxarrab) to be or become ruined, spoiled

taxarraj (yitxarraj) to graduate

tazawwaj (yitzawwaj) to get married; to marry s.o.

taδkara (taδaakir) ticket, admission ticket; card

ta9aal! Come! (m.s.)

ta9allam (yit9allam) to learn

ta9aʃʃa (yit9aʃʃa) to have dinner, supper

ta9izz Taiz

tijaara (-aat) commerce; trade

tisa9miya nine hundred. tisa9miyat rajjaal 900 men

tisa9Ta9ʃ/-ar nineteen

tis9a nine. tis9at rijaal nine men

tis9a 'alf nine thousand

tis9iin ninety

ttafag 9ala (yittafig) to agree on s.th.

ttaSal b- (yittaSil) to contact s.o.

tuffaaH coll. apples. un. tuffaaHa

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| tuunis | | Tunisia; Tunis |
| tuunisi | (-yyiin) | Tunisian; of Tunisia |

### T

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Taabi9 | (Tawaabi9) | postage stamps |
| Taaga | (Tiigaan) | window |
| Taalib | (Tullaab) | student |
| Taar | (yTiir) | intran. to fly, fly away |
| Tabax | (yuTbux) | to cook |
| Tabbaa9 | (-iin) | typist |
| Tabiib | ('aTibbaa') | medical doctor. syn. Hakiim p. Hukamaa' |
| Tab9an | | of course, certainly |
| Tahraan | | Tehran |
| Talab | (-aat) | application; request |
| Tali | | |
| TamaaTiis | | coll. tomatoes. un. TumTusa |
| Tard | (Turuud) | parcel, package |
| TarHa | (-aat) | floor, story (of a building). p. TuruuH bedspread |
| Tariig | (Turug) | way; road |
| Tawiil | (Tiwaal) | tall; long. elat. 'aTwal |
| Tayr | (Tuyuur) | bird; sparrow |
| Tayyaara | (-aat) | airplane |
| Tayyib | (-iin) | fine, good; delicious. elat. 'aTyab. adv. well, in good health |
| Ta9aam | | food. syn. 'akl. Gurfat Ta9aam dining room |
| Tifl | ('aTfaal) | infant; child |
| Tuul | | v.n. length, tallness. Tuul al-layl all night long |

### w

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| wa/w- | | and |
| waafag | (ywaafig) | to agree. waafag 9ala to approve s.th. |
| waaHid | | one; someone, somebody. waaHid min one of |
| wagt | ('awgaat) | period of time, time. syn. Hiin p. 'aHyaan |
| waHd- | | alone, by oneself |
| wala | | conj. nor. la ... wala neither ... nor. syn. maaʃ ... w-maaʃ |
| walaakin | | conj. but. syn. bass |

walad ('awlaad) son; boy

waLLa honestly, indeed

waraa' See ware.

wardi (-yyiin) adj. pink. f. wardiyya

ware adv. behind; backwards. var. waraa'. syn. xalf

warra (ywarri) to show s.o. or s.th.

warʃa (-aat) workshop

wasx (-iin) dirty, filthy

waSl (wuSuul) receipt

wazaara (-aat) ministry. wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya the ministry of the interior. wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat the ministry of cummunications. wazaarat al-xaarijiyya the ministry of foreign affairs. wazaarat al-9adl the ministry of justice. wazaarat aS-SiHHa the ministry of health. wazaarat at-tarbiya the ministry of education. wazaarat at-tijaara the ministry of commerce. wazaarat az-ziraa9a the ministry of agriculture. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal the ministry of public works

wazan (yuuzin) to weigh

waziir (wuzaraa') minister (cabinet)

wilaada v.n. birth, delivery. makaan al-wilaada birthplace

wilaaya (-aat) state; region. wilaayat 'arizoona the State of Arizona

wuSul (yiwSal) to arrive at a place; to reach s.o. or s.th.

wuSuul v.n. arrival

## x

xaabar (yxaabir) to telephone s.o.; to make a telephone call

xaal ('axwaal) maternal uncle. 'ibn xaal cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' xaal

xaala (-aat) maternal aunt; step-mother.

xaamis fifth

xaarij adv.; prep. outside

xaaTrak! Goodbye!

xafiif (-iin) light, not heavy. elat. 'axaff

xalas (yaxlis) to undress, take off one's clothes

xalf adv.; prep. behind. syn. ware

xalla (yxalli) to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.

xamsa five. xamsat rijaal five men

| | |
|---|---|
| xamsa 'alf | five thousand |
| xamsiin | fifty |
| xamsmiya | five hundred |
| xamsTa9ʃ/-ar | fifteen |
| xaraj (yuxruj) | to go out, come out, get out |
| xarraj (yxarrij) | to send out, move out; to expel |
| xaTT (xuTuuT) | telephone line; (railroad, bus, air) line |
| xaTwa (-aat) | step, stride; pace |
| xayr | v.n. goodness, benevolence. b-xayr well; in good health |
| xazzan (yxazzin) | to chew qat |
| xað̣raa' (xuð̣r) | green (f.). m. 'axð̣ar |
| xiyaar | coll. cucumbers. un. xiyaara |
| xubz | coll. bread. un. xubza, Habbat xubz |
| xuruuj | v.n. exit, going out. opp. duxuul |
| xuTi (yuxTi) | to walk, go on foot |

y

| | |
|---|---|
| ya | voc. part. (with foll. n.) ya 9ali! Ali! ya yuba! Dad! Father! |
| yadd ('aydi) | hand |
| yahuudi (yahuud) | Jew; Jewish. f. yahuudiyya |
| yahwaada | belief in Judaism; piety, religiousness |
| yamiin | adv. right. n. right hand |
| yasaar | adv. left. n. left hand |
| yawm ('ayyaam) | day |
| yawmiya | adv. always |
| ya9ni | that is to say, i.e. |
| yumkin | perhaps, maybe |
| yurt | coll. yogurt |

z

| | |
|---|---|
| zaar (yzuur) | to visit |
| zaaratHiin | adv. sometimes |
| zabiib | coll. raisins. un. zabiiba |
| zalaT | money. syn. fuluus |
| zargaa' (zurg) | blue (f.). m. 'azrag |
| zawj ('azwaaj) | husband. zawja wife |

| | |
|---|---|
| ziyaada (-aat) | excess; surplus; increase, increment |
| zubda | coll. butter |
| zujaaj | coll. glass |
| zukaam | v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. nuzuul |
| zunnaar (zanaaniir) | side curls |

### θ

| | |
|---|---|
| θaaliθ | third |
| θaamin | eighth |
| θaanawi (-yyiin) | secondary. madrasa θaanawiyya secondary school |
| θaani (-yiin) | other; another; the other; the second. f. θaaniya |
| θagiil (-iin) | heavy. elat. 'aθgal |
| θalaaθa | three. θalaaθat rijaal three men |
| θalaaθa 'alf | three thousand |
| θalaaθiin | thirty |
| θalaaθmiya | three hundred |
| θalaaθTa9ʃ/-ar | thirteen |
| θallaaja (-aat) | refrigerator |
| θamaaniin | eighty |
| θamaaniya | eight. θamaaniyat rijaal eight men. θamaaniya 'alf 3,000 |
| θamaanmiya | eight hundred |
| θamaanTa9ʃ/-ar | eighteen |
| θaman ('aθmaan) | price, cost; value |
| θawra (-aat) | revolution |
| θiliθ ('aθlaaθ) | one-third. var. θilθ |
| θintayn | two (f.). m. 'iθnayn |
| θiyaab | clothes. syn. malaabis |

### δ

| | |
|---|---|
| δahabi (-yyiin) | adj. gold. f. δahabiyya |
| δalHiin | adv. now |

### δ̣

| | |
|---|---|
| δ̣aa' (l-) (yiδ̣ii') | to light, illumine (s.th. or s.o.) |
| δ̣arab ragam (yuδ̣rub) | to dial a number |
| δ̣ariiba (δ̣araa'ib) | tax; duty |
| δ̣aruuri (-yyiin) | necessary |

δ̣ayf (δ̣uyuuf) guest

δ̣ayyaf (yδ̣ayyif) to entertain s.o., treat s.o. as a guest. *δ̣ayyaf 9ala* to entertain s.o. to s.th.

δ̣a9iif (-iin, δ̣u9afaa') weak; skinny. elat. *'aδ̣9af*

δ̣iig v.n. distress, hardship. *wagt aδ̣-δ̣iig* time of distress, difficult times

δ̣uhr noon, noontime. *ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr* in the afternoon

9

9aa'ila (9awaa'il) family. syn. *'usra* p. *'usar*

9aad (9ala) (y9iid) to repeat, do s.th. again (to s.o.)

9aadi (-yyiin) regular; ordinary

9aafa (y9aafi) to keep s.o. safe; to restore good health to s.o.

9aafiya health, well being

9aagil (-iin) rational, wise. elat. *'a9gal*

9aam ('a9waam) year. syn. *sana* p. *siniin*, *sanawaat.* *'al-9aam al-maaδ̣i* last year

9aamil (9ummaal) laborer, workman. syn. *ʃaagi* p. *ʃugaa*

9aamm (-iin) adj. public; common; general. elat. *'a9amm*

9aaʃir tenth

9aaTiʃ (-iin) thirsty

9add (y9idd) to count, enumerate

9afwan! Sorry! Welcome!

9agd (9uguud) lease; contract

9ala/9alay- prep. on

9ala sibb conj. because; so that, in order that

9amm ('a9maam) paternal uncle; father-in-law. *'ibn 9amm* cousin (m.). f. *bint 9amm*

9amma (-aat) paternal aunt; mother-in-law

9ammaan Amman

9ammaar (-iin) mason; construction worker

9an Tariig by way of, via. *9an Tariig San9a* via Sanaa

9arabi adj. Arabic; an Arab. p. *9arab*

9askari (9askar) soldier

9aSr afternoon, as in *Salaat al-9aSr* the afternoon prayer

9aʃaa' (-aat) dinner, supper

9aʃara ten. 9aʃarat rijaal ten men

9awar (yi9wir) to make s.o. blind in one eye

9ayn (9uyuun) eye, one's eye (f.).

9ayyad 9ala (y9ayyid) to celebrate a feast with s.o.

9iid ('a9yaad) feast, festival; holiday. 9iid al-'aðHa the Sacrifice Feast. 9iid al-'umm Mother's Day. 9iid al fiTr the Ramadhan Feast. 9iid al-miilaad Christmas. 9iid al-9ummaal May Day. 9iid ra's as-sana New Year's Day. 9iid miilaad birthday

9ijl (9ujuul) calf of a cow. coll. = laHm 9ijl veal

9imaama (9amaa'im) turban

9imil (yi9mal) to do; to make

9inab coll. grapes. un. Habbat 9inab

9ind- to have. 9indi I have

9indima conj. when, at the time when

9inwaan (9anaawiin) address

9irif (yi9rif) to know; to realize

9iʃriin twenty

9iyaal children; sons and daughters (no known singular)

9umr ('a9maar) age; lifetime. kam 9umrak? How old are you?

9uTla (9uTal) holiday; vacation. 9uTlat aS-Sayf summer vacation

9azam (yi9zim) to invite s.o. 9azamni 9ala l-9aʃaa'. He invited me to dinner.

# ENGLISH-YEMENI ARABIC GLOSSARY

## A

| | |
|---|---|
| abound | kaθur/yukθur |
| about | (approximately) prep. tagriib; Hawaali |
| above | adv.; prep. fawg |
| Abu Dhabi | 'abu δ̣abi |
| account | (bank-) Hisaab p. -aat. at my expense 9ala Hisaabi |
| address | 9inwaan p. 9anaawiin |
| administration | v.n. 'idaara |
| admission | v.n. duxuul |
| after | prep. ba9d. conj. ba9dima |
| afternoon | adv. l-9aSr. the afternoon prayer Salaat al-9aSr, ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr |
| age | (lifetime) 9umr p. 'a9maar. How old are you? kam 9umrak? |
| ago | gabl (with foll. n.).five years ago gabl xams siniin |
| agree | waafag/ywaafig. agree to, approve s.th. waafag 9ala. agree on s.th. ttafag/yittafig 9ala |
| Air France | 'al-faransiyya |
| airmail | adj. jawwi. airmail letter risaala jawwiyya |
| airplane | Tayyaara p. -aat |
| airport | maTaar p. -aat |
| Algeria | 'al-jazaa'ir |
| all (of) | (with foll. def. n.) kull. all the books kull al-kutub |
| allow | samaH/yismaH |
| alone | (by oneself) waHd-. by myself waHdi |
| also | kamaan, ba9da |
| alter | baddal/ybaddil |
| always | yawmiya |
| America | 'amriika |
| American | 'amriiki p. -yyiin |
| Amman | 9ammaan |
| anaemia | fagr damm |
| and | wa/w- |
| another | θaani (with preced. n.) p. -yiin. f. θaaniya |
| answer | jaawab/yjaawib |
| answer | jawaab p. -aat |
| anyone | 'aHad, 'ayy waaHid |

| | |
|---|---|
| apartment | ʃugga p. ʃugag |
| apple | tuffaaHa p. -aat. coll. tuffaaH |
| application | Talab p. -aat |
| appointment | maw9id p. mawaa9iid |
| approximately | prep. tagriib; Hawaali |
| apricot | barguuga p. -aat. coll. barguug |
| Arab | 9arabi p. 9arab |
| Arabic | (language) 9arabi |
| army | m.s. jayʃ p. juyuuʃ |
| arrival | wuSuul |
| arrive | wuSul/yiwSal |
| ask | sa'al/yis'al |
| ass | Himaar p. Hamiir |
| assist | See help. |
| aunt | (paternal-) 9amma p. -aat. (maternal-) xaala p. -aat |
| author | kaatib p. kuttaab |
| autumn | 'al-xariif |

## B

| | |
|---|---|
| backyard | bustaan p. basaatiin |
| bag | ʃamTa p. ʃimiiT; kiis p. 'akyaas |
| Baghdad | baGdaad |
| Bahrain | 'al-baHrayn |
| balance | (scales) miizaan p. mawaaziin |
| banana | mawza p. -aat. coll. mawz |
| bathe | taHammam/yitHammam |
| bathroom | Hammaam p. -aat |
| battery | baTaarya p. -aat |
| be | kaan/ykuun. there is; there are fii. there isn't; there wasn't maabiʃ. there was; there were kaan fii. |
| be able | gidir/yigdar |
| be allowed | SaHH/ySuHH. It cannot be (allowed), it is not permissible. ma ySuHHʃ. |
| be patient | Sabar/yaSbir |
| be released | falat/yiflit |
| be ruined | taxarrab/yitxarrab |

| | |
|---|---|
| beans | coll. faaSuulya. un. Habbat faaSuulya |
| beautiful | jamiil p. -iin. elat. 'ajmal. Haali p. -yiin. elat. 'aHla |
| because | 9ala sibb |
| bed | karyuula p. karaayil; sariir p. saraayir |
| bedspread | TarHa p. TuruuH |
| beef | bagari (coll.) |
| beer | biira |
| before | prep. gabl. before breakfast gabl aS-SabuuH |
| before | conj. gablima |
| beginning | v.n. bidaaya. at the beginning fi l-bidaaya. from start to finish min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya |
| behind | adv.; prep. ware. var. waraa', xalf |
| Beirut | bayruut |
| belonging to | prep. Hagg |
| below | prep.; adv. taHt |
| benefit | tran. nafa9/yinfa9 |
| benefit from | stafaad/yistafiid min |
| beside | prep. b-jamb |
| better (than) | 'aHsan (min) |
| beverage | (cold-) baarid (coll.) |
| bill (account) | Hisaab. Give me the bill! 'addii-li l-Hisaab! |
| bill | faatuura p. fawaatiir |
| bird | Tayr p. Tuyuur |
| birth | miilaad; wilaada. birthday party Haflat miilaad. birthplace makaan al-wilaada. birth of a prophet or a saint mawlid. Prophet Muhammad's Birthday mawlid an-nabi |
| birthday | See birth. |
| black | 'aswad p. suud. f. sawdaa' |
| blacksmith | Haddaad p. -iin |
| blanket | baTaaniya p. -aat |
| bless | baarak/ybaarik. bless s.o. baarak fi. God bless you! baarak aLLa fiik! |
| blind | (-s.o. in one eye) 9awar/yi9wir |
| blood | damm (coll.) the blood bank bank ad-damm |
| blouse | bluuza p. -aat |

| | |
|---|---|
| blue | 'azrag p. zurg. f. *zargaa'* |
| boiled | maGli p. -yyiin |
| book | kitaab p. kutub |
| borrow | tasallaf/yitsallaf |
| bottle | gaaruura p. gawaariir |
| box | Sanduug p. Sanaadiig. mail box *Sanduug bariid* |
| boy | walad p. 'awlaad |
| bread | xubz (coll.). loaf of bread *Habbat xubz* |
| breakfast | n. SabuuH. v. STabaH/yiSTabiH |
| bring | jaab/yjiib |
| Bring! | haat! (m.s.) |
| broadcasting | v.n. 'iδaa9a. broadcasting station *'al-'iδaa9a*, *maHaTTat al-'iδaa9a* |
| broom | maknis p. makaanis |
| brother | 'ax/'axu- p. 'ixwa. (title) *'al-'ax* |
| brown | bunni p. -yyiin. f. *bunniyya* |
| building | binaaya p. -aat; daar p. duur |
| bundle | kiis p. 'akyaas |
| bus | baaS p. -aat |
| busy | maʃGuul p. -iin |
| but | conj. walaakin, bass |
| butcher | jazzaar p. -iin |
| butter | zubda (coll.) |
| buy | ʃtara/yiʃtari |
| by bus | b-l-baaS |
| by car | b-s-sayyaara |
| by plane | b-T-Tayyaara |
| by sea | b-l-baHr |

## C

| | |
|---|---|
| cactus | (-fruit) balas (coll.). a cactus fruit *Habbat balas* |
| Cairo | 'al-gaahira |
| calf | (-of a cow) 9ijl p. 9ujuul |
| can | (-of motor oil) gumgumi p. gamaagim. (tomato-, cheese-, etc.) gaSʕa p. -aat |
| Canada | kanada |

| | |
|---|---|
| Canadian | kanadi p. -yyiin |
| cantaloupe | baTTiixa p. -aat. coll. baTTiix |
| cap | (worn by children in winter) garguuʃ p. garaagiiʃ |
| car | sayyaara p. -aat |
| card | biTaaga p. -aat. boarding pass biTaagat xuruuj |
| cards | (playing-) baTTa p. -aat. We played cards. li9ibna baTTa. |
| carpenter | najjaar p. -iin |
| carrots | jizar (coll.) un. jizara |
| carry | ʃaal/yʃiil, ʃall/yʃill |
| cat | dimm p. dimam |
| ceiling | sagf p. suguuf |
| celebrate | Htafal/yiHtafil b- |
| celebrate | (-a feast with s.o.) 9ayyad/y9ayyid 9ala |
| certificate | ʃahaada p. -aat |
| certified | musajjal p. -iin |
| chair | kursi p. karaasi |
| change | baddal/ybaddil |
| cheap | raxiiS p. -iin. elat. 'arxaS |
| check | tafaagad/yitfaagad |
| cheese | jubn (coll.) un. jubna |
| chew gat | xazzan/yxazzin |
| chicken | dajaaj (coll.) un. dajaaja |
| child | Tifl p. 'aTfaal; jaahil p. jahhaal |
| children | 9iyaal (no s.); 'awlaad |
| Christmas | 9iid al-miilaad |
| church | kaniisa p. kanaa'is |
| cigarette | ʃiigaara p. ʃigaayir |
| cinema | siinama p. -aat |
| circle | daa'ira p. dawaa'ir |
| citizenship | jinsiyya p. -aat, taba9iyya p. -aat |
| city | madiina p. mudun |
| class(room) | Saff p. Sufuuf |
| clean | nað̣ð̣af/ynað̣ð̣if |
| clean | nað̣iif p. nið̣aaf, -iin. elat. 'anð̣af |
| clerk | kaatib p. kuttaab |
| close | adj. gariib p. -iin. elat. 'agrab. near, close to. prep. gariib min |

| | |
|---|---|
| close | Gallag/yGallig |
| closed | adj. mGallig p. -iin |
| clothes | θiyaab, malaabis |
| coffee | gahwa. Yemeni coffee bunn. Western coffe kaafi |
| cold | adj. baarid p. -iin. elat. 'abrad |
| cold | (-weather) bard. It's very cold today. 'al-yawm bard gawi. |
| cold | v.n. zukaam, nuzuul. having a cold mazkuum, manzuul |
| college | kulliyya p. -aat. the women's teacher training college daar al-mu9allimaat |
| color | lawn p. 'alwaan |
| come | jaa'/yiji. come for s.th. jaa' l- |
| Come! | ta9aal! (m.s.) |
| comfortable | mirtaaH p. -iin |
| commerce | tijaara. college of commerce kulliyyat at-tijaara |
| common | See general. |
| complete | 'akmal/yikmil, tamm/ytimm |
| conclusion | See end. |
| condition | Haal p. 'aHwaal |
| consist of | takawwan/yitkawwan min |
| consulate | gunSuliyya p. -aat |
| contact | ttaSal/yittaSil b- |
| contract | (lease) 9agd p. 9uguud |
| cook | Tabax/yuTbux |
| copybook | daftar p. dafaatir |
| corner | rukn p. 'arkaan |
| cost | kallaf/ykallif |
| count | 9add/y9idd |
| country | bilaad p. buldaan, balad p.bilaad |
| cousin | (son of one's maternal uncle) 'ibn xaal. (son of one's paternal uncle) 'ibn 9amm. f. bint- |
| cousin | (daughter of one's maternal uncle) bint xaal. p. banaat xaal. (daughter of one's paternal uncle) bint 9amm. p. banaat 9amm |
| crazy | majnuun p. majaaniin |
| cucumber | xiyaar (coll.). a cucumber xiyaara p. -aat |
| cup | (coffee-, tea-) finjaan p. fanaajiin. cup of coffee finjaan gahwa |
| cupboard | kabat p. -aat |

| | |
|---|---|
| cure | ʃafa/yiʃfi |
| cushion | matka p. mataaki |
| customs | jumruk p. jamaarik |

### D

| | |
|---|---|
| Damascus | dimaʃg |
| date | taariix p. tawaariix |
| dates | tamr (coll.). a date tamra p. -aat |
| daughter | bint p. banaat |
| day | yawm p. 'ayyaam |
| define | (set a schedule) Haddad/yHaddid |
| demons | jinn (coll.). s. jinni. f. jinniyya |
| department | daa'ira p. dawaa'ir |
| departure | v.n. 'iGlaa9 |
| desk | maasa p. -aat |
| dessert | Halaawa |
| dial | (-a number) δ̣arab/yuδ̣rub ragam |
| different from | neg. part. Gayr (with foll. n.) |
| difficult | Sa9b p. -iin. elat. 'aS9ab |
| dinar | diinaar p. danaaniir |
| dine | ta9aʃʃa/yit9aʃʃa |
| dinner | (supper) 9aʃaa' |
| director | mudiir p. -iin, mudaraa' |
| dirty | wasx p. -iin. elat. 'awsax |
| dish | SaHn p. SuHuun |
| distance | masaafa p. -aat |
| distress | v.n. δ̣iig. time of distress, difficult times wagt aδ̣-δ̣iig |
| do | 9imil/yi9mal |
| doctor | (medical-) Tabiib p. 'aTibbaa', Hakiim p. Hukamaa' |
| doctor | daktoor p. dakaatira. eye doctor daktoor 9uyuun |
| dog | kalb p. kilaab |
| Doha | 'ad-dawHa |
| dollar | duulaar p. -aat |
| donkey | Himaar p. Hamiir |
| door | baab p. 'abwaab |
| dozen | darzan p. daraazin |

| | |
|---|---|
| dress | (women's-) fustaan p. fasaatiin |
| drink | ʃirib/yiʃrab |
| drive | (-a car) saag/ysuug |
| driver | (cab-) sawwaag p. -iin |
| Dubai | dubayy |
| dusty | miGbir p. -iin |
| duty | (customs) jumruk p. jamaarik |
| dry | naaʃif p. -iin. elat. *'anʃaf* |

### E

| | |
|---|---|
| each | (with foll. indef. n.) kull |
| east | ʃarg. northeast *ʃamaal ʃarg.* southeast *januub ʃarg* |
| easy | sahl p. -iin. elat. *'ashal* |
| eat | 'akal/ya'kul |
| education | tarbiya. ministry of- *wazaarat at-tarbiya* |
| egg | bayδ̣a p. -aat. coll. *bayδ̣* |
| eggplant | baaδinjaan (coll.). an eggplant *baaδinjaana* p. *-aat* |
| Egypt | miSr |
| Egyptian | miSri p. -yyiin |
| eight | θamaaniya |
| eight thousand | θamaaniya 'alf |
| eight hundred | θamaanmiya |
| eighteen | θamaanTa9ʃ/-ar |
| eighth | θaamin |
| eighty | θamaaniin |
| electricity | kahrabaa' |
| elementary | 'ibtidaa'i p. -yyiin |
| eleven | Hda9ʃ/-ar |
| embassy | safaara p. -aat |
| employee | muwaδ̣δ̣af p. -iin |
| encounter | laaga/ylaagi |
| end | v.n. nihaaya. from start to finish *min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya.* at the end *fi n-nihaaya* |
| engineer | muhandis p. -iin |
| engineering | handasa. college of- *kulliyyat al-handasa* |
| England | 'ingiltara |

| | |
|---|---|
| English | (lang.) 'ingiliizi |
| English | adj.; n. 'ingiliizi p. 'ingiliiz |
| enlighten | nawwar/ynawwir |
| enter | daxal/yudxul |
| entertain | (-s.o., treat s.o. as a guest) δ̣ayyaf/yδ̣ayyif. entertain s.o. to s.th. δ̣ayyaf 9ala |
| entrance | v.n. duxuul. opp. xuruuj |
| evening | masaa' p. -aat, layla p. layaali. coll. layl. to bid s.o. good evening massa/ymassi. Good evening! massaak aLLaah b-l-xayr! |
| every | (with foll. indef. n.) kull |
| excellent | mumtaaz p. -iin |
| except | 'illa |
| excess | (surplus; increase) ziyaada |
| Excuse me! | 9afwan! |
| expel | xarraj/yxarrij |
| expensive | Gaali p. -yiin. elat. 'aGla |
| exit | v.n. xuruuj. opp. duxuul |
| eye | f. 9ayn p. 9uyuun |

## F

| | |
|---|---|
| fall | (autumn) 'al-xariif |
| family | 'usra p. 'usar, 9aa'ila p. 9awaa'il |
| far | ba9iid p. -iin. far from prep. ba9iid min |
| fare | kiraa' p. -aat |
| fast | adv. fiisa9 |
| fat | samiin p. simaan. elat. 'asman |
| father | 'ab /'abu- p. 'aabaa' |
| feast | (festival) 9iid p. 'a9yaad. the Sacrifice Feast 9iid al-aδ̣Ha. the Ramadhan Feast 9iid al-fiTr |
| fever | Humma |
| fifteen | xamasTa9ʃ/-ar |
| fith | xaamis |
| fifty | xamsiin |
| figs | balas 9arabi (coll.). a fig Habbat balas 9arabi |
| fill | (also fill up, fill out) malla/ymalli |
| film | film p. 'aflaam |

| | |
|---|---|
| find | laaga/ylaagi |
| fine | adv. b-xayr |
| finish | trans. 'akmal/yikmil, tamm/ytimm |
| first | 'awwal. at first, the first thing 'awwal ʃay' |
| fish | Huut (coll.) |
| five | xamsa. five men xamsat rijaal |
| five hundred | xamsmiya |
| five thousand | xamsa 'alf |
| floor | (-of a room) 'arδ̣ |
| floor | (story of a building) TarHa p. -aat |
| fly | Taar/yTiir |
| folks | 'ahl (m.p.). my folks 'ahli |
| food | 'akl, Ta9aam |
| foot | (human-) rijl (f.) p. 'arjul |
| for | prep. la-. This is for you. haaδa lak. |
| forget | nisi/yinsa |
| fork | (utensil) ʃaTala p. -aat ʃawka p. ʃuwak, ʃawkaat |
| forty | 'arba9iin |
| forward | adv. guddaam, 'amaam |
| found | (available, on hand) mawjuud p. -iin |
| four | 'arba9a. four men 'arba9at rijaal |
| four hundred | 'arba9miya |
| four thousand | 'arba9a 'alf |
| fourteen | 'arba9Ta9ʃ/-ar |
| fourth | raabi9 |
| France | faransa |
| Friday | 'al-jum9a |
| fried | magli p. -yyiin |
| friend | Sadiig p. 'aSdigaa' |
| from | min. from where? min ayn? |

G

| | |
|---|---|
| gallon | galoon p. -aat |
| garden | Hadiiga p. Hadaa'ig, bustaan p. basaatiin |
| gasoline | batrool |
| general | adj. 9aamm p. -iin. elat. 'a9amm |

| | |
|---|---|
| Germany | 'aLmaanya |
| get away | falat/yiflit |
| girl | bint p. banaat |
| give | 'adda/y'addi. to give so. 'adda l- |
| Give! | haat! (m.s.) |
| glass | (drinking-) galaS (f.) p. -aat |
| glass | zujaaj (coll.) |
| go | raaH/yruuH, saar/ysiir |
| Go ahead! | tafaδ̣δ̣al! (m.s.) |
| God | 'aLLaah. var. 'aLLa |
| gold | (color) δahabi p. -yiin. f. δahabiyya |
| good | naahi p. -yiin; Haali p. -yiin. f. naahiya. elat. 'aHsan, 'aHla |
| goodbye! | (leave-taking) xaaTrak! (m.s.) |
| goodness | v.n. xayr. in good health b-xayr |
| go out | xaraj/yuxruj |
| government | Hukuuma p. -aat |
| graduate | taxarraj/yitxarraj |
| grain | Habba p. -aat. coll. Habb |
| gram | Graam p. -aat |
| grapes | 9inab (coll.). a grape Habbat 9inab |
| gravy | marag (coll.) |
| green | 'axδ̣ar p. xuδ̣r. f. xaδ̣raa' |
| greet | Hayya/yHayyi, sallam/ysallim 9ala |
| grey | ramaadi p. -yyiin. f. ramaadiyya |
| grilled | maʃwi p. -yyiin |
| guest | δ̣ayf p. δ̣uyuuf |

## H

| | |
|---|---|
| ha! | interj. (used to draw someone's attention) ha! |
| half | nuSS p. 'anSaaf. var. nuSf |
| hand | yadd p. 'aydi |
| handsome | jamiil p. -iin. elat. 'ajmal |
| happiness | masarra p. -aat |
| hat | gubba9a p. -aat; Tarbuuʃ p. Taraabiiʃ |
| have | 9ind-. I have. 9indi. |

| | |
|---|---|
| have an interview with s.o. | gaabal/ygaabil |
| have lunch | taGadda/yitGadda |
| have to | (with foll. inf.) laazim 9ala- |
| he | huw p. hum |
| head | ra's p. ru'uus. New Year, beginning of the year ra's as-sana |
| head dress | SummaaTa p. SummaT |
| health | SiHHa. ministry of health wazaarat aS-SiHHa. in good health b-xayr |
| hear | simi9/yisma9 |
| heart | galb p. guluub |
| heat | Haraara |
| heater | saxxaan p. -aat. hot water heater saxxaan al-mee' |
| heavy | θagiil p. -iin. elat. 'aθgal |
| Hello! | haluw! |
| help | saa9ad/ysaa9id |
| hen | dajaaja p. -aat. coll. dajaaj |
| here | adv. haana |
| history | taaxriix p. tawaariix |
| holiday | See vacation. |
| home | daar p. duur; bayt p. buyuut |
| hopefully | nʃaaLLa (lit. "If God wills.) |
| horse | HiSaan p. 'aHSuna |
| hospital | mustaʃfa (m.) p. -yaat |
| hot | adj. Haami. elat. 'aHma. hot weather Hama |
| hotel | fundug p. fanaadig, 'uteel p. -aat |
| hour | saa9a p. -aat |
| house | bayt p. buyuut; daar p. duur |
| how | kayf. How are you (m.s.)? kayf ant? |
| how many | kam (with foll. s. indef. n.). How long have you been here? kam lak haana? |
| how much | kam (with foll. p. n. or v.). How much are tomatoes? kam aT-TamaaTiis? How much do you want? kam tiʃti? for how much? b-kam? |
| hubble-bubble | madaa9a p. -aat |
| Hudaida | 'al-Hodayda |
| humidity | ruTuuba |

| | |
|---|---|
| hundred | miya p. -aat |
| hungry | jaawi9 p. -iin |
| hurried | adj. mista9jil p. -iin |
| husband | zawj p. 'azwaaj |

## I

| | |
|---|---|
| I | 'ana p. 'iHna |
| Ibb | (city in the Y.A.R.) 'ibb |
| if | conj. 'iδa; law |
| ignorant | jaahil p. -iin. elat. 'ajhal |
| ill | mariiδ̣ p. -iin |
| illumine | δ̣aa'/yδ̣ii' |
| in | prep. fi. in a hurry mista9jil (adj.) p. -iin |
| in front | adv. 'amaam, guddaam |
| in front of | 'amaam, guddaam |
| in- | neg. part. (with foll. adj.) Gayr, maa∫. insane Gayr 9aagil, maa∫ 9aagil |
| incorrect | GalaT |
| increase | kaθθar/ykaθθir |
| increase | v.n. ziyaada |
| indeed | waLLa |
| India | 'al-hind |
| Indian | (an-) hindi p. hunuud. f. hindiyya p. -aat |
| Indian | adj. hindi |
| infant | Tifl p. 'aTfaal |
| inquire | sa'al/yis'al |
| insane | majnuun p. majaaniin |
| inside | adv.; prep. daaxil |
| institute | ma9had p. ma9aahid |
| invite | 9azam/yi9zim. He invited me to dinner. 9azamni 9ala l-9a∫aa'. |
| invoice | faatuura p. fawaatiir |
| Iran | 'iiraan |
| Iranian | 'iiraani p. -yyiin |
| Iraq | 'al-9iraag |
| Iraqi | 9iraagi p. -yyiin. f. 9iraagiyya p. -aat |
| iron | kawwa/ykawwi |
| iron | kaawiya p. -aat |

| | |
|---|---|
| Italy | 'iiTaalya |
| Italian | 'iiTaali p. -yyiin. f. 'iiTaaliyya p. -aat |

### J

| | |
|---|---|
| jacket | kuut p. 'akwaat |
| Jadda | jadda |
| Jew(ish) | yahuudi p. yahuud. f. yahuudiyya p. -aat |
| jinn | jinn (coll.). s. jinni f. jinniyya |
| Jordan | 'al-'urdun |
| Jordanian | 'urduni p. -yyiin. f. 'urduniyya p. -aat |
| joy | masarra p. -aat |
| Judaism | 'al-yahwada |

### K

| | |
|---|---|
| kabob | kabaab (meat roasted on a skewer) |
| key | miftaaH p. mafaatiiH |
| Khartoum | 'al-xarTuum |
| kilogram | kiilo p. -waat |
| kilometer | kiilomitr p. -aat |
| kinfolk | m.p. jamaa9a p. -aat; 'agaarib (p.) |
| kitchen | maTbax p. maTaabix. old Yemeni kitchen dayma p. diyam |
| knife | sikkiin p. sakaakiin |
| know | 9irif/yi9rif; dara/yidri |
| Kuwait | 'al-kuwayt |
| Kuwaiti | kuwayti p. -yyiin |

### L

| | |
|---|---|
| laborer | See workman. |
| lamb | (meat) Tali (coll.) |
| lamb | (animal) Tali p. 'aTlu' |
| landlord | mu'ajjir p. -iin |
| language | luGa p. -aat |
| last | adj. maaδ̣i p. -yiin. last month aʃ-ʃahr al-maaδ̣i |
| later on | ba9da |
| laundromat | Gassaala p. -aat |
| learn | ta9allam/yit9allam |
| lease | See contract. |

| | |
|---|---|
| leave | v.n. 'ijaaza. summer leave (vacation) *'ijaazat aS-Sayf* |
| leave | tran.; intran. tarak/yutruk |
| Lebanon | lubnaan |
| left | adj.; adv. yasaar. opp. *yamiin* |
| left | ʃimaal, yasaar |
| length | Tuul. all night long *Tuul al-layl* |
| lesson | dars p. duruus |
| let | (with foll. inf.) xalla/yxalli |
| letter | (mail item) maktuub p. makaatiib, risaala p. rasaa'il |
| lettuce | salaTa (coll.). head of lettuce *ra's salaTa* |
| Libya | liibya |
| lies | v.n. kiδb. a lie *kiδba* |
| lift | See *carry.* |
| light | (electric, car-) siraaj p. -aat |
| light | (neon-) miil p. -aat |
| light | (not heavy) xafiif p. -iin. elat. *'axaff* |
| light bulb | gandiil p. ganaadiil |
| like | prep. miθl. like my father *miθl 'abi* |
| line | (telephone-, bus-) xaTT p. xuTuuT |
| little | (with foll. adj.) ʃwayya. a little busy *maʃGuul ʃwayya.* (with foll. n.) *ʃwayyat.* a little sugar *ʃwayyat sukkar* |
| live | (in a place) sakan/yuskun |
| living room | diiwaan p. dawaawiin |
| London | landan |
| long | Tawiil p. Tiwaal, -iin |
| look for | dawwar/ydawwir 9ala |
| lot | kaθiir (invar.). There are a lot of people. *bih naas kaθiir.* |
| Lufthansa | 'al-'aLmaaniyya |
| lunch | Gadaa' p. -aat |
| lying | v.n. kiδb. a lie *kiδba.* |

### M

| | |
|---|---|
| mail | coll. bariid |
| make | 9imil/yi9mal |
| make | (with foll. inf.) xalla/yxalli |
| man | rajjaal p. rijaal |

| | |
|---|---|
| manager | mudiir p. -iin |
| Manakha | manaaxa (city in the Y.A.R.) |
| many | adj. kaθiir p. -iin. elat. 'akθar |
| market | suug p. 'aswaag |
| married | mutazawwaj p. -iin |
| marry | tazawwaj/yitzawwaj |
| mason | (construction worker) 9ammaar p. -iin |
| May Day | 9iid al-9ummaal |
| maybe | yumkin |
| meat | laHm (coll.). un. laHma |
| mechanic(al) | adj. mikaaniiki p. -yyiin |
| medicine | dawaa' p. 'adwiya; 9ilaaj |
| meet s.o. | gaabal/ygaabil |
| mile | miil p. 'amyaal |
| military | jayʃ (m.s.) p. juyuuʃ |
| milk | Haliib (coll.) |
| minister | (cabinet-) waziir p. wuzaraa' |
| ministry | wazaara p. -aat. ministry of agriculture wazaarat az-ziraa9a. ministry of communications wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat. ministry of education wazaarat at-tarbiya. ministry of foreign affairs wazaarat al-xaarijiyya. ministry of the interior wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya. ministry of commerce wazaarat at-tijaara. ministry of justice wazaarat al-9adl. ministry of public works wazaarat al-'aʃGaal |
| mistaken | GaaliT p. -iin |
| Mocha | 'al-maxa (city in the Y.A.R.) |
| Monday | 'al-'iθnayn |
| money | fuluus, zalaT (f.s.) |
| month | ʃahr p. 'aʃhir |
| morning | SabaaH. Good morning! SabaaH al-xayr! in the morning fi S-SabaaH, 'aS-SubH |
| Morocco | 'al-maGrib |
| mosque | masjid p. masaajid, jaami9 p. jawaami9. The Grand Mosque 'al-jaami9 al-kabiir |
| mother | 'umm p. 'ummahaat |
| Mother's Day | 9iid al-'umm |

| | |
|---|---|
| motor oil | saliiT (coll.) |
| movie | film p. 'aflaam |
| must | laazim 9ala-. You must come. laazim 9alayk tiji. |

## N

| | |
|---|---|
| name | 'ism p. 'asmaa' |
| namely | (i.e.) ya9ni |
| nationality | jinsiyya p. -aat, taabi9iyya p. -aat |
| nearby | gariib (adj.) p. -iin |
| necessary | δ̣aruuri p. -yyiin |
| neighbor | jaar p. jiiraan |
| neighborhood | (quarter) Haara p. -aat |
| neither ... nor | maaʃ ... w-maaʃ |
| new | jadiid p. jiddad. elat. 'ajdad |
| newspaper | jariida p. jaraa'id |
| next to | prep. b-jamb |
| night | layla p. layaali. nighttime layl |
| nine | tis9a. nine men tis9at rijaal |
| nine hundred | tisa9miya |
| nine thousand | tis9a 'alf |
| nineteen | tisa9Ta9ʃ/-ar |
| ninety | tis9iin |
| ninth | taasi9 |
| no | maaʃi. opp. 'ii, na9am |
| no one | See nobody. |
| nobody | maHHad. Nobody came. maHHad jaa'. |
| noon | δ̣uhr. in the afternoon ba9d aδ̣-δ̣uhr |
| north | ʃamaal. northeast ʃamaal ʃarg. northwest ʃamaal Garb |
| not | (with foll. v.) ma ... ʃ. (with foll. n. or adj.) maaʃ, Gayr.<br>I did not go. ma ruHtʃ. not good maaʃ naahi, Gayr naahi |
| notebook | daftar p. dafaatir |
| now | δalHiin |
| number | ragam p. 'argaam |
| nurse | (m.) mumarriδ̣ p. -iin |

## O

| | |
|---|---|
| objection | maani9 p. mawaani9 |
| obtain | HaSal/yuHSul 9ala, HaSSal/yHaSSil |
| of | (pertaining to) Hagg |
| of course | Tab9an |
| office | maktab p. makaatib. the post office maktab al-bariid |
| old | (not new) gadiim p. gidaam. elat. 'agdam |
| okra | baamya (coll.). un. Habbat baamya |
| on | 9ala/9alay- |
| once | marra p. -aat. twice marratayn |
| one-third | θiliθ p. 'aθlaaθ. var. θilθ |
| on foot | b-r-rijl |
| onions | (green-) baSal (coll.). un. ra's baSal. (yellow-)buSSaala (coll.). un. buSSaali |
| only | bass. Only one came. bass waaHid jaa'. He only chewed gat. bass xazzan. |
| open | fataH/yiftaH |
| or | conj. 'aw |
| orange | adj. burtagaali p. -yyiin. f. burtagaaliyya |
| oranges | burtagaal (coll.). un. burtagaala |
| orchard | bustaan p. basaatiin |
| ordinary | 9aadi p. -yyiin |
| other than | neg. part. (with foll. n.) Gayr. other than these Gayr haaδawlaa' |
| ought to | laazim 9ala-. See must. |
| out of order | mu9aTTal p. -iin |
| outside | prep.; adv. xaarij |
| oven | furn p. 'afraan. bread baking- tannuur p. tanaaniir |
| over | prep.; adv. fawg. over there hownaak |
| overcoat | dajla p. -aat |
| owner (of) | SaaHib p. 'aSHaab |

## P

| | |
|---|---|
| package | gafaS p. gifaaS. package of cigarettes gafaS ʃigaayir |
| packet | kiis p. 'akyaas |
| Pakistan | 'al-baakistaan |

| | |
|---|---|
| parcel | (-post) Tard p. Turuud |
| Paris | baariis |
| park | muntazah p. -aat |
| part | gism p. 'agsaam |
| party | Hafla p. -aat. birthday party Haflat 9iid miilaad |
| passport | jawaaz p. -aat. the passports department 'al-jawaazaat |
| pay | dafa9/yidfa9 |
| peace | salaam. Peace be upon you! 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! |
| pen | galam p. 'aglaam |
| pencil | galam p. 'aglaam |
| people | naas (m.p.). (group of-)jamaa9a p. -aat |
| peppers | (hot-) bisbaas (coll.). un. bisbaasi. (bell-) biibar (coll.). un. biibari |
| perhaps | mumkin |
| perhaps | yumkin |
| period | (-of time) mudda p. mudad |
| permit | See allow. |
| Persia | 'iiraan |
| person | ʃaxS p. 'aʃxaaS |
| petroleum | batrool (coll.) |
| pigeon | Hamaami. coll. Hamaam |
| pilgrim | Hajj p. Hujjaaj |
| pink | wardi p. -yyiin |
| pipe fitter | sabbaak p. -iin, samkari p. samaakira |
| place | makaan p. 'amaakin |
| plate | SaHn p. SuHuun |
| play | li9ib/yil9ab |
| please | 'i9jab/yi9jib |
| policeman | ʃurTi p. ʃurTa (m.) |
| porter | Hammaal p. -iin |
| potatoes | buTaaT (coll.). un. buTaaTa |
| poor | fagiir p. -iin, fugaraa'. elat. 'afgar |
| powerful | gawi p. -yyiin. elat. 'agwa |
| praise | v.n. Hamd. Praise be to God! 'al-Hamdu lillaah! |
| pray | Salla/ySalli |
| prayer | Salaa (f.) p. Salawaat. the morning prayer Salaat aS-SubH |

| | |
|---|---|
| present | gaddam/ygaddim |
| price | θaman p. 'aθmaan; si9r p. 'as9aar |
| primary | 'ibtidaa'i p. -yyiin |
| prince | 'amiir p. 'umaraa' |
| problem | miʃkila p. maʃaakil |
| prophet | nabi p. 'anbiyaa' |
| protect | sallam/ysallim |
| proverb | maθal p. 'amθaal |
| put | HaTT/yHuTT |

Q

| | |
|---|---|
| qat | gaat (coll.). un. 9irg gaat, 9uudi gaat |
| Qatar | gaTar |
| quarter | (-of a city) Haara p. -aat, gaa9 p. gii9aan |
| quarter | (one-fourth) rub9 p. 'arbaa9 |
| question | su'aal p. 'as'ila |

R

| | |
|---|---|
| Rabat | 'ar-rabaaT |
| rain | maTar p. 'amTaar |
| raisin | zabiiba p. -aat. coll. zabiib |
| Ramadhan | ramaδ̣aan |
| Rawda | 'ar-rawδ̣a |
| read | gara'/yigra' |
| reasonable | ma9guul p. -iin |
| receipt | waSl p. wuSuul |
| reception hall | mafraj p. mafaarij |
| record | See register. |
| red | 'aHmar p. Humr. f. Hamraa' |
| refrigerator | θallaaja p. -aat |
| register | sajjal/ysajjil |
| registered | musajjal p. -iin |
| regular | 9aadi p. -yyiin |
| relative | gariib p. 'agaarib |
| relatives | jamaa9a (m.p.) |
| remain | bigi/yibga |

| | |
|---|---|
| remainder | baagi. The remainder is fifty. 'al-baagi xamsiin. |
| rent | sta'jar/yista'jir |
| rent | v.n. 'iijaar. for rent la-l-'iijaar |
| rent | (-money) kiraa' |
| repeat | 9aad/y9iid |
| republican | adj. jumhuuri p. -yyiin |
| request | Talab p. -aat |
| reservoir | taaniki p. tawaaniki. the water reservoir taaniki l-mee' |
| response | jawaab p. -aat |
| restaurant | maT9am p. maTaa9im |
| restore | (-good health to s.o.) 9aafa/y9aafi |
| return | riji9/yirja9. to back up, go in reverse riji9 ware |
| revolution | θawra p. -aat |
| rice | rizz (coll.). grain of rice Habbat rizz |
| rich | Gani p. -yyiin, 'aGniyaa'. elat. 'aGna |
| right | adj.; adv. yamiin. opp. yasaar |
| right! | tamaam! |
| ring | tran., intran. dagg/ydugg |
| riyaal | ryaal p. -aat. var. riyaal |
| Riyadh | 'ar-riyaaδ̣ |
| road | Tariig p. Turug |
| roasted | maʃwi p. -yyiin |
| room | Gurfa p. Guraf. syn. makaan p. -aat |
| rooster | diik p. 'adyaak |
| roundabout | daa'ira p. dawaa'ir |
| Russia | ruusiya |
| Russian | ruusi p. ruus. f. ruusiyya |

## S

| | |
|---|---|
| safety | v.n. 'amaan |
| safety | v.n. salaama |
| salad | salaTa |
| salary | ma9aaʃ p. -aat |
| same | nafs. the same thing nafs aʃ-ʃay' |
| Sanaa | San9a |
| sandals | (pair of-) Sandal p. Sanaadil |

| | |
|---|---|
| Saturday | 'as-sabt. last Saturday 'as-sabt al-maaδ̣i |
| Saudi Arabia | 'as-su9uudiyya |
| Saudia | (Airline) 'as-su9uudiyya |
| say | gaal/yguul. tell, inform s.o. gaal l- |
| saying | gawl p. 'agwaal |
| scholarship | munHa p. munaH |
| school | madrasa p. madaaris |
| sea | baHr p. biHaar |
| season | faSl p. fuSuul |
| second | θaani. f. θaaniya |
| secondary | θaanawi p. -yyiin. f. θaanawiyya |
| secret | sirr p. 'asraar |
| secretary | (m.) sikirteer p. -iin |
| section | gism p. 'agsaam |
| section | (-of a city) gaa9 p. gii9aan, Haara p. -aat |
| security | v.n. 'amaan. There is no security. maabiʃ 'amaan. |
| see | 'absar/yibsir, ʃaaf/yʃuuf |
| seller | bayyaa9 p. -iin |
| send | 'arsal/yirsil |
| sender | mursil p. -iin |
| send out | xarraj/yxarrij |
| September | sabtambir |
| seven | sab9a. seven men sab9at rijaal |
| seven hundred | saba9miya |
| seven thousand | sab9a 'alf |
| seventeen | saba9Ta9ʃ/-ar |
| seventh | saabi9 |
| seventy | sab9iin |
| Sharja | 'aʃ-ʃaariga |
| she | hiy p. hin |
| Sheba | saba' (city in the Y.A.R.) |
| sheet | (bed-) millaaya p. -aat |
| shirt | ʃamiiz p. ʃummaz, ʃumzaan |
| shoes | (pair of-) gundara p. ganaadir |
| shop | dikkaan p. dakaakiin, Haanuut p. Hawaaniit |
| short | gaSiir p. giSaar. elat. 'agSar |

| | |
|---|---|
| shortening | dihn (coll.) |
| show | warra/ywarri |
| shut | Gallag/yGallig |
| shut | adj. mGallig p. -iin |
| shutdown | mu9aTTal p. -iin |
| sick | mariiδ̣ p. -iin |
| side curl | zunnaar p. zanaaniir |
| similar to | prep. miθl |
| sister | 'uxt p. 'axawaat |
| six | sitta. six men sittat rijaal |
| six hundred | sitmiya |
| six thousand | sitta 'alf |
| sixteen | siTTa9ʃ/-ar |
| sixth | saadis |
| sixty | sittiin |
| skin | (-of fruit, seeds, etc.) giʃr |
| skinny | naHiif p. -iin. elat. 'anHaf |
| sleep | naam/ynuum, ragad/yurgud |
| sleep | v.n. nawm |
| slippers | (pair of-) Hiδa p. 'aHδi, ʃibʃib p. ʃabaaʃib |
| slowly | adv. dala dala, ʃwayya ʃwayya. opp. fiisa9 |
| small | SaGiir p. SiGaar, -iin. elat. 'aSGar |
| soap | Saabuun (coll.) (bar of-)Saabuuna |
| socks | (pair of-) ʃaraab p. -aat |
| sofa | mag9ad p. magaa9id |
| soldier | 9askari p. 9askar |
| some | See little. |
| someone | 'aHad, waaHid |
| sometimes | zaaratHiin |
| son | walad p. 'awlaad; 'ibn p. 'abnaa' |
| Sorry! | 9afwan! |
| soup | ʃirba |
| south (of) | januub. southwest (of) januub Garb. southeast (of) januub ʃarg |
| southern part (of) | januub |
| speak | takallam/yitkallam |
| spitting container | matfal p. mataafil |

| | |
|---|---|
| spoon | mal9aga p. malaa9ig |
| spring | (season) 'ar-rabii9 |
| square | maydaan p. mayaadiin. Tahrir Square *maydaan at-taHriir* |
| stamp | (postage-) Taabi9 p. Tawaabi9 |
| start | v.n. bidaaya. from start to finish *min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya* |
| state | (region) wilaaya p. -aat |
| station | maHaTTa p. -aat |
| stay | bigi/yibga |
| step | (pace, stride) xaTwa p. -aat |
| step-mother | xaala p. -aat |
| stipend | ma9aaʃ p. -aat |
| stockings | (pair of-) ʃaraab nisaa'i p. -aat nisaa'iyya |
| stone | raajam/yraajim |
| store | (shop) dikkaan p. dakaakiin, Haanuut p. Hawaaniit |
| storehouse | mixzaan p. maxaaziin |
| stove | furn 'afraan |
| straight | adv. saani |
| street | ʃaari9 p. ʃawaari9 |
| strong | gawi p. -yyiin. f. *gawiyya*. elat. *'agwa* |
| student | Taalib p. Tullaab |
| study | daras/yudrus |
| submit | gaddam/ygaddim. to submit an application *gaddam Talab* |
| Sudan | 'as-suudaan |
| Sudanese | suudaani p. -yyiin |
| sugar | sukkar (coll.) |
| suitcase | See *bag.* |
| summer | 'aS-Sayf |
| Sunday | 'al-'aHad |
| sunset | maGrib. sunset prayer *Salaat al-maGrib* |
| sweep | (with a broom) kannas/ykannis |
| sweets | Halawiyyaat |
| swim | sabaH/yisbaH |
| synagogue | kaniis (no known plural) |
| Syria | suuriyya |
| Syrian | suuri p. -yyiin. f. *suuriyya* p. -aat |

## T

| | |
|---|---|
| T-shirt | faaniila p. -aat |
| table | maasa p. -aat |
| Taiz | ta9izz |
| take | 'axaδ/ya'xuδ |
| talk | See speak. |
| tall | Tawiil p. Tiwaal. elat. 'aTwal |
| tank | See reservoir. |
| tax | δ̣ariiba p. δ̣araayib |
| taxi(cab) | taksi p. takaasi |
| tea | ʃaahi |
| teach | darras/ydarris |
| teacher | mu9allim p. -iin, mudarris p. -iin |
| Tehran | Tahraan |
| telegram | bargiyya p. -aat |
| telephone | n. talafoon p. -aat. v. talfan/ytalfin, xaabar/yxaabir |
| temperature | Haraara |
| temple | kaniis (no known plural) |
| ten | 9aʃara. ten men 9aʃarat rijaal |
| ten thousand | 9aʃara 'alf |
| tenant | musta'jir p. -iin |
| tenth | 9aaʃir |
| test | (-s.th.) jarrab/yjarrib |
| Thanks! | ʃukran! |
| that | haδaak, δaak. f. haδiik. p. (m. or f.) haaδawlaak |
| that | conj. 'inna. dem. pron. haδaak, δaak p. haaδawlaak. f. haδiik, δiik p. haaδawlaak |
| that | conj. 'inna, 'inn-/'in- |
| the | def. art. 'al/l- |
| there | adv. hownaak. there is; there are fii. there isn't; there aren't maabiʃ |
| therefore | 'iδan |
| these | (m. or f.) haaδawla |
| they | hum. f. hin |
| thin | naHiif p. -iin. elat. 'anHaf |
| thing | ʃay'. var. ʃee'. p. 'aʃyaa' var. 'aʃyee |

| | |
|---|---|
| third | θaaliθ |
| thirsty | 9aaTiʃ p. -iin |
| thirteen | θalaaθTa9ʃ/-ar |
| thirty | θalaaθiin |
| this | m. haaδa. f. haaδi p. (m. or f.) haaδawla |
| three | θalaaθa. three men θalaaθat rijaal |
| three hundred | θalaaθmiya |
| three thousand | θalaaθa 'alf |
| those | (m. or f.) haaδawlaak. m.s. haδaak; f.s. haδiik |
| thousand | 'alf p. 'aalaaf. two thousand 'alfayn |
| Thursday | 'al-xamiis |
| ticket | (card) biTaaga p. -aat. (admission-, airolane-, etc.) taδkara p. taδaakir |
| tied up | (bound, shackled) mrabbaT p. -iin |
| time | marra p. -aat. five times xamsat marraat. twice marratayn |
| time | (period of-) wagt p. 'awgaat |
| tire | (car-) 9ajala p. 9ijiil |
| tired | taa9ib p. -iin |
| to | prep. 'ila. var. la- |
| to | (e.g., quarter to five) 'illa. 4:45 xamsa 'illa rub9 |
| today | 'al-yawm |
| tomato | TumTusa p. -aat. TamaaTiis (coll.) |
| tomorrow | Gudwa. tomorrow morning Gudwa S-SubH. tomorrow night Gudwa l-9aʃi |
| tonight | 'al-yawm al-masaa', haaδa l-masaa' |
| too | kamaan, ba9da |
| toward | prep. la-, 'ila |
| towel | fuuTa p. fuwaT, manʃafa p. manaaʃif |
| trade | tijaara |
| travel | saafar/ysaafir |
| traveller | musaafir p. -iin |
| tree | ʃijara p. -aat. ʃijar (coll.) |
| trousers | (pair of-) banTaloon p. -aat |
| try | (make an effort) Haawal/yHaawil |
| try | (try s.th., test s.th.) jarrab/yjarrib |
| Tuesday | 'aθ-θaluuθ |

| | |
|---|---|
| Tunisia | tuunis. Tunisian tuunisi p. -yyiin |
| turn | (-left, right) laff/yliff |
| turban | 9imaama p. 9amaa'im |
| twelve | 'iθna9ʃ/-ar |
| twenty | 9iʃriin. for $20.00 b-9iʃriin duulaar |
| two | 'iθnayn. f. θintayn |
| typist | Tabbaa9 p. -iin |

## U

| | |
|---|---|
| U.A.E. | 'al-'imaaraat |
| un- | neg. part. (with foll. adj.) Gayr, maaʃ. unable Gayr gaadir, maaʃ gaadir |
| uncle | (maternal-) xaal p. 'axwaal. (paternal-) 9amm p. 'a9maam |
| under | prep.; adv. taHt |
| undershirt | faaniila p. -aat |
| undress | xalas/yaxlis |
| university | jaami9a p. -aat |
| upstairs | adv. fawg |
| use | sta9mal/yista9mil |
| usher | mubaaʃir p. -iin |

## V

| | |
|---|---|
| vacation | 9uTla p. 9uTal; 'ijaaza p. -aat |
| very | adv. kaθiir; gawi |
| via | 9an Tariig. via Sanaa 9an Tariig San9a |
| visa | ta'ʃiira p. -aat |
| visit | zaar/yzuur |

## W

| | |
|---|---|
| wage | kiraa' p. -aat |
| waiter | mubaaʃir p. -iin |
| walk | maʃa/yimʃi, saar/ysiir |
| wardrobe | duulaab p. dawaaliib, kabat p. -aat |
| wash | Gasal/yiGsil. (-with soap)Sabban/ySabbin |
| washing machine | Gassaala p. -aat |
| watch | 'absar/yibsir, ʃaaf/yʃuuf |
| water | mee'. var. maa' |

| | |
|---|---|
| watermelon | HabHaba p. -aat. HabHab (coll.) |
| way | Tariig p. Turug |
| this way | (in this manner) haakaδa |
| we | 'iHna. s. 'ana |
| weak | δ̣a9iif p. -iin, δ̣u9afaa'. elat. 'aδ̣9af |
| wear | libis/yilbis |
| weather | jaww. The weather is nice. 'al-jaww Haali. |
| Wednesday | 'ar-rabuu9 |
| week | 'usbuu9 p. 'asaabii9 |
| weigh | wazan/yuuzin |
| well-being | v.n. 9aafiya |
| west | Garb. northwest ʃamaal Garb. southwest januub Garb |
| Western | 'ifranji p. -yyiin |
| what? | maa?, 'ayʃ? What's your name? maa 'ismak? What's the matter with you? maa lak? |
| when? | mata? f-ayy Hiin? |
| when | conj. lamman, 9indima, Hiin |
| where? | 'ayn? |
| which? | 'ayy? |
| white | 'abyaδ̣ f. bayδ̣aa' p. biiδ̣ |
| who? | man? |
| who | relat. pron. man, 'allaδi. var. 'ali, 'alli |
| whole | (the - of) kull (with foll. def. n.). the whole city kull al-madiina |
| why? | lilma?, layʃ? |
| wife | zawja p. -aat |
| window | Taaga p. Tiigaan |
| winter | 'aʃ-ʃitaa' |
| wise | 9aagil p. -iin |
| with | prep. ma9 |
| withdraw | (e.g., money) jarr/yjurr |
| woman | mara p. nisaa' |
| work | ʃtaGal/yiʃtaGil |
| work | ʃuGl p. 'aʃGaal, 9amal p. 'a9maal. ministry of public works wazaarat al-'aʃGaal |
| workman | ʃaagi p. ʃugaa, 9aamil p. 9ummaal |

| | |
|---|---|
| workshop | warʃa p. -aat |
| write | katab/yuktub |
| writer | kaatib p. kuttaab |
| wrong | GalaT. wrong number ragam GalaT |

### Y

| | |
|---|---|
| Yamaniya | (-Airline) 'al-yamaniyya |
| year | sana p. -iin, -waat; 9aam p. 'a9waam. last year 'as-sana al-maaδ̣iya, 'al-9aam al-maaδ̣i |
| yellow | 'aSfar f. Safraa' p. Sufr |
| Yemen | 'al-yaman |
| yes | na9am, 'ii |
| yesterday | 'ams. yesterday morning 'ams aS-SubH. last night 'ams al-9aʃi |
| yogurt | yurt (coll.) |
| you | 'ant (m.s.). 'anti (f.s.). 'antu (m.p.) 'antayn (f.p.) |
| young | SaGiir p. SiGaar, iin. elat. 'aSGar |

### Z

| | |
|---|---|
| zucchini | dubbe (coll.). un. dubbaayi |

# INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

The numbers refer to units and sections

Adjectives

-- color 17 V 2
-- elative 22 V 5, 23 V 1
-- gender 3 V 3
-- nisba 6 V 2

Article Prefix 3 V 4

Collectives (See Nouns)

Conditionals

-- likely 40 V 1
-- unlikely 40 V 1
-- with imperative 40 V 1
-- with imperfect tense 40 V 1
-- with perfect tense 40 V 1

Conjunctions

-- Hiin 23 V 2
-- 'inna 33 V 3
-- wa 1 V 3

Dual 13 V 3, 37 V 2

Equational Sentences 1 V 2, 4 V 1

fii 24 V 1

Imperatives 9 VI 1, 15 V 1, 17 V 5, 25 V 1, 28 V 1, 34 IV 2

Imperfect Tense (See Verbs)

Intensifiers

-- kaθiir 10 VI 3

laazim 9ala 22 V 2

Names

-- of countries 6 V 1, 10 VI 1
-- proper 6 V 1, 10 VI 1

Negative Commands 20 V 4

Negative Particles

-- particle Gayr 27 V 1
-- particle ma 16 V 3, 36 V 2
-- particle maaʃ 10 VI 2

Noun-Adjective Concord 18 V 3

Nouns

-- collective 16 V 2, 17 V 1
-- construct 4 V 2
-- dual 13 V 3, 37 V 2

Nouns (continued)

-- gender 3 V 2
-- unit 16 V 2, 17 V 1

Numerals

-- cardinal 13 V 4, 15 V 3, 16 V 1
-- ordinal 14 V 2

Particles

-- future 17 V 3
-- Hagg 20 V 3
-- vocative 5 V 1

Perfect Tense (See Verbs)

Phonology

-- consonant G 4 IV 1
-- consonant H 9 V 1, 10 V 1
-- consonant L 3 IV 1
-- consonant r 2 IV 1
-- consonant S 6 IV 1
-- consonant T 5 IV 1
-- consonant x 2 IV 1, 4 IV 1, 10 V 1
-- consonant δ 4 IV 1
-- consonant 9 7 V 1, 8 V 1
-- consonant clusters 18 V 1
-- doubled consonants 3 IV 1
-- helping vowel 13 V 1, 14 V 1
-- pharyngealized consonants 4 IV 1, 5 IV 1, 6 IV 1, 9 V 1
-- stress 1 IV 2, 2 IV 2

Phonology (continued)

-- syllable structure 1 IV 2, 2 IV, 2
-- vowels a-aa 1 IV 1
-- vowels e-ee 1 IV 1
-- vowels i-ii 1 IV 1
-- vowels o-oo 2 IV 1
-- vowels u-uu 2 IV 1

Plurals

-- broken 18 V 2
-- sound 18 V 2

Prepositions 7 VI 1, 8 VI 3, 27 V 4, 35 V 4

-- ma9 8 VI 3
-- tagriib 27 V 4
-- 9ind 35 V 4

Pronouns

-- antecedent 40 V 3, 41 V 1
-- demonstrative 5 V 2, 18 V 5
-- gender 3 V 2
-- object 18 V 4
-- personal 1 V 1, 4 V 1, 7 VI 1
-- relative 40 V 3, 41 V 1
-- suffixed 1 V 1, 3 V 1, 6 V 3, 7 VI 1, 20 V 2, 32 IV 2

Relative Clauses 40 V 3

Special Constructions

-- 'ab and 'ax 27 V 2
-- f-ayy Hiin 27 V 3
-- 'i9jab 14 V 3, 32 IV 3
-- kaan fii 30 V 2
-- kam lak haana 14 V 3
-- kull 22 V 4
-- maa l- 33 V 1
-- maHHad 18 V 6
-- SaHH 33 V 2
-- SaHiiH 35 V 3
-- ya9ni 35 V 2
-- θaani 22 V 3

Subject Markers 12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1

Telling Ages 24 V 2

Telling Time 8 VI 2, 9 VI 2, 15 V 2

Topical Sentences 10 VI 4

Verbs

-- affixes 12 V 1, 14 V 1, 17 V 3, 18 V 1
-- defective verbs 32 V 1, 33 V 4, 37 V 1, 39 V 1, 40 V 2
-- double imperfect 13 V 2
-- double verbs 32 V 1
-- hollow verbs 30 V 1, 37 V 1, 40 V 2
-- imperatives (See Imperatives)

Verbs (continued)

-- imperfect tense 12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1, 18 V 1, 19 V 1, 20 V 1, 22 V 1, 23 V 3
-- inflectional forms 29 V 1
-- negative 16 V 3, 20 V 4, 22 V 2, 30 V 2
-- perfect tense 12 V 1, 20 V 2, 29 V 1, 30 V 1, 32 IV 1, 33 V 4, 34 IV 1, 35 V 1, 36 V 1, 37 V 1, 38 V 1, 39 V 1, 40 V 2, 41 V 2
-- suffixes 20 V 2, 32 IV 2
-- triple imperfect 25 V 2
-- verb 'adda 33 V 4
-- verb 'axaδ 35 V 1
-- verb bigi 33 V 4
-- verb daras 29 V 1
-- verb darras 32 V 2
-- verb faad 41 V 2
-- verb -gdar- 17 V 4
-- verb Hayya 32 V 1
-- verb jaa' 29 V 1
-- verb kaan 30 V 1
-- verb kawwa 39 V 1
-- verb laff 34 IV 1
-- verb libis 36 V 1
-- verb raa9a 39 V 1
-- verb riji9 32 V 1
-- verb saafar 33 V 4

Verbs (continued)

-- verb saag 38 V 1
-- verb Saar 30 V 1
-- verb Salla 37 V 1
-- verb ʃaal 38 V 1
-- verb ʃafa 33 V 4
-- verb ʃall 38 V 1
-- verb ʃirib 30 V 1
-- verb ʃtara 36 V 1
-- verb ʃtka 41 V 2
-- verb taGadda 40 V 2
-- verb tamm 32 V 1
-- verb ta9aʃʃa 40 V 2
-- verb warra 34 IV 1
-- verb wazan 38 V 1
-- verb wuSal 38 V 1
-- verb xalla 39 V 1
-- verb yiʃti 36 V 1
-- verb 9aad 37 V 1
-- verb 9aafa 32 V 1
-- verb 9add 39 V 1
-- verb stems 12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1, 15 V 1, 18 V 1, 19 V 1, 20 V 1, 22 V 1, 23 V 3, 25 V 1, 30 V 1, 38 V 2, 38 V 4
-- verb strings 13 V 2, 17 V 4, 25 V 2, 36 V 1

Vowels (See Phonology)

9ind- 8 VI 1